A000A01A-GAT

This Owner's Manual should be considered a part of the car and remain with it when it is sold for the use of the next owner.

OWNER'S I.D.

ORIGINAL:
ADDRESS:
NAME:
STREET:
TOWN:
COUNTRY:
P.CODE:

DATE OF SALE:

SUBSEQUENT:
ADDRESS:
NAME:
STREET:
TOWN:
COUNTRY:
P.CODE:

TRANSFER DATE:

A020A01A-AAT

RESPONSIBILITY FOR MAINTENANCE

The maintenance requirements for your new Hyundai are found in Section 5. As the owner, it is your responsibility to see that all maintenance operations specified by the manufacturer are carried out at the appropriate intervals. When the vehicle is used in severe driving conditions, more frequent maintenance is required for some operations. Maintenance requirements for severe operating conditions are also included in Section 5.

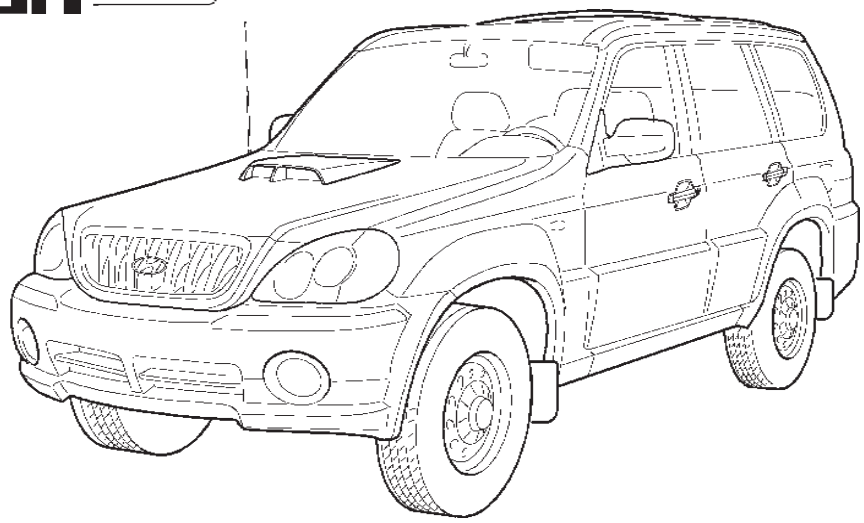
HYUNDAI

Terracan

OWNER'S MANUAL

A030A02O-GAT

Operation
Maintenance
Specifications



A030A01HP

All information in this Owner's Manual is current at the time of publication. However, Hyundai reserves the right to make changes at any time so that our policy of continual product improvement may be carried out.

This manual applies to all Hyundai **Terracan** models and includes descriptions and explanations of optional as well as standard equipment. As a result, you may find material in this manual that does not apply to your specific vehicle.

Please note that some models are equipped with Right-Hand Drive (RHD). The explanations and illustrations for some operations in RHD models are opposite of those written in this manual.

A040A01A-GAT

FOREWORD

Thank you for choosing Hyundai. We are pleased to welcome you to the growing number of discriminating people who drive Hyundai. The advanced engineering and high-quality construction of each Hyundai we build is something of which we're very proud.

Your Owner's Manual will introduce you to the features and operation of your new Hyundai. It is suggested that you read it carefully because the information it contains can contribute greatly to the satisfaction you receive from your new car.

The manufacturer also recommends that all service and maintenance on your car be performed by an authorized Hyundai dealer. Hyundai dealers are prepared to provide high-quality service, maintenance and any other assistance that may be required.

A050A04A-AAT

HYUNDAI MOTOR COMPANY

Note: Because future owners will also need the information included in this manual, if you sell this Hyundai, please leave the manual in the vehicle for their use. Thank you.

CAUTION: Severe engine and transmission damage may result from the use of poor quality fuels and lubricants that do not meet Hyundai specifications. You must always use high quality fuels and lubricants that meet the specifications listed on Page 9-3 in the Vehicle Specifications section of the Owner's Manual.

Copyright 2003 Hyundai Motor Company. All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in any retrieval system or transmitted in any form or by any means without the prior written permission of Hyundai Motor Company.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

SECTION		PAGE
1.	FEATURES OF YOUR HYUNDAI	1-1
2.	DRIVING YOUR HYUNDAI	2-1
3.	WHAT TO DO IN AN EMERGENCY	3-1
4.	CORROSION PREVENTION & APPEARANCE CARE	4-1
5.	VEHICLE MAINTENANCE REQUIREMENTS	5-1
6.	DO-IT-YOURSELF MAINTENANCE	6-1
7.	EMISSION CONTROL SYSTEMS	7-1
8.	CONSUMER INFORMATION	8-1
9.	VEHICLE SPECIFICATIONS	9-1
10.	INDEX	10-1

A070A01A-GAT

CAUTION: MODIFICATIONS TO YOUR HYUNDAI

Modification of components may void the manufacturer's warranty

Your Hyundai should not be modified in any way. Modifications may adversely affect the safety, durability and performance of your Hyundai. Components which are subjected to modification or are added to the vehicle resulting in consequential damage are not covered by the vehicle manufacturer's warranty.

A090A01A-AAT

SAFETY AND VEHICLE DAMAGE WARNING

This manual includes information titled as WARNING, CAUTION and NOTE.
These titles indicate the following:

WARNING:
This indicates that a condition may result in harm or injury to you or other persons if the warning is not heeded. Follow the advice provided with the warning.

CAUTION:
This indicates that a condition may result in damage to your vehicle or its equipment if the caution is not heeded. Follow the advice provided with the caution.

NOTE:
This indicates that interesting or helpful information is being provided.

A100A01L-GAT

GUIDE TO HYUNDAI GENUINE PARTS

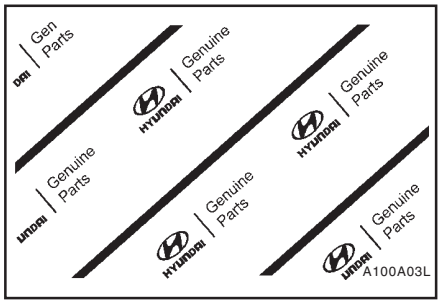
1. **What are Hyundai Genuine Parts?**
   Hyundai Genuine Parts are the same parts used by Hyundai Motor Company to manufacture vehicles. They are designed and tested for the optimum safety, performance, and reliability to our customers.

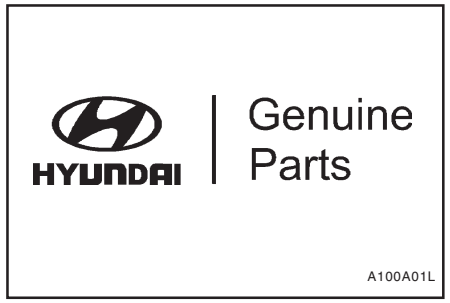
2. **Why should you use genuine parts?**
   Hyundai Genuine Parts are engineered and built to meet rigid manufacturing requirements. Using imitation, counterfeit or used salvage parts are not covered under the Hyundai New Vehicle Limited Warranty or any other Hyundai warranty. In addition, any damage to or failure of Genuine Hyundai Parts caused by the installation or failure of an imitation, counterfeit or used salvage part is not covered by Hyundai Motor Company.

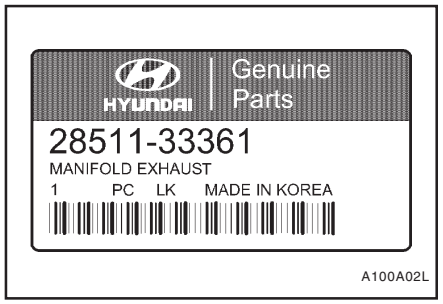
3. **How can you tell if you purchasing Hyundai Genuine Parts?**
   Look for the Hyundai Genuine Parts Logo on the package (see below).

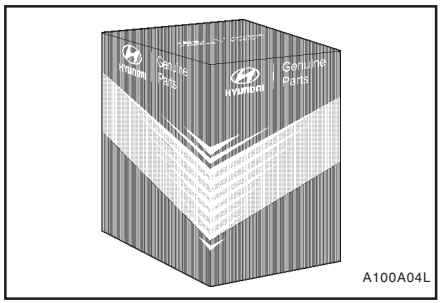
   The export specifications are written in English only.

   Hyundai Genuine Parts are only sold through authorized Hyundai Dealership and Service Center.







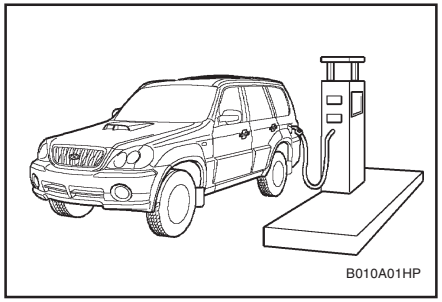


1. FEATURES OF YOUR HYUNDAI

B010A01O-GAT

FUEL RECOMMENDATIONS

Use Unleaded Gasoline


B010A01HP

Unleaded gasoline with a Pump Octane Rating of 87 (Research Octane Number 91) or higher must be used in Hyundai vehicle. If leaded gasoline is used, it will cause the catalytic converter to become ineffective and the emission control system to malfunction.
This can also result in increased maintenance expense. To avoid accidental use of leaded fuel, the large nozzle used with leaded gasoline at service stations can not be inserted into fuel tank opening of Hyundai vehicle.

NOTE:
- **For some countries, Hyundai vehicles are designed to use leaded gasoline. When you are going to use leaded gasoline, ask to Hyundai dealer whether leaded gasoline in your vehicle is available or not.**
- **Octane rating of leaded gasoline is same with unleaded one.**

Use Diesel

Diesel fuel of 52 to 54 cetane is used in Hyundai vehicle. If two types of diesel fuel are available, use summer or winter fuel properly according to the following temperature conditions.

- Above -5°C (23°F) ... Summer type diesel fuel.
- Below -5°C (23°F) ... Winter type diesel fuel.

Watch the fuel level in the tank very carefully : If the engine stops through fuel failure, the circuits must be completely purged to permit restarting.

CAUTION:
- **Do not let any gasoline or water enter the tank. This would make it necessary to drain it out and to bleed the lines to avoid jamming the injection pump and damaging the engine.**
- **In winter, in order to cut down incidents due to freezing, paraffin oil may be added to the fuel if the temperature drops to below -10°C. Never use more than 20% paraffin oil.**

B010B01A-AAT

What About Gasohol?

Gasohol (a mixture of 90% unleaded gasoline and 10% ethanol or grain alcohol) may be used in your Hyundai. However, if your engine develops drive ability problems, the use of 100% unleaded gasoline is recommended. Fuels with unspecified quantities of alcohol, or alcohols other than ethanol, should not be used.

B010D01S-AAT

Do not Use Methanol

Fuels containing methanol (wood alcohol) should not be used in your Hyundai. This type of fuel can reduce vehicle performance and damage components of the fuel system.

CAUTION:
Your Hyundai's New Vehicle Limited Warranty may not cover damage to the fuel system and performance problems that are caused by the use of methanol or fuels containing methanol.

B010E01A-AAT

Gasolines for Cleaner Air

To help contribute to cleaner air, Hyundai recommends that you use gasolines treated with detergent additives, which help prevent deposit formation in the engine. These gasolines will help the engine run cleaner and enhance performance of the Emission Control System.

B010F01A-AAT

Operation in Foreign Countries

If you are going to drive your Hyundai in another country, be sure to:

- o Observe all regulations regarding registration and insurance.
- o Determine that acceptable fuel is available.

B020A01S-GAT

BREAKING IN YOUR NEW HYUNDAI

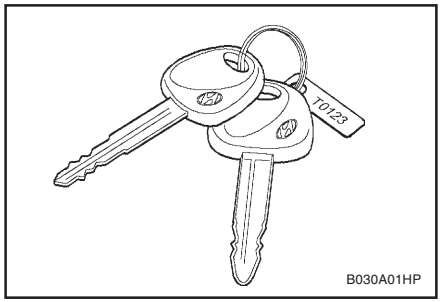
During the First 2,000 Km (1,200 Miles)

No formal "break-in" procedure is required with your new Hyundai. However, you can contribute to the economical operation and durability of your Hyundai by observing the following recommendations during the first 2,000 km (1,200 miles).

- o Don't drive faster than 88 km/h (55 mph).
- o While driving, keep your engine speed (rpm, or revolutions per minute) between 2,000 rpm and 4,000 rpm.
- o Use moderate acceleration. Don't start, depress the accelerator pedal fully.
- o For the first 300 km (200 miles), try to avoid hard stops.
- o Don't lug the engine (in other words, don't drive so slowly in too high a gear that the engine "bucks":shift to a lower gear).
- o Whether going fast or slow, vary your speed from time to time.
- o Don't let the engine idle longer than 3 minutes for a catalytic converter equipped engine.
- o Don't tow a trailer during the first 2,000 km (1,200 miles) of operation.

B030A01A-AAT

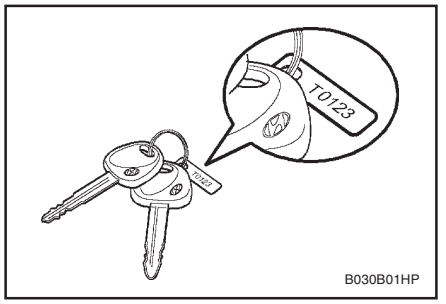
KEYS



For greater convenience, the same key operates all the locks in your Hyundai. However, because the doors can be locked without a key, carrying a spare key is recommended in case you accidentally lock one key inside the car.

B030B01A-AAT

Record Your Key Number



A code number is stamped on the number plate that came with the keys to your Hyundai. This key number plate should not be left with the keys but kept in a safe place, not in the vehicle. The key number should also be recorded in a place where it can be found in an emergency.
If you need additional keys, or if you should lose your keys, your authorized Hyundai dealer can make new keys if you can supply the key number.

B880A01A-GAT

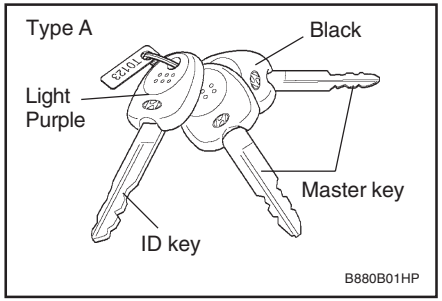
IMMOBILIZER SYSTEM (If Installed)

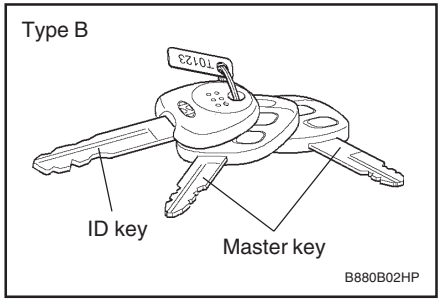
- For Diesel Engine (2.5 TCI) or Gasoline Engine

The immobilizer system is an anti-theft device, designed to deter automobile theft.

B880B01HP-GAT

Keys





For greater convenience, your Hyundai has two types of keys as shown in the illustration.

1) ID key
   This key must be used first to register a unique ID code in the ICM. This ID code is then recorded onto the master keys. Both sides of the key have a Hyundai logo.
2) Master key
   This key is for general use. It will open all locks on your vehicle.
   One side of the key has the Hyundai logo and the other side has the "M" symbol.
   If your vehicle is equipped with Theft-alarm system, the master keys with the function of transmitter will be provided. (Type B)

CAUTION:

Don't lose your ID key or forget the password. Always keep your ID key in a place where you remember and record your password. If you don't have both the password and ID key, consult your authorized Hyundai dealer.

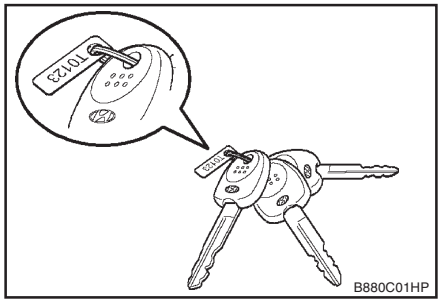
(3) If you need additional keys or if you should lose your keys, your authorized Hyundai dealer can make new keys if you can supply the key number and ID key.

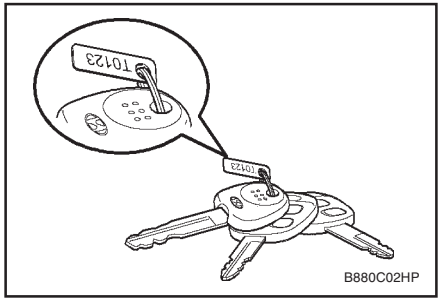
NOTE:

If you make your own duplicate key, you will not be able to cancel the system or start the engine.

B880C01A-GAT

Key Numbers





The vehicle key number is recorded upon a metal tag attached to the keys when the vehicle is first delivered to you.
The key number should be recorded and kept in a safe place in case the need to order further keys arises. New keys are available from any Hyundai dealer by quoting the relevant key number.

In the interest of security, the metal tag attached to the keys which bears the key number should be removed from the key ring after you receive your new vehicle. In addition, key numbers cannot be provided by Hyundai for security reasons.
If you need additional keys or if you should lose your keys, your authorized Hyundai dealer can make new keys if you can supply the key number and ID key.

B880D01HP-GAT

Limp Home Procedures

In case the immobilizer system is out of order, you cannot start the engine without the limp home procedures with ignition key.
The following procedure is how to start the engine with the function of the limp home. (0, 1, 2, 3 as a sample password).

NOTE:
You can get the limp home password when the vehicle is first delivered to you. If you do not have the password, consult your authorized Hyundai dealer.

1. To set the password you may turn the ignition key "ON" and then turn it "OFF" according to the digit numbers. For example, turn the ignition key once for digit number "1", and twice for "2", and so on. However, for the digit number "0", you must turn the ignition key for 10 times.
2. Wait for 3~10 seconds.
3. You may set the remaining number of digits by following the same procedures 1 and 2.
4. If all of four digits have been tried successfully, from this time, you have to start your engine within 30 seconds. If you start your engine after 30 seconds, your engine will not start.

NOTE:
If the engine dies while driving after limp home procedure, you can start your engine within 8 seconds without limp home procedure again.

After doing the limp home procedure, you have to consult with your authorized Hyundai dealer as soon as possible.

CAUTION:
If you cannot start your engine in spite of limp home procedure, have your vehicle towed by an authorized Hyundai dealer.

B885A01HP-GAT

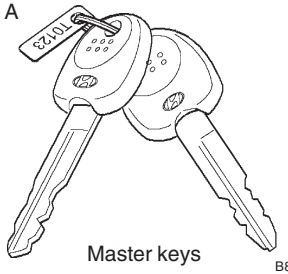
IMMOBILIZER SYSTEM (If Installed) - For Diesel Engine (2.9 CRDi)

The immobilizer system is an anti-theft device, designed to deter automobile theft.

B885B01HP-GAT

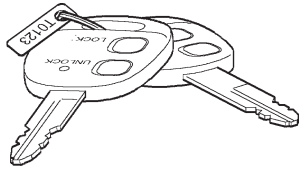
Keys

Type A



Master keys B885B01HP

Type B



Master keys B885B02HP

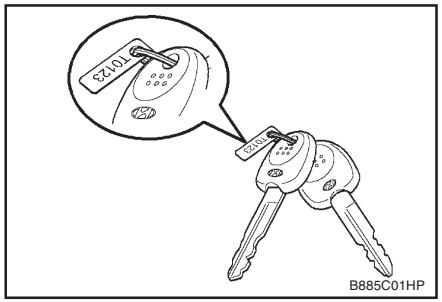
All of the locks fitted to the vehicle are operated by the same key. However, since it is possible to lock the doors without the use of the key, care should be exercised to ensure that the key does not become locked inside the vehicle by mistake. If your vehicle is equipped with Theft-alarm system, the master keys with the function of transmitter will be provided (Type B).

NOTE:
If you make your own duplicate key, you will not be able to cancel the system or start the engine.

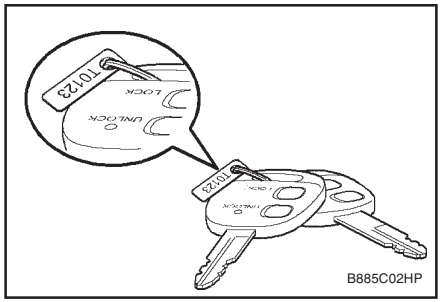
CAUTION:
Don't forget your password. If you forget the password, consult your authorized Hyundai dealer.

B885C01O-GAT

Key Numbers



B885C01HP

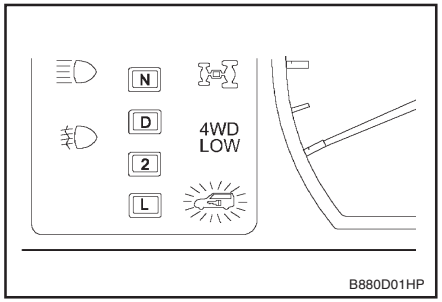


B885C02HP

The vehicle key number is recorded upon a metal tag attached to the keys when the vehicle is first delivered to you.
The key number should be recorded and kept in a safe place in case the need to order further keys arises. New keys are available from any Hyundai dealer by quoting the relevant key number.
In the interest of security, the metal tag attached to the keys which bears the key number should be removed from the key ring after you receive your new vehicle. In addition, key numbers cannot be provided by Hyundai for security reasons. If you need additional keys or if you should lose your keys, your authorized Hyundai dealer can make new keys.

B885D01O-GAT

Limp Home Procedures



B880D01HP

In case the immobilizer warning indicator blinks for five seconds when the ignition key is turned to "ON" position, this indicates that the immobilizer system is out of order. And you cannot start the engine without the limp home procedures with ignition key.
The following procedure is how to start the engine with the function of the limp home. (0, 1, 2, 3 as a sample password).

NOTE:
You can get the limp home password when the vehicle is first delivered to you. If you do not have the password, consult your authorized Hyundai dealer.

1. To set the password you may turn the ignition key "ON" and then turn it "OFF" according to the digit numbers, then the immobilizer indi-

cator will blink along with the operation of the ignition key. For example, turn the ignition key once for digit number "1", and twice for "2", and so on. However, for the digit number "0", you must turn the ignition key for 10 times.
2. Wait for 3~10 seconds.
3. You may set the remaining number of digits by following the same procedures 1 and 2.
4. If all of four digits have been tried successfully, turn the ignition key "ON" and check that the immobilizer indicator illuminates. From this time, you have to start your engine within 30 seconds. If you start your engine after 30 seconds, your engine will not start.

NOTE:
If the engine dies while driving after limp home procedure, you can start your engine within 8 seconds without limp home procedure again.

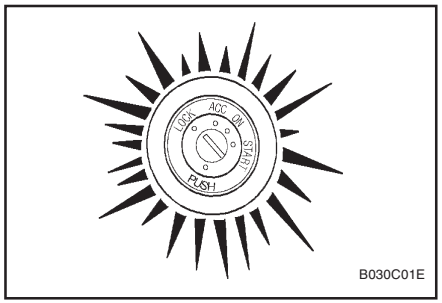
5. If the immobilizer indicator blinks for five seconds, you have to try the limp home procedure again from the beginning.

After doing the limp home procedure, you have to consult with your authorized Hyundai dealer as soon as possible.

CAUTION:
- **If you fail to try the limp home procedure with the sequence of three times, you have to wait for about one hour to do the limp home procedure again.**
- **If you cannot start your engine in spite of limp home procedure, have your vehicle towed by an authorized Hyundai dealer.**

B030C01Y-AAT

ILLUMINATED IGNITION SWITCH



B030C01E

Whenever a door is opened, the ignition switch will be illuminated for your convenience, provided the ignition switch is not in the "ON" position. The light will go off approximately 10 seconds after closing the door or when the ignition switch is turned on.

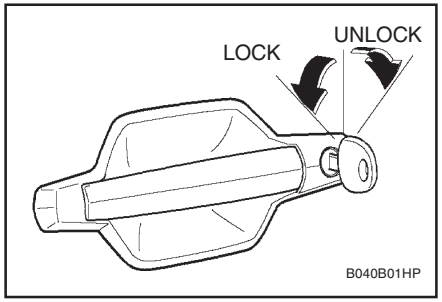
B040A01A-AAT

DOOR LOCKS

WARNING:
- **Unlocked doors can be dangerous. Before you drive away (especially if there are children in the car), be sure that all the doors are securely closed and locked so that the doors cannot be inadvertently opened from the inside. This helps ensure that the doors will not be opened accidentally. Also, when combined with the proper use of seat belts, locking the doors helps keep occupants from being ejected from the car in case of an accident.**
- **Before opening the door, always look for and avoid oncoming traffic.**

B040B01A-AAT

Locking and Unlocking Front Doors With a Key

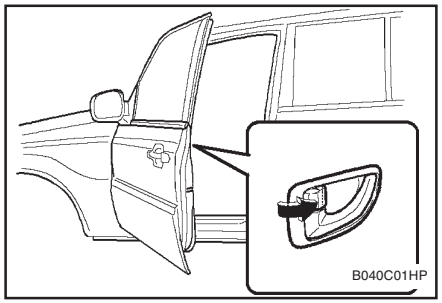


B040B01HP

- o The door can be locked or unlocked with a key.
- o Lock the door by turning the key toward the front of the vehicle and unlock it by turning the key toward the rear.

B040C02Y-DAT

Locking from the Outside



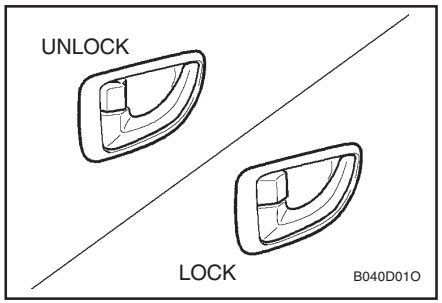
The doors can be locked without a key. To lock the doors, first push the inside lock switch to the "LOCK" position so that the red mark on the switch is not visible, then close the door.
The door will not lock if the key is left in the ignition switch when the front doors are closed. This is normal.

NOTE:

- **o When locking the door this way, be careful not to lock the door with the ignition key left in the vehicle.**
- **o To discourage theft, always remove the ignition key, close all windows, and lock all doors when leaving your vehicle unattended.**

B040D01S-AAT

Locking from the Inside



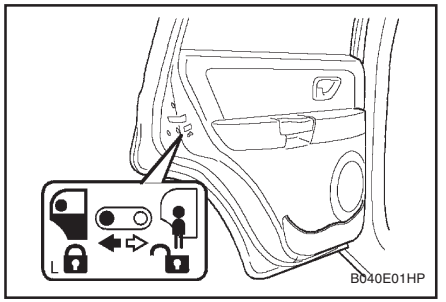
To lock the doors from the inside, simply close the door and push the lock switch to the "LOCK" position. When this is done, neither the outside nor the inside door handles can be used.

NOTE:

When the door is locked, the red mark on the switch is not visible.

B040E03A-AAT

CHILD-PROTECTOR REAR DOOR LOCK



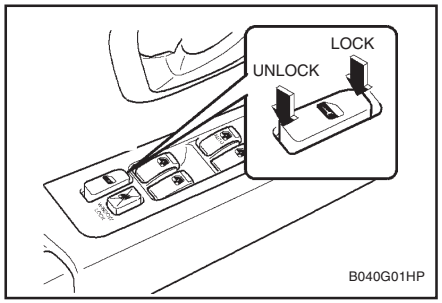
Your Hyundai is equipped with a "child-protector" rear door lock assembly. When the lock mechanism is engaged, the rear door cannot be opened from the inside. Its use is recommended whenever there are small children in the rear seat.

To engage the child-protector feature so the door cannot be opened from the inside, move the child-protector lever to the " 🔒 " position and close the door. Move the lever to the opposite direction of the " 🔓 " position when normal door operation is desired.

If you wish to be able to open the door from the outside, the outside door handle will function normally.

B040G01HP-AAT

Central Door Locks



The central door locking switch is located on the driver's arm rest. It is operated by depressing the door lock switch.

NOTE:

- **When pushing the front portion of the driver's door lock switch, all vehicle doors will lock. If any door is open when the switch is depressed, the door will remain locked when closed.**
- **When pushing the rear portion of the switch, all vehicle doors will unlock.**
- **The central door locking is operated by turning the key toward the front or rear of the vehicle.**

B070A01A-AAT

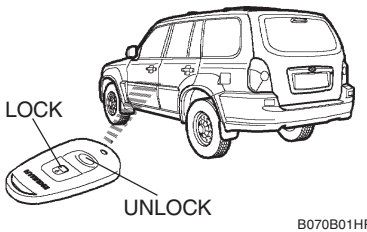
THEFT-ALARM SYSTEM (If installed)

This system is designed to provide protection from unauthorized entry into the car. This system is operated in three stages: the first is the "Armed" stage, the second is the "Alarm" stage, and the third is the "Disarmed" stage. If triggered, the system provides an audible alarm with blinking of the turn signal lights.

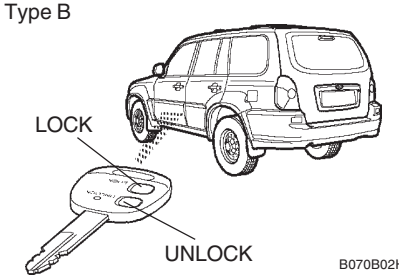
B070B01O-AAT

Armed Stage

Type A



Type B



Park the car and stop the engine. Arm the system as described below.

1) Remove the ignition key from the ignition switch.
2) Make sure that the engine hood and tail gate are locked.
3) Lock the doors using the transmitter of the keyless entry system.

After completion of the steps above, the turn signal lights will blink once to indicate that the system is armed.

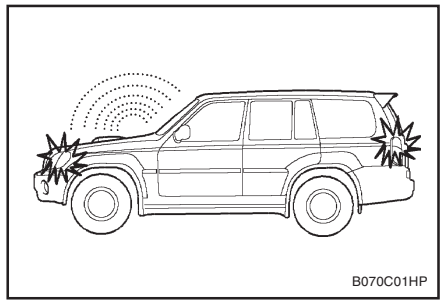
NOTE:

1) **If any door, tail gate or engine hood remains open, the system will not be armed.**
2) **If this happens, rearm the system as described above.**

CAUTION:
Do not arm the system until all passengers have left the car. If the system is armed while a passenger(s) remains in the car, the alarm may be activated when the remaining passenger(s) leaves the car.

B070C01HP-GAT

Alarm Stage


B070C01HP

The alarm will be activated if any of the following occurs while the car is parked and the system is armed.

1) A front or rear door is opened without using the transmitter.
2) The tail gate is opened without using the transmitter.
3) The engine hood is opened.

The siren will sound and the turn signal lights will blink continuouly for 27 seconds (Type B/ Type A : This happens 3 times). To turn off the system, unlock the door or tail gate with the transmitter.

CAUTION:
Avoid trying to start the engine while the system is armed.

B070D03O-AAT

Disarmed Stage

The system will be disarmed when the driver's or passenger's door is unlocked by depressing the "UNLOCK" button on the transmitter.
After completion of the step above, the turn signal lights will blink twice to indicate that the system is disarmed.

CAUTION:
Only the transmitter can disarm the armed stage. If the transmitter does not disarm the system, it is necessary to take the following steps;

1. **Unlock the door with the key, which will cause the alarm to be activated.**
2. **Insert the key in the ignition key cylinder and turn the ignition key to "ON" position.**
3. **Wait for 30 seconds.**

After completing the steps above, the system will be disarmed.

B070F01A-GAT

Keyless Entry System (If installed)

Locking doors

1. Close all doors.
2. Push the "LOCK" button on the transmitter.
3. At the same time all doors lock, the turn signal lights will blink once to indicate that the system is armed.

Unlocking doors

1. Push the "UNLOCK" button on the transmitter.
2. At the same time all doors unlock, the turn signal lights will blink twice to indicate that the system is disarmed.

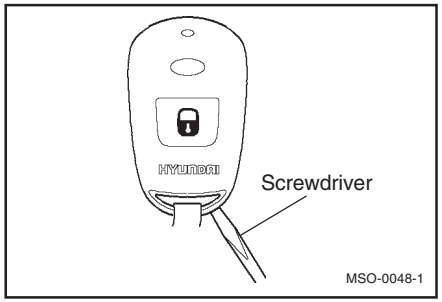
B070E02HP-GAT

Replacing the battery

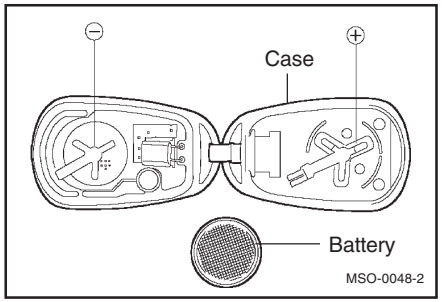
When the transmitter's battery begins to get weak, it may take several pushes on the button to lock or unlock the doors, and the LED will not light. Replace the battery as soon as possible.

Battery type : CR2032(Type A)
or CR1616 (Type B)

Replacement instructions:
Type A:

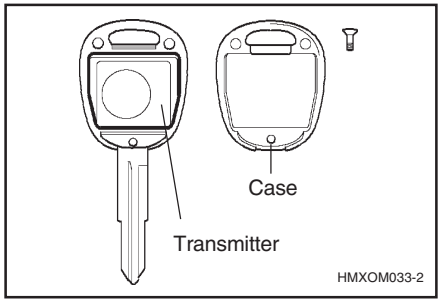


1. Carefully separate the case with a blade screwdriver as shown in the illustration.

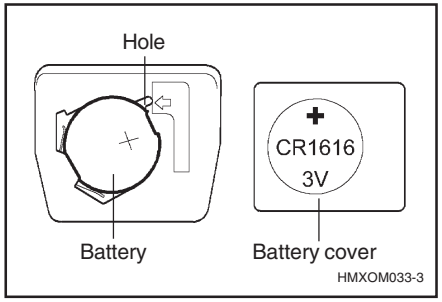


2. Remove the old battery from the case and note the polarity. Make sure the polarity of the new battery is the same(+side facing down), then insert it in the transmitter.

Type B:



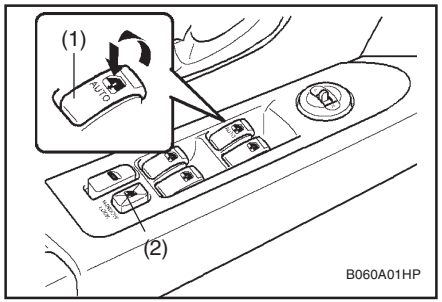
1. Carefully separate the case with a phillips screwdriver.



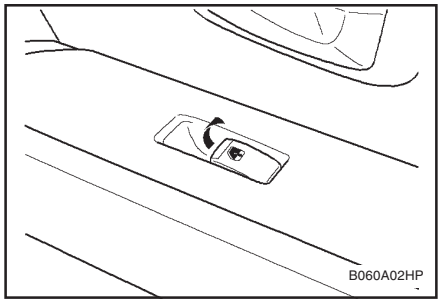
2. Take off the battery cover after separating the transmitter.
3. Remove the old battery from the transmitter with a blade screwdriver inserted in the hole and note the polarity. Make sure the polarity of the new battery is the same(+side facing up), then insert it in the transmitter.

B060A03L-DAT

POWER WINDOWS



The power windows operate when the ignition key is in the "ON" position. The main switches are located on the driver's armrest and control the front and rear windows on both sides of the vehicle. The windows may be opened by depressing the appropriate window switch and closed by pulling up the switch. To open the window on the driver's side, press the switch(1) halfway down. The window moves as long as the switch is operated. To fully open the driver's window automatically, press the switch fully down. In automatic operation, the window will fully open even if you let go of the switch. To stop at the desired opening, pull up and release the switch. In order to prevent operation of the passanger front and rear windows, a window lock switch(2) is provided on the armrest of the driver's door. To disable the power windows, press the window lock switch. To revert to normal operation, press the window lock switch a second time.



NOTE:
The power windows can be operated for 30 seconds after the ignition key is turned to the "ACC" or "LOCK" positions, or removed from the ignition switch.
If the front doors are opened during this 30 second period, the power windows can no longer be operated without the ignition key turned to the "ON" position.

WARNING:
(1) Be careful that someone's head, hands and body are not trapped by a closing window.
(2) Never try to operate the main switch on the driver's door and the individual door window switch in opposing directions at the same time. If this is done, the window will stop and cannot be opened or closed.
(3) Do not leave children alone in the car. Always remove the ignition key for their safety.

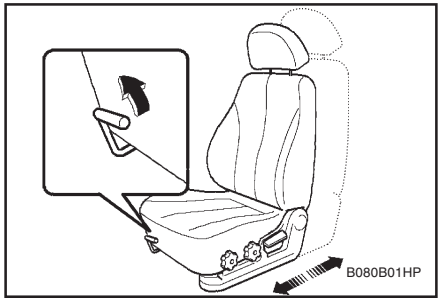
B080A01A-AAT

ADJUSTABLE FRONT SEATS

WARNING:
Never attempt to adjust the seat while the vehicle is moving. This could result in loss of control or an accident which may cause death, serious injury, or property damage.

B080B02A-AAT

Adjusting Seat Forward and Rearward

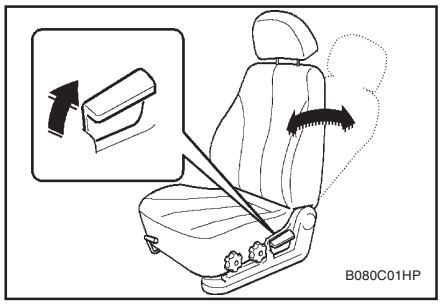


To move the seat toward the front or rear, pull the lock release lever upward. This will release the seat on its track so you can move it forward or rearward to the desired position. When you find the position you want, release the lever and slide the seat forward or rearward on its track until it locks into the desired position and cannot be moved further.

WARNING:
To ensure the seat is locked securely, attempt to move the seat forward or rearward without using the lock release lever.

B080C01A-AAT

Adjusting Seatback Angle



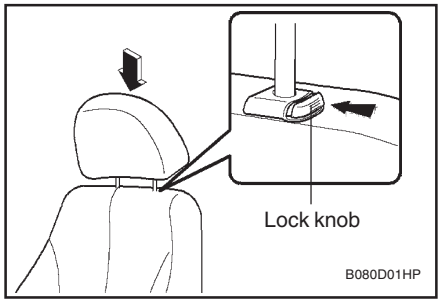
To recline the seatback, lean forward to take your weight off it, then pull up on the recliner control lever at the outside edge of the seat. Now lean back until the desired seatback angle is achieved. To lock the seatback into position, release the recliner control lever.

WARNING:
To minimize risk of severe injury in the event of a collision or a sudden stop, both the driver and passenger seatbacks should always be in an upright position while the vehicle is in motion. The protection provided by the seat

belts and airbags in a frontal collision may be reduced significantly when the seatbacks are reclined. There is greater risk that the driver and passenger will slide under the seat belt which may result in serious injury if a crash occurs when the seatbacks are reclined. The seat belt cannot provide full protection to an occupant if the seat back is reclined.

B080D01L-DAT

Adjustable Headrests



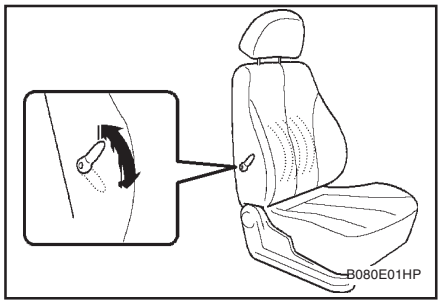
Headrests are designed to help reduce the risk of neck injuries.
To raise the headrest, pull it up. To lower it, push it down while pressing the lock knob. If equipped with a horizontally adjustable type of headrest, pull on the top.

WARNING:

- **For maximum effectiveness in case of an accident, the headrest should be adjusted so the top of the headrest is at the same height as the top of the occupant's ears. For this reason, the use of a cushion that holds the body away from the seatback is not recommended.**
- **Do not operate vehicle with the headrests removed as injury to the occupants may occur in the event of an accident. Headrests may provide protection against neck injuries when properly adjusted.**

B080E01A-AAT

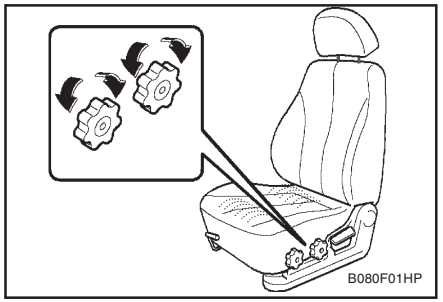
Lumbar Support Control (Driver's seat only) (If installed)



To adjust the lumbar support, turn the handle on the inboard side of the seat. To increase the amount of lumbar support, pull the lever forward. To decrease it, push the lever toward the rear.

B080F01S-AAT

Seat Cushion Height Adjustment (Driver's Seat Only) (If Installed)



To raise or lower the front part of the seat cushion, turn the front knob forward or rearward. To raise or lower the rear part of the seat cushion, turn the rear knob forward or rearward.

B090A02Y-AAT

POWER DRIVER'S SEAT (If installed)

The driver's seat can be adjusted appropriately by using the control knob on the left side of the seat. Before driving, adjust the seat to the proper position so as to easily control the steering wheel, pedals and switches on the instrument panel.

CAUTION:

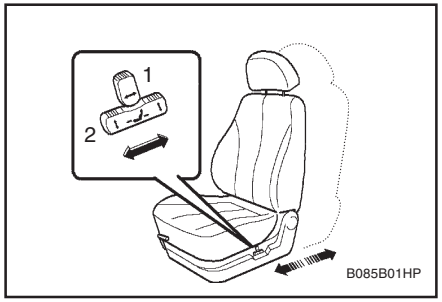
Do not operate two knobs at the same time.

WARNING:

- **Never attempt to adjust the seat while the vehicle is moving. This could result in loss of control or an accident causing death, serious injury, or property damage.**
- **Do not sit or lean unnecessarily close to the airbag.**

B090B01L-AAT

Adjusting Seat Forward and Rearward

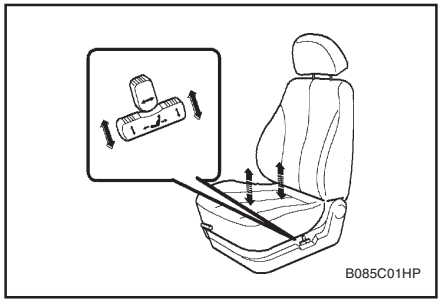


Pull the control knob forward or backward to move the seat forward or backward to the desired position. Release the knob and the seat will lock at that position.

1. Reclining Control Knob
2. Sliding and Height Adjusting Control Knob

B090C01Y-AAT

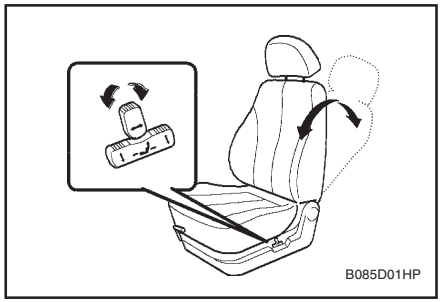
Seat Cushion Height Adjustment



Move the front portion of the control knob up or down to raise or lower the front part of the seat cushion. Move the rear portion of the control knob up or down to raise or lower the rear part of the seat cushion.

B090D01Y-AAT

Adjusting Seatback Angle



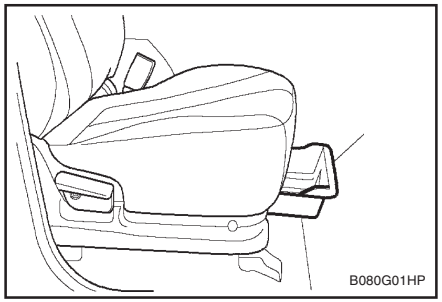
Rotate the upper portion of the control knob forward or backward to recline the seatback to the desired position. Release the control knob and then the seatback will lock in that position.

WARNING:

To minimize the risk of personal injury in the event of a collision or a sudden stop, both the driver's and passenger's seatbacks should remain in an upright position while the car is in motion. The protection provided by the seat belts and airbags may be reduced significantly when the seatbacks are reclined. There is a greater risk that the seat occupants will slide under the belt resulting in serious injury if a crash occurs when the seatbacks are reclined. The seat belt cannot provide full protection to an occupant if the seatback is reclined.

B080G01O-AAT

UNDER TRAY



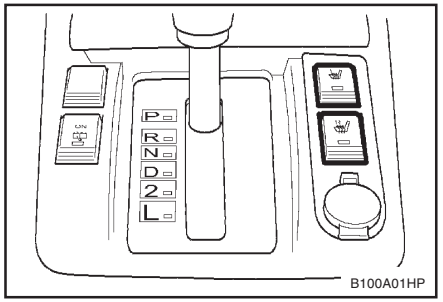
The tray is located under the front passenger seat. It is opend by pulling forward.

WARNING:

To avoid the possibility of injury in case of an accident or a sudden stop, the tray should be kept closed when the car is in motion.

B100A01HP-GAT

SEAT WARMER (If Installed)



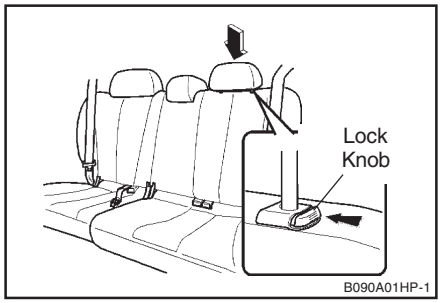
The seat warmer is provided to warm the front seats during cold weather. With the ignition key in the "ON" position, push either of the switches to warm the driver's seat or the passenger's seat. During mild weather or under conditions where the operation of the seat warmer is not needed, keep the switches in the "OFF" position.

- o The seat warmer will not operate if ambient temperature is higher than 37 ± 3°C.
- o If the seat warmer doesn't works when ambient temperature is lower than 28 ± 3.5°C, it must be checked by authorized dealer.

B090A01HP-GAT

SECOND SEAT

Adjustable Headrests (If installed)



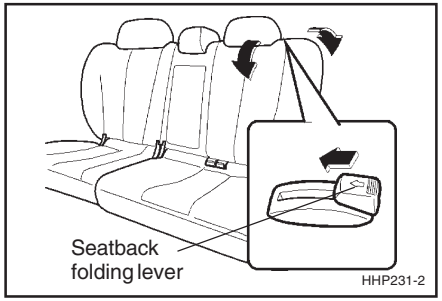
Headrests are designed to help reduce the risk of neck injuries.
To raise the headrest, pull it up. To lower it, push it down while pressing the lock knob.

WARNING:

- **For maximum effectiveness in case of an accident, the headrest should be adjusted so the top of the headrest is at the same height as the top of the occupant's ears. The use of a cushion that holds the body away from the seatback is not recommended.**
- **Do not operate vehicle with the headrests removed as severe injury to an occupant may occur in the event of an accident. Headrests may provide protection against severe neck injuries when properly adjusted.**

B090C01HP-GAT

Adjusting Seatback Angle



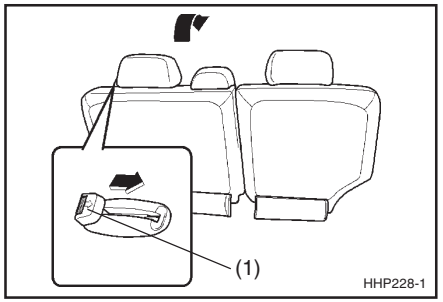
To recline the seatback, push the seatback folding lever toward the headrest, and release it after the desired seatback angle is achieved.
When you recline the seatback to desired position, always be sure it has locked into position.

B090B01HP-DAT

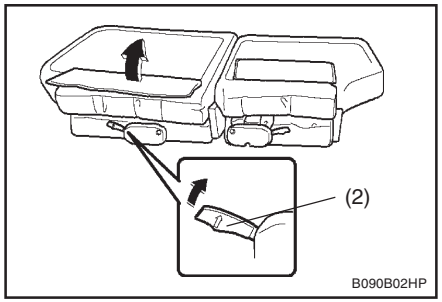
Folding Rear Seatback and Seat Cushion

For greater convenience, the entire seatback and seat cushion may be folded down and up.

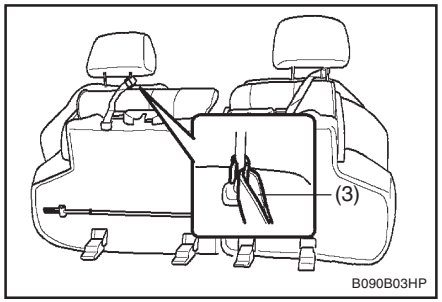
1. Lower the headrest completely while pressing the lock knob. (If installed)



2. To fold down the seatback , first push and hold the seatback folding lever(1) inward, then push down the seatback.



3. Pull the seat cushion release lever(2) upward, then fold up the seat cushion.



4. To secure the seat, hook the securing strap(3) under the seat cushion to the headrest stay of front driver and passenger seat.
5. To return the seatback and seat cushion to its normal position, reverse the above procedure.

o When you return the seatback to its upright position, always be sure it is locked into position by pulling and pushing on the top of seatback.

WARNING:

o The purpose of the fold-down rear seat back and the fold-up rear seat cushion is to allow you to carry more objects than could be accommodated. Never allow passengers to sit on the cargo area while the car is moving. This is not a proper seating position and no seat belts are available for use when the seat back is folded down. This could result in serious injury or death in case of an accident or a sudden stop. Objects should not extend higher than the top of the front seatbacks.
This could allow cargo to slide forward and cause injury or damage during sudden stops.

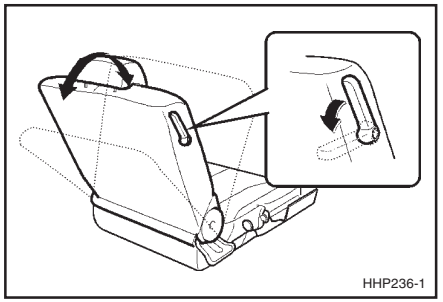
o When you return the rear seatback to its upright position after being folded down, be careful not to damage the seatbelt webbing or buckle. In addition, do not allow the seatbelt webbing or buckle to get caught or pinched in the rear seat.

o Do not allow passengers to fold down and up the seatback and seat cushion while the car is moving.

B095A02HP-GAT

THIRD SEAT(For 7 Passengers)

Adjusting Seatback Angle

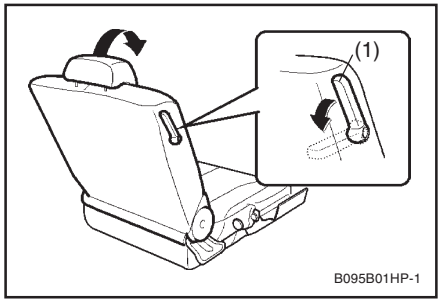


To recline the seatback, pull the seatback recliner control lever backwards, and release it after the desired seatback angle is achieved. When you recline the seatback to desired position, always be sure it has locked into position.

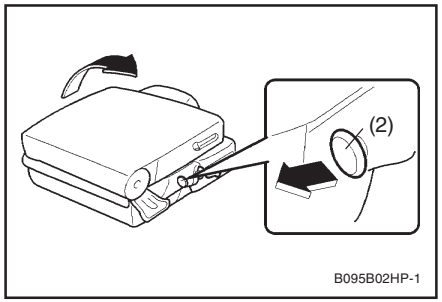
B095B03HP-GAT

Folding Rear Seatback and Seat cushion

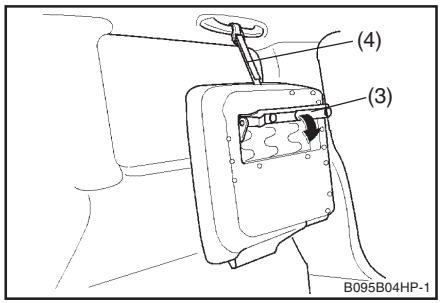
1. Lower the headrest completely while pressing the lock knob (If installed).



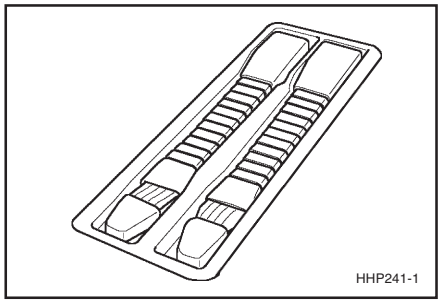
2. To fold down the seatback, pull the seatback recliner control lever(1), then push down the seatback.



3. Pull the seat cushion release knob(2) beside the seat cushion, then fold the seat cushion sideways.



4. To secure the seat, fold the leg of the third seat(3) and hook the securing strap(4) under the seat cushion to the assist handle.



5. Fix the seat belt buckle in the groove not to damage it.
6. To return the seatback and seat cushion to its normal position, reverse the above procedure.

o When you return the seat cushion to its normal position, always lower the leg of the third seat to lock the seat into position.

WARNING:

o The purpose of the fold-down rear seat back and the fold-up rear seat cushion is to allow you to carry more objects than could be accommodated. Never allow passengers to sit on the cargo area while the car is moving. This is not a proper seating position and no seat belts are available for use when the seat back is folded down. This could result in serious injury or death in case of an accident or a sudden stop. Objects should not extend higher than the top of the front seatbacks. This could allow cargo to slide forward and cause injury or damage during sudden stops.

o When you return the rear seatback to its upright position after being folded down, be careful not to damage the seatbelt webbing or buckle. In addition, do not allow the seatbelt webbing or buckle to get caught or pinched in the rear seat.

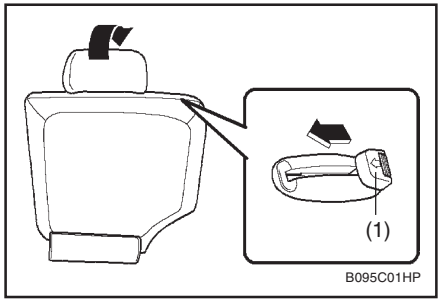
o Do not allow passengers to fold down and up the seatback and seat cushion while the car is moving.

B095C01HP-GAT

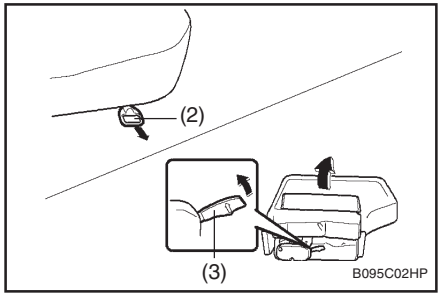
To get in and out of the third seat

The second seat should be folded up to get in and out of the third seat.

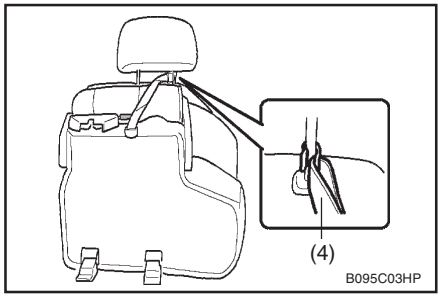
1. Lower the headrest completely while pressing the lock knob.(If installed)



2. To fold down the seatback , first push and hold the seatback folding lever (1) inward, then push down the seatback.



3. To get in the third seat, pull the handle for folding the seat cushion (2) beside the seat cushion, then fold up the seat cushion.
   To get out of the third seat, pull the seat cushion release lever (3) upward and fold up the seat cushion.



4. To secure the seat, hook the securing strap (4) under the seat cushion to the headrest stay of front driver and passenger seat.

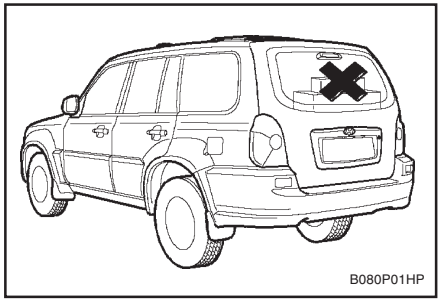
After doing above procedure, passengers can get in or get out of the third seat.

WARNING:

Do not allow passengers to fold down and up the seatback and seat cushion while the car is moving.

B080P01B-GAT

REAR SEAT WARNING



For the safety of all passengers, luggage or other cargo should not be piled higher than the top of the seatback.

B150A02A-GAT

SEAT BELT PRECAUTIONS

All occupants of the vehicle should wear their seat belts at all times. Indeed, your province's laws may require that some or all occupants of the vehicle use seat belts.

The possibility of injury or the severity of injury in an accident will be decreased if this elementary safety precaution is observed. In addition, the following recommendations are made:

B150B01Y-GAT

Infant or Small Child

Some countries require the use of child restraint systems for infants and small children. Whether this is required by law or not, it is strongly recommended that a child restraint seat or infant restraint system be used for infants or small children weighing less than 18 kilograms (40 pounds).

NOTE:

Small children are best protected in an accident when properly restrained by a child restraint system.

B150C02A-AAT

Larger Children

Children who are too large for child restraint systems should always occupy the rear seat and use the available lap/shoulder belts. The lap portion should be fastened snug on the hips and as low as possible. Check belt fit periodically. A child's squirming could put the belt out of position. Children are afforded the most safety in the event of an accident when they are restrained by a proper restraint system in the rear seat. If a larger child (over age 13) must be seated in the front seat, the child should be securely restrained by the available lap/shoulder belt and the seat should be placed in the rearmost position. Children under the age of 13 should be restrained securely in the rear seat. NEVER place a child under the age of 13 in the front seat. NEVER place a rear facing child seat in the front seat of a vehicle.

B150D01A-AAT

Pregnant Women

The use of a seat belt is recommended for pregnant women to lessen the chance of injury in an accident. When a seat belt is used, the lap belt portion should be placed as low and snugly as possible on the hips, not across the abdomen. For specific recommendations, consult a physician.

B150E01A-AAT

Injured Person

A seat belt should be used when an injured person is being transported. When this is necessary, you should consult a physician for recommendations.

B150F01A-AAT

One Person Per Belt

Two people (including children) should never attempt to use a single seat belt. This could increase the severity of injuries in case of an accident.

B150G01A-AAT

Do Not Lie Down

To reduce the chance of injuries in the event of an accident and to achieve maximum effectiveness of the restraint system, all passengers should be sitting up and the front seats should be in an upright position when the car is moving. A seat belt cannot operate properly if the person is lying down in the rear seat or if the front seat is in a reclined position.

WARNING:

Sitting in a reclined position or lying down when your vehicle is in motion can be dangerous. Even if you buckle up, your seat belts can't do their job when you're reclined.
The shoulder belt can't do its job because it won't be against your body. Instead, it will be in front of you. In a crash you could go into it with great force, receiving serious neck or other injuries.
The lap belt can't do its job either. In a crash the belt could go up over your abdomen. The belt forces would be applied there, not at your strong pelvic bones.
This could cause serious internal injuries.
For proper protection when the vehicle is in motion, have the seatback upright. Then sit well back in the seat and wear your seat belt properly. See page 1-21.

B160A01A-AAT

CARE OF SEAT BELTS

Seat belt systems should never be disassembled or modified. In addition, care should be taken to assure that seat belts and belt hardware are not damaged by seat hinges, doors or other abuse.

WARNING:

When you return the rear seatback to its upright position after the rear seatback was folded down, be careful not to damage the seat belt webbing or buckle. Be sure that the webbing or buckle does not get caught or pinched in the rear seat.

B160B01A-AAT

Periodic Inspection

It is recommended that all seat belts be inspected periodically for wear or damage of any kind. Parts of the system that are damaged should be replaced as soon as possible.

B160C01A-AAT

Keep Belts Clean and Dry

Seat belts should be kept clean and dry. If belts become dirty, they can be cleaned by using a mild soap solution and warm water. Bleach, dye, strong detergents or abrasives should not be used because they may damage and weaken the fabric.

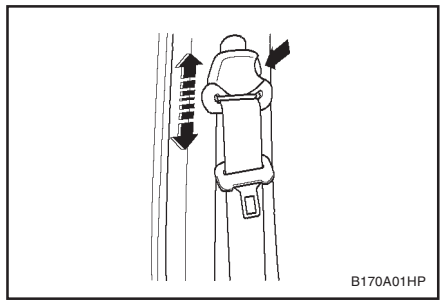
B160D01A-AAT

When to Replace Seat Belts

The entire seat belt assembly or assemblies should be replaced if the vehicle has been involved in an accident. This should be done even if no damage is visible. Additional questions concerning seat belt operation should be directed to your Hyundai Dealer.

B170A04A-AAT

HEIGHT ADJUSTABLE FRONT SEAT SHOULDER BELT (If installed)



You can adjust the height of the shoulder belt anchor to one of the 4 positions for maximum comfort and safety.

If the height of the adjusting seat belt is too near your neck, you will not be getting the most effective protection. The shoulder portion should be adjusted so that it lies across your chest and midway over your shoulder nearest the door and not your neck.

To adjust the height of the seat belt anchor, lower or raise the height adjuster into an appropriate position. To raise the height adjuster, pull it up. To lower it, push it down while pressing the height adjuster button.

Release the button to lock the anchor into position. Try sliding the height adjuster to make sure that it has locked into the position.

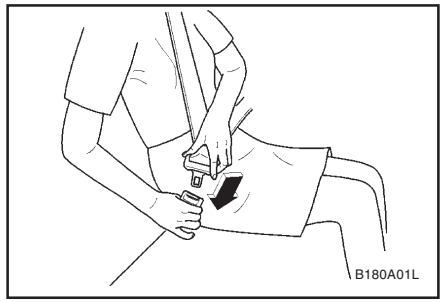
WARNING:

- **The height adjuster must be in the locked position when the vehicle is moving.**
- **The misadjustment of height of the shoulder belt could reduce the effectiveness of the seat belt in a crash.**

B180A02A-GAT

SEAT BELTS-Driver's and Passenger's 3-Point System with Webbing Clamp Locking Retractor (If installed)

To Fasten Your Belt



To fasten your seat belt, pull it out of the retractor and insert the metal tab into the buckle. There will be an audible "click" when the tab locks into the buckle.

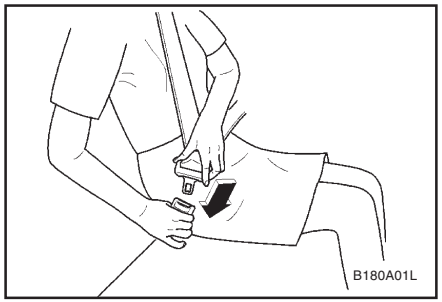
The seat belt automatically adjusts to the proper length only after the lap belt is adjusted manually so that it fits snugly around your hips. If you lean

forward in a slow, easy motion, the belt will extend and let you move around. If there is a sudden stop or impact, however, the belt will lock into position. It will also lock if you try to lean forward too quickly.

B180A02Y-GAT

SEAT BELTS-3-Point System with Emergency Locking Retractor (If installed)

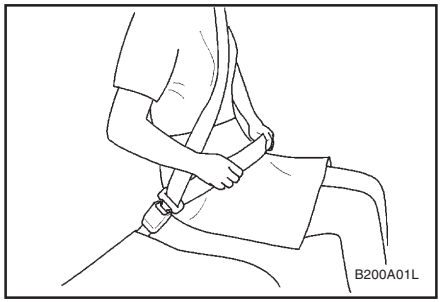
To Fasten Your Belt



To fasten your seat belt, pull it out of the retractor and insert the metal tab into the buckle. There will be an audible "click" when the tab locks into the buckle.
The seat belt automatically adjusts to the proper length only after the lap belt is adjusted manually so that it fits snugly around your hips. If you lean forward in a slow, easy motion, the belt will extend and let you move around. If there is a sudden stop or impact, however, the belt will lock into position. It will also lock if you try to lean forward too quickly. Check to make sure that the belt is properly locked and that the belt is not twisted.

B200A01A-GAT

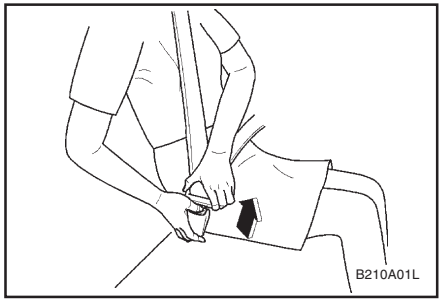
Adjusting Your Seat Belt



You should place the belt as low as possible on your hips, not on your waist. If located too high on your body, the chances of sliding out from under it and suffering serious injury or death are increased. Both arms should not be under or over the belt. Rather, one should be over and the other under, as shown in the illustration.

B210A01A-AAT

To Release the Seat Belt

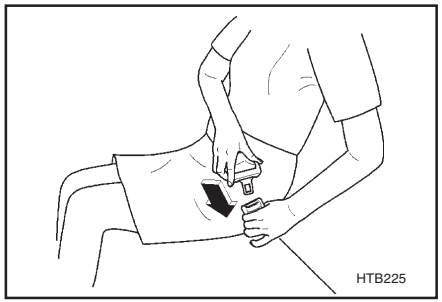


The seat belt is released by pressing the release button in the locking buckle. When it is released, the belt should automatically draw back into the retractor.
If this does not happen, check the belt to be sure it is not twisted, then try again.

B220A01A-AAT

SEAT BELTS (2-Point Static Type) (Rear Seat Center)

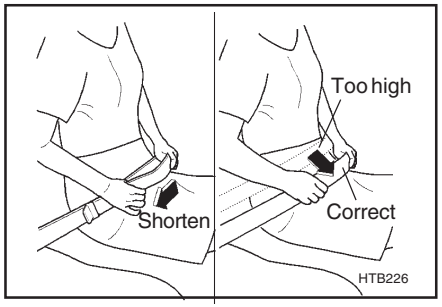
To Fasten Your Seat Belt



To fasten a 2-point static type belt, insert the metal tab into the locking buckle. There will be an audible "click" when the tab locks into the buckle. Check to make sure the belt is properly locked and that the belt is not twisted.

B220B01A-AAT

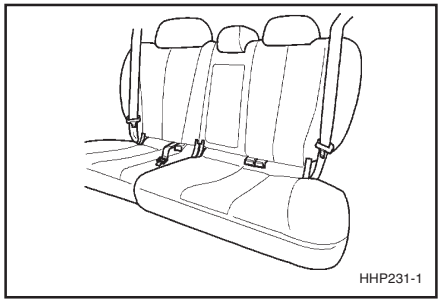
Adjusting Your Seat Belt



With a 2-point static type seat belt, the length must be adjusted manually so it fits snugly around your body. Fasten the belt and pull on the loose end to tighten. The belt should be placed as low as possible on your hips, not on your waist. If the belt is too high, it could increase the possibility of your being injured in an accident.

B220C01A-AAT

To Release the Seat Belt



When you want to release the seat belt, press the button in the locking buckle.

WARNING:

The center lap belt latching mechanism is different from those for the rear seat shoulder belts. When fastening the rear seat shoulder belts or the center lap belt, make sure they are inserted into the correct buckles to obtain maximum protection from the seat belt system and assure proper operation.

B230A03P-GAT

CHILD RESTRAINT SYSTEM

(If Installed)

Children riding in the car should sit in the rear seat and must always be properly restrained to minimize the risk of injury in an accident, sudden stop or sudden maneuver. According to accident statistics, children are safer when properly restrained in the rear seats than in the front seat. Larger children not in a child restraint should use one of the seat belts provided.

You are required by law to use safety restraints for children. If small children ride in your vehicle you must put them in a child restraint system (safety seat).

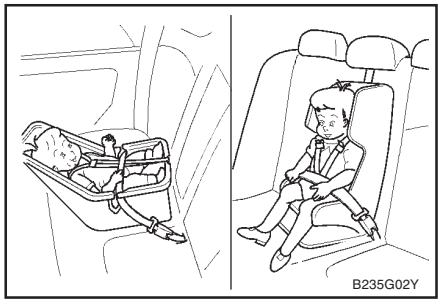
Children could be injured or killed in a crash if their restraints are not properly secured. For small children and babies, a child seat or infant seat must be used. Before buying a particular child restraint system, make sure it fits your car and seat belts, and fits your child. Follow all the instructions provided by the manufacturer when installing the child restraint system.

WARNING:

- **A child restraint system must be placed in the rear seat. Never install a child or infant seat on the front passenger's seat. Should an accident occur and cause the passenger's side airbag to deploy, it could severely injure or kill an infant or child seated in an infant or child seat. Thus, only use a child restraint in the rear seat of your vehicle.**
- **Since a safety belt or child restraint system can become very hot if it is left in a closed vehicle, be sure to check the seat cover and buckles before placing a child there.**
- **When the child restraint system is not in use, fasten it with a safety belt so that it will not be thrown forward in the case of a sudden stop or an accident.**
- **Children who are too large to be in a child restraint should sit in the rear seat and be restrained with the available lap/shoulder belts. Never allow children to ride in the front passenger seat.**
- **Always make sure that the shoulder belt portion of the outboard lap/shoulder belt is positioned midway over the shoulder, never across the neck or behind the back. Moving the child closer to the center of the vehicle may help provide a good shoulder belt fit. The lap belt portion of the lap/shoulder belt or the center seat lap belt must always be positioned as low as possible on the child's hips and as snug as possible.**
- **If the seat belt will not properly fit the child, Hyundai recommends the use of an approved booster seat in the rear seat in order to raise the child's seating height so that the seat belt will properly fit the child.**
- **Never allow a child to stand up or kneel on the seat.**
- **Never use an infant carrier or child safety seat that "hooks" over a seatback; it may not provide adequate security in an accident.**
- **Never allow a child to be held in a person's arms while they are in a moving vehicle, as this could result in serious injury to the child in the event of an accident or a sudden stop. Holding a child in a moving vehicle does not provide the child with any means of protection during an accident, even if the person holding the child is wearing a seat belt.**
- **If the child restraint seat is not anchored properly, the risk of a child being seriously injured or killed in a collision greatly increases.**

B230F01A-GAT

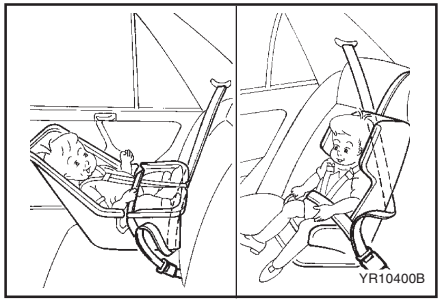
Installation on Center Rear Seat



Use the center seat belt for the rear to secure the child restraint system as illustrated. After installation of the child restraint system, rock the child seat back and forth, and side to side to ensure that it is properly secured by the seat belt.
If the child seat moves, readjust the length of the seat belt. Then, if equipped, insert the child restraint tether strap hook into the child restraint hook holder and tighten to secure the seat. Always refer to the child restraint system manufacturer's recommendation before installing the child restraint system in your vehicle.

B230G01A-GAT

Installation on the Outboard Rear Seats



To install a child restraint system on the outboard rear seats, extend the shoulder/lap belt from its retractor. Buckle the seat belt and allow the seat belt to take up any slack. Make sure that the lap portion of the belt is tight around the child restraint system and the shoulder portion of the belt is positioned so that it cannot interfere with the child's head or neck. After installation of the child restraint system, try to move it in all directions to be sure the child restraint system is securely installed.
If you need to tighten the belt, pull more webbing toward the retractor. When you unbuckle the seat belt and allow it to retract, the retractor will automatically revert back to its normal seated passenger emergency locking usage condition.

NOTE:

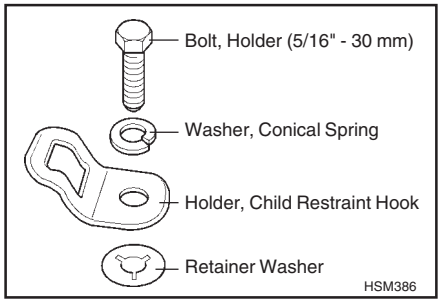
- **Before installing the child restraint system, read the instructions supplied by the child restraint system manufacturer.**
- **If the seat belt does not operate as described, have the system checked immediately by your authorized Hyundai dealer.**

WARNING:

Do not install any child restraint system in the front passenger seat. Should an accident occur and cause the passenger's side airbag to deploy, it could severely injure or kill an infant or child seated in an infant or child seat. Therefore, only use a child restraint system in the rear seat of your vehicle.

B230B02A-AAT

Using a Child Restraint System With "Tether Anchorage" System

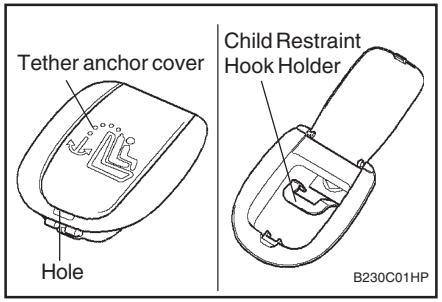


For small children and babies, the use of a child seat or infant seat is required. This child seat or infant seat should be of appropriate size for the child and should be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. It is further required that the seat be placed in the vehicle's rear seat since this can make an important contribution to safety. Your vehicle is provided with three child restraint hook holders for installing the child seat or infant seat.

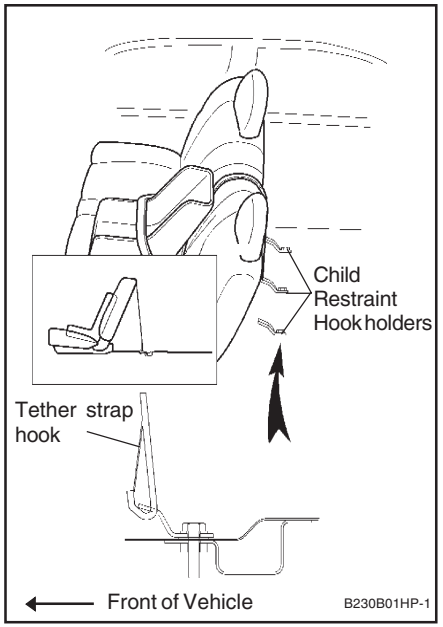
B230C02HP-GAT

Securing a Child Restraint System with "Tether Anchorage" System

Three child restraint hook holders are located on the floor behind the second seat.
Install the child restraint seat according to the instructions provided as following.



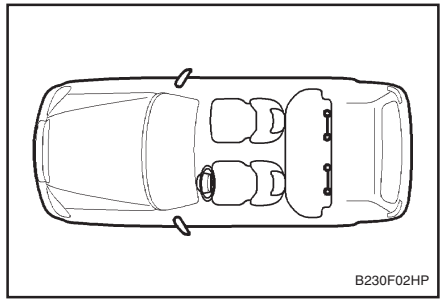
1. Open the tether anchor cover on the floor behind the rear seat with the key inserted in the hole.
2. Route the child restraint seat strap over the seatback.
   For vehicles with adjustable headrests, route the tether strap under the headrest and between the headrest posts, otherwise route the tether strap over the top of the seatback.



3. Connect the tether strap hook to the child restraint hook holder and tighten to secure the seat.

B230D03E-GAT

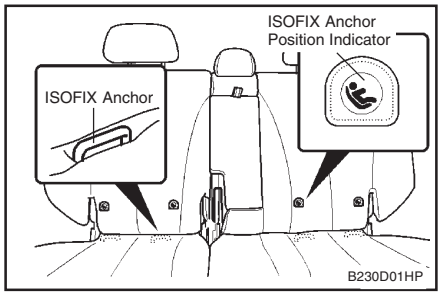
Securing a Child Restraint System with "ISOFIX" System and "Tether Anchorage" System



ISOFIX is a standardised method of fitting child seats that eliminates the need to use the standard adult seat belt to secure the seat in the vehicle. This enables a much more secure and positive location with the added benefit of easier and quicker installation.

An ISOFIX-seat can only be installed if it has vehicle-specific approval in accordance with the requirements of ECE-R44. For your Hyundai, the Hyundai ISOFIX GR1 / Hyundai Duo / Römer ISOFIX GR1 and the Römer Duo ISOFIX / Britax Duo ISOFIX is approved according to the requirement ECE-R44. This seat has been tested extensively by Hyundai and is recommended for your Hyundai.

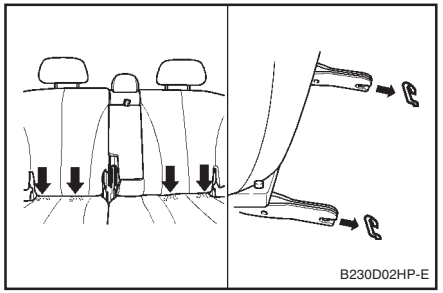
NOTE:
At present, this seat is the only one complying with that provision. In case that other manufacturers will furnish proof of a respective certification, Hyundai is going to evaluate this seat carefully and will give a recommendation provided that seat complies to the law. Please ask your Hyundai dealer in this respect.



On each side of the rear seat, between the cushion and backrest, are located a pair of ISOFIX anchorage points together with a top tether mounting on the luggage compartment. During the installing, the seat has to be engaged at the anchorage-points in a way you can hear it clicking (check by pulling!) and has to be fixed with the Top Tether-belt on the belonging point in the luggage-compartment. The installing and the use of a child-seat has to be done according to the installing-manual, which is added to the ISOFIX-seat.

NOTE:
An ISOFIX-child-seat can only be installed if the seat has a vehicle-specific approval according to ECE-R44. Before using the ISOFIX-child-seat, which was bought for another car, ask your Hyundai-dealer whether this seat-type is approved and recommended for your Hyundai.

To secure the child restraint seat



1. To engage the child restraint seat to the ISOFIX anchor, insert the child restraint seat latch into the ISOFIX anchor. Listen for the audible "click" sound.
2. Connect the tether strap hook to the child restraint hook holder and tighten to secure the seat. Refer to "Securing a Child Restraint System with the Tether Anchorage System" on page 1-25.

WARNING:

- **Do not install a child restraint seat at the center of the rear seat using the vehicle's ISOFIX anchors. The ISOFIX anchors are only provided for the left and right outboard rear seating positions. Do not misuse the ISOFIX anchors by attempting to attach a child restraint seat in the middle of the rear seat to the ISOFIX anchors. In a crash, the child restraint seat ISOFIX attachments may not be strong enough to secure the child restraint seat properly in the center of the rear seat and may break, causing serious injury or death.**
- **Do not mount more than one child restraint to a child restraint lower anchorage point. The improper increased load may cause the anchorage points or tether anchor to break, causing serious injury or death.**
- **Attach the ISOFIX or ISOFIX-compatible child restraint seat only to the appropriate locations shown in the illustration.**
- **Always follow the installation and use instructions provided by the manufacturer of the child restraint.**

B230H02HP-GAT

Child Seat Restraint Suitability For Seat Position

Use child safety seats that have been officially approved and are appropriate for your children. When using the child safety seats, refer to the following table .

Age Group	Seating Position		
	Front Passenger	Rear Outboard	Rear Center
0 : Up to 10 kg (0 ~ 9 months)	X	U	U
0+ : Up to 13 kg (0 ~ 2 years)	X	U	U
I : 9kg to 18kg (9 months ~ 4 years)	X	U, L1	U
II & III : 15kg to 36kg (4 ~ 12 years)	X	UF	UF

U : Suitable for "universal" category restraints approved for use in this mass group

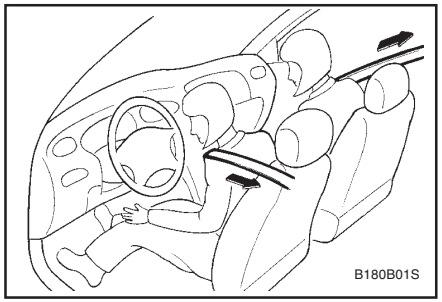
UF : Suitable for forward-facing "universal" category restraints approved for use in this mass group

L1: Suitable for "Römer ISOFIX GR1" approved for use in this mass group (Approval No: E1 R44-03301133)

X : Seat position not suitable for children in this mass group

B180B02HP-AAT

Pre-tensioner Seat Belt (If installed)



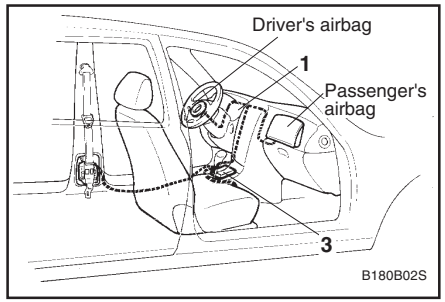
Your Hyundai vehicle is equipped with driver's and front passenger's pre-tensioner seat belts. The purpose of the pre-tensioner is to make sure that the seat belts fit tightly against the occupant's body in certain frontal collisions.
The pre-tensioner seat belts can be activated alone or, where the frontal collision is severe enough, together with the airbags.

When the vehicle stops suddenly, or if the occupant tries to lean forward too quickly, the seat belt retractor will lock into position. In certain frontal collisions, the pre-tensioner will activate and pull the seat belt into tighter contact against the occupant's body.

The seat belt pre-tensioner system consists mainly of the following components.

Their locations are shown in the illustration.

1. SRS airbag warning light
2. Seat belt pre-tensioner assembly
3. SRS control module



WARNING:
To obtain maximum benefit from a pre-tensioner seat belt:

1. **The seat belt must be worn correctly.**
2. **The seat belt must be adjusted to the correct position.**

NOTE:
- **Both the driver's and front passenger's pre-tensioner seat belts will be activated in certain frontal collisions. The pre-tensioner seat belts can be activated alone or, where the frontal collision is severe enough, together with the airbags.**
- **When the pre-tensioner seat belts are activated, a loud noise may be heard and fine dust, which may appear to be smoke, may be visible in the passenger compartment. These are normal operating conditions and are not hazardous.**
- **Although it is harmless, the fine dust may cause skin irritation and should not be breathed for prolonged periods. Wash your hands and face thoroughly after an accident in which the pre-tensioner seat belts were activated.**

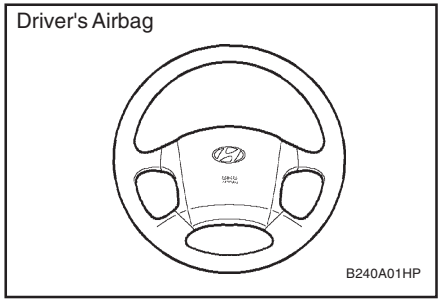
CAUTION:
- **Because the sensor that activates the SRS airbag is connected with pre-tensioner seat belt, the SRS airbag warning light AIR BAG on the instrument panel will blink for approximately 6 seconds after the ignition key has been turned to the "ON" position, and then it should turn off.**
- **If pre-tensioner seat belt is not working properly, this warning light will illuminate even if there is no malfunction of the SRS airbag. If the SRS airbag warning light does not illuminate when the ignition key is turned to "ON" or if it remains illuminated after blinking for approximately 6 seconds, or if it illuminates while the vehicle is being driven, please have an authorized Hyundai dealer inspect the pre-tensioner seat belts and SRS airbag system as soon as possible.**

WARNING:
- **Pre-tensioners are designed to operate only one time. After activation, pre-tensioner seat belts must be replaced. All seat belts, of any type, should always be replaced after they have been worn during a collision.**
- **The pre-tensioner seat belt assembly mechanisms become hot during activation. Do not touch the pre-tensioner seat belt assemblies for several minutes after they have been activated.**
- **Do not attempt to inspect or replace the pre-tensioner seat belts yourself. This must be done by an authorized Hyundai dealer.**
- **Do not strike the pre-tensioner seat belt assemblies.**
- **Do not attempt to service or repair the pre-tensioner seat belt system in any manner.**
- **Improper handling of the pre-tensioner seat belt assemblies, and failure to heed the warnings to not strike, modify, inspect, replace, service or repair the pre-tensioner seat belt assemblies may lead to improper operation or inadvertent activation and serious injury.**

- **Always wear seat belts when driving or riding in a motor vehicle.**

B240A02Y-AAT

SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT (AIRBAG) SYSTEM (If Installed)

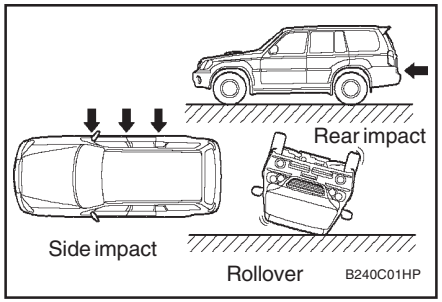


Your Hyundai is equipped with a Supplemental Restraint (Airbag) System. The indications of the system's presence are the letters "SRS AIR BAG" embossed on the airbag pad cover in the steering wheel and the passenger's side front panel pad above the glove box.

The Hyundai SRS consists of airbags installed under the pad covers in the center of the steering wheel and the passenger's side front panel above the glove box. The purpose of the SRS is to provide the vehicle's driver and/or the front passenger with additional protection than that offered by the seat-belt system alone, in case of a frontal impact of sufficient severity.

NOTE:
Be sure to read information about the SRS on the labels provided on the backside of the sun visor and in the glove box.

WARNING:
- **As its name implies, the SRS is designed to work with, and be supplemental to, the driver's and the passenger's three point seat belt systems and is not a substitute for them. Therefore, your seat belts must be worn at all times while the vehicle is in motion. The airbags deploy only in certain frontal impact conditions severe enough to likely cause significant injury to the vehicle occupants.**
- **The SRS is designed to deploy the airbags only when an impact is sufficiently severe and when the impact angle is less than 30° from the forward longitudinal axis of the vehicle and will not deploy in side, rear or rollover impacts. Additionally, the airbags will only deploy once. Thus, seat belts must be worn at all times.**
- **Front airbags are not intended to deploy in light collisions in which protection can be provided by the seat belt alone.**

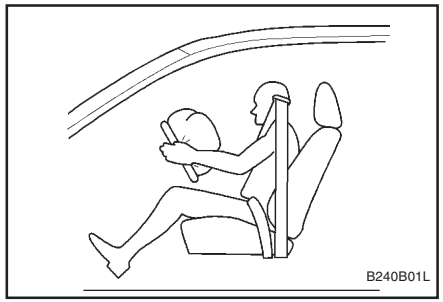


- **Front airbags are not intended to deploy in side-impact, rear-impact or rollover crashes. In addition, airbags will not deploy in frontal crashes below the deployment threshold speed.**
- **The driver should sit back as far as possible while still maintaining control of the vehicle. If you are sitting too close to the airbag, it can cause death or serious injury when it inflates.**
- **No objects should be placed over or near the airbag modules on the steering wheel, instrument panel, and the front passenger's panel above the glove box, because any such object could cause harm if the vehicle is in a crash severe enough to cause the airbags to deploy.**
- **If the airbags deploy, they must be replaced by an authorized Hyundai dealer.**

- **Do not tamper with or disconnect SRS wiring, or other components of the SRS system. Doing so could result in injury, due to accidental firing of the airbags or by rendering the SRS inoperative.**
- **Do not install a child restraint system in the front passenger seat position. A child restraint system must never be placed in the front seat. The infant or child could be severely injured or killed by an airbag deployment in case of an accident. Do not allow children to ride in the front passenger seat. If older children (teenagers and older) must ride in the front seat, make sure they are always properly belted and that the seat is moved back as far as possible.**
- **For maximum safety protection in all types of crashes, all occupants including the driver should always wear their seat belts whether or not an airbag is also provided at their seating position to minimize the risk of severe injury or death in the event of a crash. Do not sit or lean unnecessarily close to the airbag while the vehicle is in motion.**

B240B02A-AAT

SRS Components and Functions

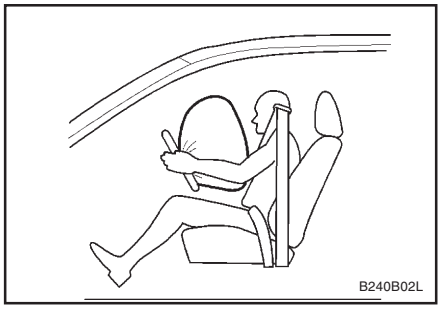


The SRS consists of the following components:

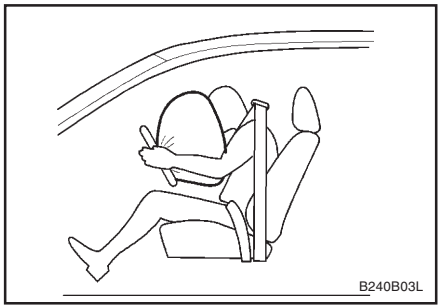
- Driver's Airbag Module
- Passenger's Airbag Module
- Knee Bolster
- SRS Service Reminder Indicator (SRI)
- SRS Control Module (SRSCM)

The SRSCM continually monitors all elements while the ignition is "ON" to determine if a frontal or near-frontal impact is severe enough to require airbag deployment.

The SRS service reminder indicator (SRI) on the instrument panel will blink for about 6 seconds after the ignition key is turned to the "ON" position or after the engine is started, after which the SRI should go out.



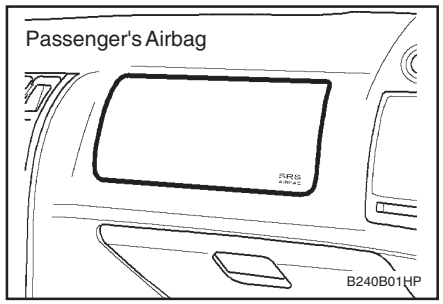
The airbag modules are located both in the center of the steering wheel and in the front passenger's panel above the glove box. When the SRSCM detects a considerable impact to the front of the vehicle, it will automatically deploy the airbags.



Upon deployment, tear seams molded directly into the pad covers will separate under pressure from the expansion of the airbags. Further opening of the covers then allows full inflation of the airbags.

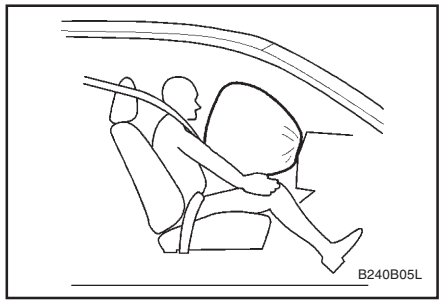
A fully inflated airbag in combination with a properly worn seat belt slows the driver's or the passenger's forward motion, thus reducing the risk of head or chest injury.

After complete inflation, the airbag immediately starts deflating, enabling the driver to maintain forward visibility.



CAUTION:

When installing a container of liquid air freshener inside the vehicle, do not place it near the instrument cluster nor on the instrument panel surface. If there is any leakage from the air freshener onto these areas (Instrument cluster, instrument panel or air ventilator), it may damage these parts. If the liquid from the air freshener does leak onto these areas, wash them with water immediately.



WARNING:

- **When the SRS is activated, there may be a loud noise and fine dust will be released through the vehicle. These conditions are normal and are not hazardous. However, the fine dust generated during airbag deployment may cause skin irritation. Wash your hands and face thoroughly with lukewarm water and a mild soap after an accident in which the airbags were deployed.**
- **The SRS can function only when the ignition key is in the "ON" position. If the SRS SRI does not come on, or continuously remains on after flashing for about 6 seconds when the ignition key is turned to the "ON" position, or after the engine is started, comes on while driving, the SRS is not working properly. If this occurs, have your vehicle immediately inspected by your Hyundai dealer.**
- **Before you replace a fuse or disconnect a battery terminal, turn the ignition key to the "LOCK" position or remove the ignition key. Never remove or replace the air bag related fuse(s) when the ignition key is in the "ON" position. Failure to heed this warning will cause the SRS SRI to illuminate.**

B240C01HP-GAT

SRS Care

The SRS is virtually maintenance-free and so there are no parts you can safely service by yourself. The entire SRS system must be inspected by an authorized Hyundai dealer in 10 years after the date that the vehicle was manufactured.

Any work on the SRS system, such as removing, installing, repairing, or any work on the steering wheel must be performed by a qualified Hyundai technician. Improper handling of the SRS system may result in serious personal injury.

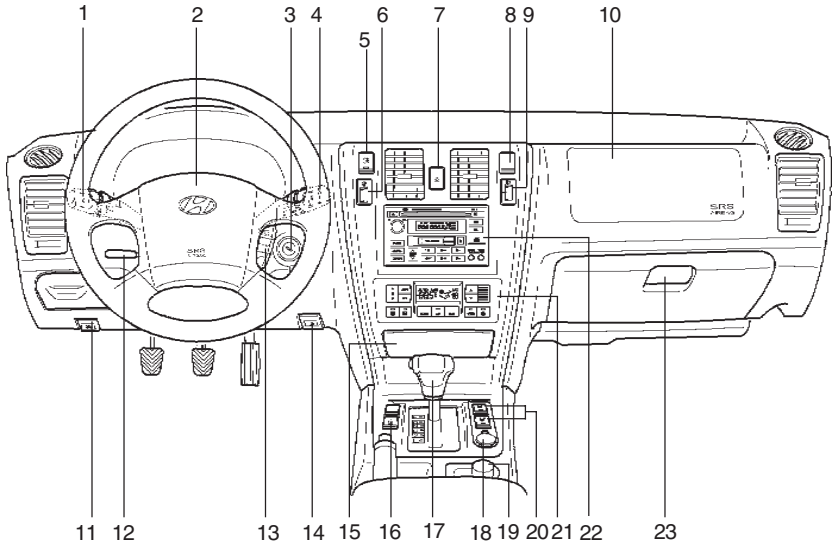


WARNING:

- **Extreme Hazard! Do not use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an airbag in front of it.**
- **Modification to SRS components or wiring, including the addition of any kind of badges to the pad covers or modifications to the body structure, can adversely affect SRS performance and lead to possible injury.**
- **For cleaning the airbag pad covers, use only a soft, dry cloth or one which has been moistened with plain water. Solvents or cleaners could adversely affect the airbag covers and proper deployment of the system.**
- **No objects should be placed over or near the airbag modules on the steering wheel, instrument panel, and the front passenger's panel above the glove box, because any such object could cause harm if the vehicle is in a crash severe enough to cause the airbags to inflate.**
- **If the airbags inflate, they must be replaced by an authorized Hyundai dealer.**
- **Do not tamper with or disconnect SRS wiring, or other components of the SRS system. Doing so could result in injury, due to accidental firing of the airbags or by rendering the SRS inoperative.**
- **Do not install a child restraint system in the front passenger seat position.**
- **A child restraint system must never be placed in the front seat. The infant or child could be severely injured by an airbag deployment in case of an accident.**
- **If components of the airbag system must be discarded, or if the vehicle must be scrapped, certain safety precautions must be observed. Your Hyundai dealer knows these precautions and can give you the necessary information. Failure to follow these precautions and procedures could increase the risk of personal injury.**
- **If you sell your vehicle, make certain that this manual is transferred to the new owner.**
- **If your car was flooded and has soaked carpeting or water on flooring, you shouldn't try to start engine; have the car towed to authorized Hyundai dealer.**
- **Do not replace the bumper or the bumper guard with the one other than the Hyundai genuine parts. Otherwise, it can adversely affect SRS performance and lead to unexpected injury.**

B250A02HP-GAT

INSTRUMENTS AND CONTROLS



1. Multi-Function Light Switch / Front Fog Light Switch
2. Horn and Driver's Airbag (If installed)
3. Ignition Switch
4. Windshield Wiper/Washer Switch
5. Rear Fog Light (If installed)
6. Panel Brightness Control Knob (Rheostat Switch) (If installed)
7. Hazard Warning Switch
8. Cruise Control Main Switch (If installed)
9. Headlight Leveling Switch (If installed)
10. Passenger's Airbag (If installed)
11. Hood Release Lever
12. Steering Wheel Tilt Lever (If installed)
13 Cruise Control Switch (If installed)
14. Remote Fuel-Filler Lid Release Lever
15. Ashtray
16. Rear Window Wiper/Washer Switch (If installed)
17. Shift Lever
18. Power Outlet
19. Transfer Shift Knob
20. Seat Warmer Switch (If installed)
21. Heating/Air Conditioning Control Panel
22. Audio System (If installed)
23. Glove Box

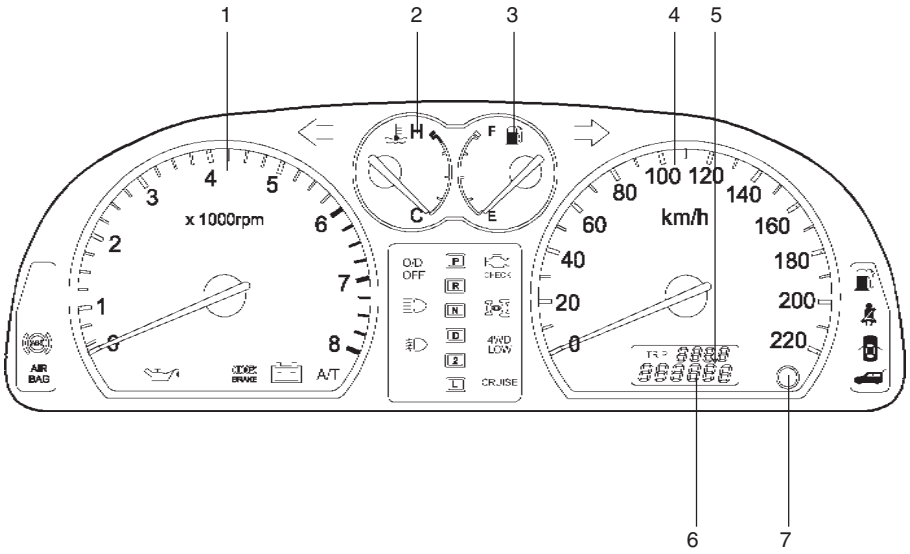
CAUTION:

When installing a container of liquid air freshener inside the vehicle, do not place it near the instrument cluster nor on the instrument panel surface. If there is any leakage from the air freshener onto these areas (Instrument cluster, instrument panel or air ventilator), it may damage these parts. If the liquid from the air freshener does leak onto these areas, wash them with water immediately.

B250A01HP

B260A02HP-GAT

INSTRUMENT CLUSTER (GASOLINE ENGINE)

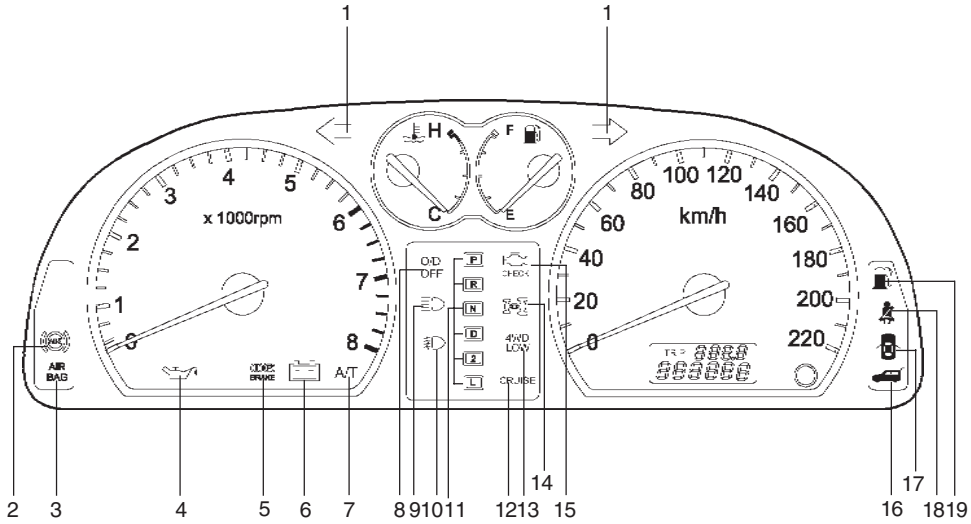


B260A01HP

1. Tachometer
2. Coolant Temperature Gauge
3. Fuel Gauge
4. Speedometer
5. Trip Odometer
6. Odometer
7. Trip odometer Reset Knob

B261A02HP-GAT

INDICATOR AND WARNING LIGHTS (GASOLINE ENGINE)

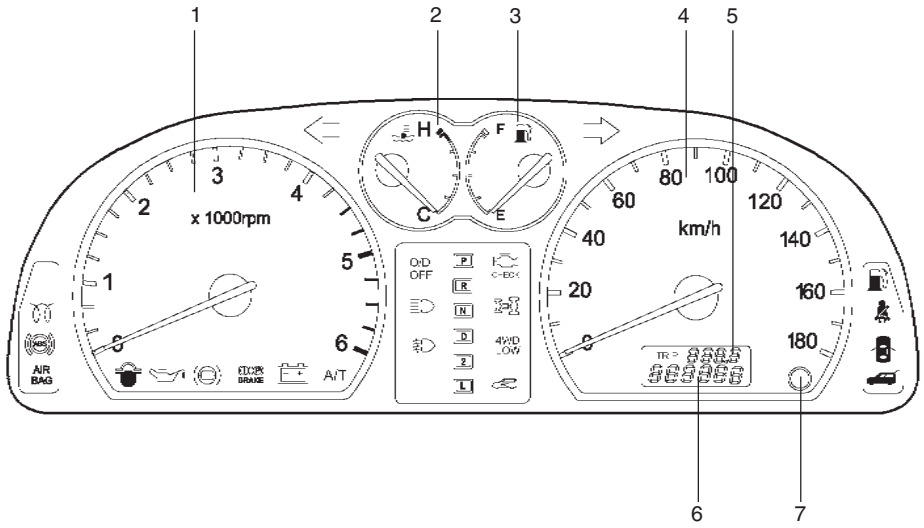


B260A01HP

1. Turn Signal Indicator Light
2. ABS Service Reminder Indicator Light (If installed)
3. Supplemental Restraint (AirBag) System Service Reminder Indicator (SRI) Light (If installed)
4. Low Oil Pressure Warning Light
5. Parking Brake/Low Brake Fluid Level Warning Light
6. Charging System Warning Light
7. A/T Oil Temperature Warning Light (If installed)
8. Overdrive Off Indicator Light (If installed)
9. High Beam Indicator Light
10. Front Fog Indicator Light
11. Automatic Transmission Position Indicator Light (If installed)
12. Cruise Indicator Light (If installed)
13. 4WD Low Indicator Light
14. 4WD Engaged Indicator Light
15. Malfunction Indicator Light (MIL)
16. Tailgate Open Warning Light
17. Door Ajar Warning Light
18. Seat Belt Warning Light (If installed)
19. Low Fuel Warning Light

B262A02HP-GAT

INSTRUMENT CLUSTER (DIESEL ENGINE)

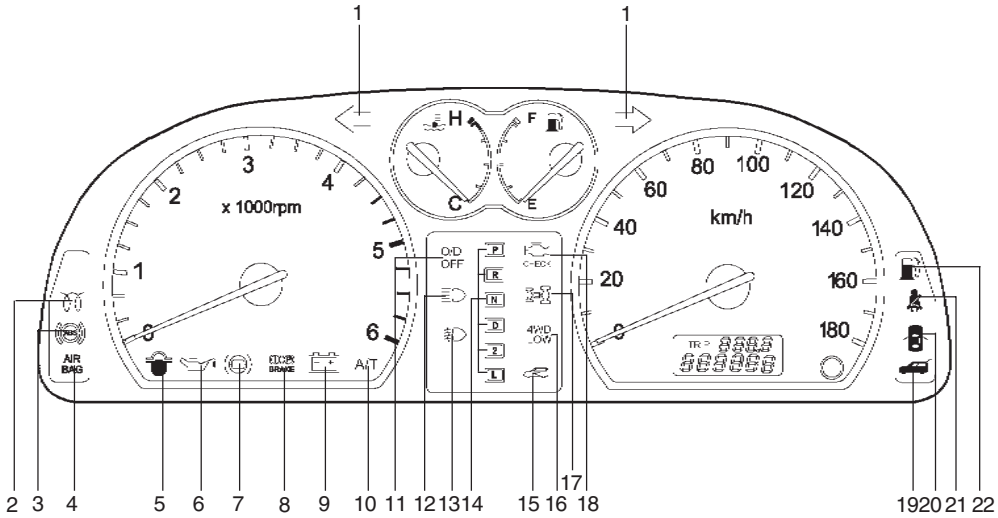


B260A02HP

1. Tachometer
2. Coolant Temperature Gauge
3. Fuel Gauge
4. Speedometer
5. Trip Odometer
6. Odometer
7. Trip Odometer Reset Knob

B264A02HP-GAT

INDICATOR AND WARNING LIGHTS (DIESEL ENGINE)



B260A02HP

1. Turn Signal Indicator Light
2. Diesel Preheat Indicator Light
3. ABS Service Reminder Indicator Light (If installed)
4. Supplemental Restraint (AirBag) System Service Reminder Indicator (SRI) Light (If installed)
5. Fuel Filter Warning Light
6. Low Oil Pressure Warning Light
7. Brake Vacuum Warning Light
8. Parking Brake/Low Brake Fluid Level Warning Light
9. Charging System Warning Light
10. A/T Oil Temperature Warning Light (If installed)
11. Overdrive Off Indicator Light (If installed)
12. High Beam Indicator Light
13. Front Fog Indicator Light
14. Automatic Transmission Position Indicator Light (If installed)
15. Immobilizer Warning Light (2.9 CRDi only) (If installed)
16. 4WD Low Indicator Light
17. 4WD Engaged Indicator Light
18. Malfunction Indicator Light (MIL) (If installed)
19. Tailgate Open Warning Light
20. Door Ajar Warning Light
21. Seat Belt Warning Light (If installed)
22. Low Fuel Warning Light

B260D01A-AAT

Turn Signal Indicator Lights

The blinking green arrows on the instrument panel show the direction indicated by the turn signals. If the arrow comes on but does not blink, blinks more rapidly than normal, or does not illuminate at all, a malfunction in the turn signal system is indicated. Your dealer should be consulted for repairs.

B260P02Y-GAT

ABS Service Reminder Indicator Light (If installed)

When the key is turned to the "ON" position, the Anti-Lock Brake System SRI will come on and then go off in a few seconds. If the ABS SRI remains on, comes on while driving, or does not come on when the key is turned to the "ON" position, this indicates that there may be a problem with the ABS.
If this occurs, have your vehicle checked by your Hyundai dealer as soon as possible. The normal braking system will still be operational, but without the assistance of the anti-lock brake system.

WARNING:

If both ABS SRI and Parking Brake/Brake fluid level warning lights remain "ON" or come on while driving, there may be a problem with E.B.D. (Electronic Brake Force Distribution).
If this occurs, avoid sudden stops and have your vehicle checked by your Hyundai dealer as soon as possible.

B260F01A-AAT

High Beam Indicator Light

The high beam indicator light comes on whenever the headlights are switched to the high beam or flash position.

B260G01A-AAT

Low Oil Pressure Warning Light

CAUTION:

If the oil pressure warning light stays on while the engine is running, serious engine damage may result. The oil pressure warning light comes on whenever there is insufficient oil pressure. In normal operation, it should come on when the ignition switch is turned on, then go out when the engine is started.
If the oil pressure warning light stays on while the engine is running, there is a serious malfunction.

If this happens, stop the car as soon as it is safe to do so, turn off the engine and check the oil level. If the oil level is low, fill engine oil to the proper level and start the engine again. If the light stays on with the engine running, turn the engine off immediately. In any instance where the oil light stays on when the engine is running, the engine should be checked by an authorized Hyundai dealer before the car is driven again.

B260C01A-AAT

O/D OFF Indicator (If Installed)

When the overdrive switch is turned on, the overdrive off indicator will go out. This amber indicator will be illuminated when the overdrive switch is turned off.

B260H02A-GAT

Parking Brake/Low Brake Fluid Level Warning Light

WARNING:

If you suspect brake trouble, have your brakes checked by a Hyundai dealer as soon as possible. Driving your car with a problem in either the brake electrical system or brake hydraulic system is dangerous, and could result in a serious injury or death.

Warning Light Operation

The parking brake/brake fluid level warning light should come on when the parking brake is applied and the ignition switch is turned to "ON" or "START". After the engine is started, the light should go out when the parking brake is released.
If the parking brake is not applied, the warning light should come on when the ignition switch is turned to "ON" or "START", then go out when the engine starts. If the light comes on at any other time, you should slow the vehicle and bring it to a complete stop in a safe location off the roadway.

The brake fluid level warning light indicates that the brake fluid level in the brake master cylinder is low and hydraulic brake fluid conforming to DOT 3 or DOT 4 specifications should be added. After adding fluid, if no other trouble is found, the car should be immediately and carefully driven to a Hyundai dealer for inspection. If further trouble is experienced, the vehicle should not be driven at all but taken to a dealer by a professional towing service or some other safe method.
Your Hyundai is equipped with dual-diagonal braking systems. This means you still have braking on two wheels even if one of the dual systems should fail. With only one of the dual systems working, more than normal pedal travel and greater pedal pressure are required to stop the car. Also, the car will not stop in as short a distance with only half of the brake system working. If the brakes fail while you are driving, shift to a lower gear for additional engine braking and stop the car as soon as it is safe to do so.

B260E01HP-GAT



Seat Belt Warning Light (If Installed)

The seat belt warning light blinks for about 6 seconds when the ignition key is turned from the "OFF" position to "ON" or "START".

B260Q01HP-DAT



Cruise Indicator Light (Gasoline Engine only) (If installed)

The cruise indicator light in the instrument cluster is illuminated only when the vehicle cruising speed has been set using the control switch on the steering wheel.
The indicator light does not illuminate when the main cruise control switch is activated.
Information on the use of cruise control may be found on page 1-64.

B260J01S-GAT



Charging System Warning Light

The charging system warning light should come on when the ignition is turned on, then go out when the engine is running. If the light stays on while the engine is running, there is a malfunction in the electrical charging system. If the light comes on while you are driving, stop, turn off the engine and check under the hood. First, make certain the generator drive belt is in place. If it is, check the tension of the belt.
And then, have the system checked by your Hyundai dealer.

CAUTION:

If the drive belt (generator belt) is loosen, broken, or mission while the vehicle is driving, there may be a serious malfunction, engine could overheat because this belt also drives the water pump.

B260L01A-GAT



Door Ajar Warning Light

The door ajar warning light warns you that a door is not completely closed.

B260M01A-AAT



Low Fuel Level Warning Light

The low fuel level warning light comes on when the fuel tank is approaching empty. When it comes on, you should add fuel as soon as possible. Driving with the fuel level warning light on or with the fuel level below "E" can cause the engine to misfire and damage the catalytic converter.

B260A01B-GAT



Front Fog Indicator Light

Front fog indicator light comes on whenever the fog light switch is on.

B260K01B-GAT



Tail gate Open Warning Light

This light remains on unless the tail gate is completely closed.

B260B01A-AAT

SRS (Airbag) Service Reminder Indicator (SRI) Light (If installed)

The SRS service reminder indicator (SRI) comes on and flashes for about 6 seconds after the ignition key is turned to the "ON" position or after the engine is started, after which it will go out.

This light also comes on when the SRS is not working properly. If the SRI does not come on, or continuously remains on after flashing for about 6 seconds when you turned the ignition key to the "ON" position or started the engine, or if it comes on while driving, have the SRS inspected by an authorized Hyundai Dealer.

B260N01A-AAT

Malfunction Indicator Light (If installed)

This light illuminates when there is a malfunction of an exhaust gas related component, and the system is not functioning properly so that the exhaust gas regulation values are not satisfied. This light will also illuminate when the ignition key is turned to the "ON" position, and will go out in a few seconds. If it illuminates while driving, or does not illuminate when the ignition key is turned to the "ON" position, take your car to your nearest authorized Hyundai dealer and have the system checked.

B260R01HP-GAT

4WD LOW Indicator Light

When the key is turned to the "ON" position, the 4WD(Four Wheel Drive) LOW indicator light will come on and then go off in a few seconds.
The 4WD LOW indicator light comes on when the transfer shift knob is set to low position (Part-time 4WD type : 4L position, Full-time 4WD type : LOW position).

B260T01HP-GAT

4WD Engaged Indicator Light (Part-time 4WD only)

When the key is turned to the "ON" position, the 4WD(Four Wheel Drive) engaged indicator light will come on and then go off in a few seconds.
The 4WD engaged indicator light will illuminate when the transfer shift knob is set to 4H position(Part-time 4WD only).

CAUTION:

If the 4WD engaged indicator light ( ) blinks (Full-time 4WD type) or illuminates with the 4WD LOW indicator light ( ) (Part-time 4WD type) while driving, this indicates that there is a malfunction in the 4WD system. If this occurs, have your vehicle checked by an authorized Hyundai dealer as soon as possible.

B260U01HP-DAT

A/T(Automatic Transmission) Oil Temperature Warning Light (If installed)

The A/T oil temperature warning light comes on when the automatic transmission oil temperature goes up to the temperature that may result in serious damage of automatic transmission.
If the A/T oil temperature warning light comes on while driving, park your vehicle in at a safe place as soon as possible. With the selector lever shifted into "P" position, allow the engine to idle until the warning light goes off. When the warning light goes off, the vehicle can be driven normally.

CAUTION:

If the warning light doesn't go off or blinks, this indicates that there is a malfunction in the automatic transmission or T.C.U (Transmission Control Unit). If this occurs, have your vehicle checked by an authorized Hyundai dealer.

B265A01B-GAT

Fuel Filter Warning Light(Diesel)

This light illuminates when the ignition switch is set to the "ON" position and goes off after the engine has started. If it lights up while the engine is running, it indicates that water has accumulated inside the fuel filter. If this happens, remove the water from the fuel filter. (Refer to "Do-It-Yourself Maintenance")

B265B01HP-GAT

Brake Vacuum Warning Light(Diesel)

WARNING:

If you suspect brake trouble, have your brakes checked by a Hyundai dealer as soon as possible. Driving your car with a problem in either the brake electrical system or brake hydraulic system is dangerous, and could result in serious injury or death.

The brake vacuum warning light should come on when the vacuum level in brake booster descends to about 275 mmHg or below. The brake system is designed to stop the vehicle with reserve assist if brake pedal is held down. This reserve is greatly reduced each time you release the brake. Without vacuum assist your vehicle can still be stopped by pushing much harder on brake pedal, however the stopping distance may be much longer. If the light comes on at any other time, you should slow the vehicle and bring it to a complete stop in a safe location off the roadway.

After starting the engine, do not drive the vehicle until the vacuum level is above 275 mmHg below atmosphere and warning light has turned off. If further trouble is experienced, the vehicle should not be driven at all but taken to a dealer by a professional towing service.

B265C02HP-GAT

Diesel Preheat Indication Light-amber

The indication light illuminates amber when the ignition switch is placed at the "ON" position. The engine can be started after the preheat indication light goes off. The illuminating time varies with the water temperature.

Water temperature (°C)	Illuminating time (2.5 TCI) (sec)
Below -30	22.5
-20	8
-15	6
60	0.5
80	0

Water temperature (°C)	Illuminating time (2.9 TCI) (sec)
Below -30	26
-25	20
-20	15
-15	10
-10	5.5
-5	3.5
0	2
20	0

NOTE:

If the engine were not started within 2 seconds after the preheating is completed, turn the ignition key once more to the "LOCK" position during 10 seconds, and then to the "ON" position, in order to preheat again.

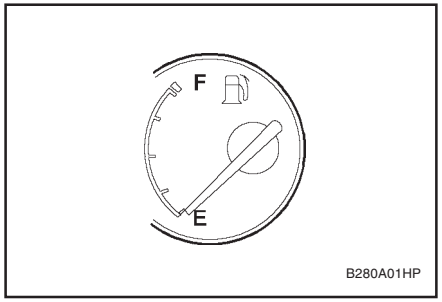
B270A01A-GAT

BRAKE PAD WEAR WARNING SOUND (If installed)

The front disc brake pads have wear indicators that should make a high-pitched squealing or scraping noise when new pads are needed. The sound may come and go or be heard all the time when the vehicle is moving. It may also be heard when the brake pedal is pushed down firmly. Excessive rotor damage will result if the worn pads are not replaced. See your Hyundai dealer immediately.

B280A01A-AAT

FUEL GAUGE

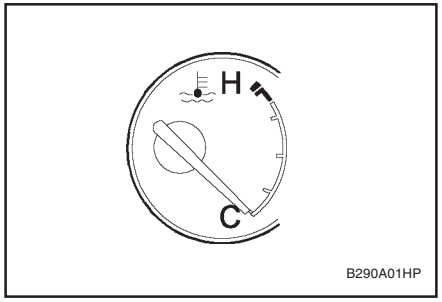


B280A01HP

The needle on the gauge indicates the approximate fuel level in the fuel tank. The fuel capacity is given in Section 9.

B290A02A-AAT

ENGINE COOLANT TEMPERATURE GAUGE



B290A01HP

WARNING:

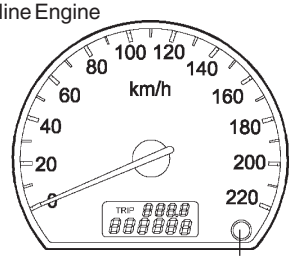
Never remove the radiator cap when the engine is hot. The engine coolant is under pressure and could erupt and cause severe burns. Wait until the engine is cool before removing the radiator cap.

The needle on the engine coolant temperature gauge should stay in the normal range. If it moves across the dial to "H" (Hot), pull over and stop as soon as possible and turn off the engine. Then open the hood and, after the engine has cooled, check the coolant level and the water pump drive belt. If you suspect cooling system trouble, have your cooling system checked by Hyundai dealer as soon as possible.

B300A01Y-GAT

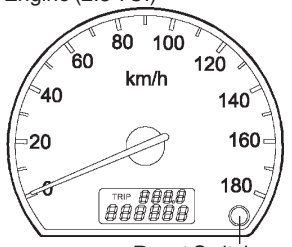
SPEEDOMETER

Gasoline Engine



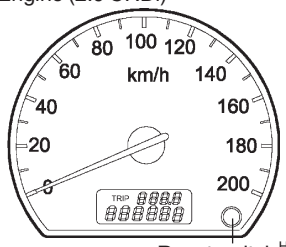
B300A01HP

Diesel Engine (2.5 TCI)



B300A02HP

Diesel Engine (2.9 CRDi)



HHP258-2

Your Hyundai's speedometer is calibrated in kilometers per hour or miles per hour.

B310A01HP-GAT

ODOMETER

The digital odometer records the total driving distance in kilometers or miles, and is useful for keeping a record for maintenance intervals.

NOTE:

Any alteration of the odometer may void your warranty coverage.

B320A01HP-GAT

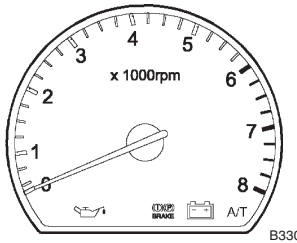
TRIP ODOMETER

The digital trip odometer may be used to conveniently record trip distances when the ignition key is in the "ON" position. Push the reset knob to set the counter to zero.

B330A01L-AAT

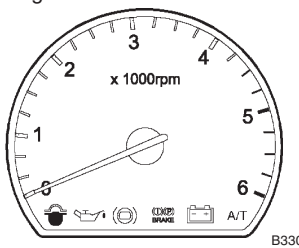
TACHOMETER

Gasoline Engine



B330A01HP

Diesel Engine



B330A02HP

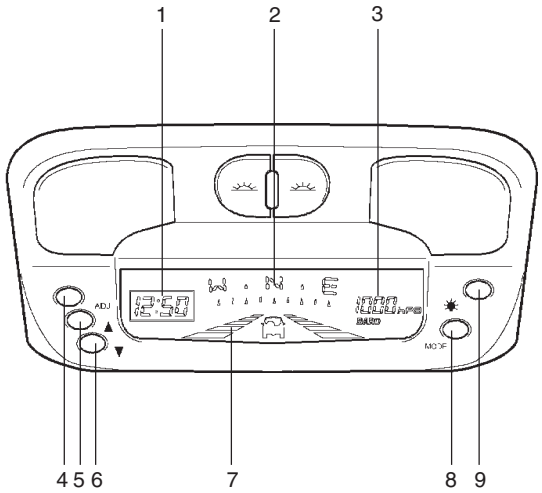
The tachometer registers the speed of your engine in revolutions per minute (rpm).

CAUTION:

The engine should not be raced to such a speed that the needle enters the red zone on the tachometer face. This can cause severe engine damage and may void your warranty.

B990A01HP-GAT

MULTIMETER(If installed)



B990A01HP

1. Digital Clock
2. Azimuth Compass
3. Altimeter/Relative altimeter/Barometer
4. Azimuth adjustment switch
5. Up switch
6. Down switch
7. Road display responsive to vehicle speed
8. Mode conversion switch
9. Light switch

B990B01HP-GAT

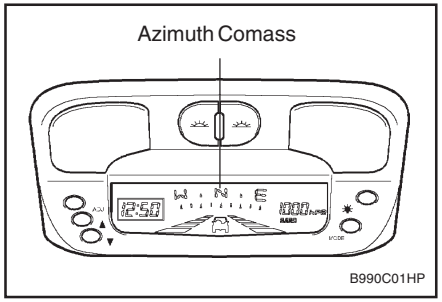
HOW TO ADJUST MULTIMETER

Switch function

Switch	Function
Mode	Altimeter → Relative Altimeter ↑ Barometer ←
	Selecting of time adjustment mode (more than 2 sec)
▲ (Up), ▼ (Down)	Altimeter correction
	Setting altitude to "0"
	Time adjustment
Light	Illumination on/off
Adjust	Selecting correction mode of azimuth indicator

B990C01HP-GAT

Electrical azimuth compass



B990C01HP

It displays 16 azimuths according to the vehicle driving direction and the angle of one graduation is 22.5°.

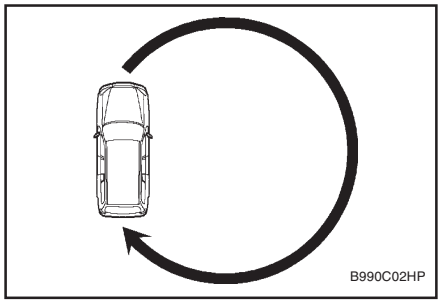
NOTE:
If new vehicle is first driven or if the battery has been disconnected, correct the azimuth indicator before driving.

Correcting azimuth indicator

This is need to correct the error between a current azimuth of terrestrial magnetism sensor and the displayed azimuth in the vehicle position.

How to correct azimuth indicator

1. If you push the "ADJ" switch and hold for less than 3 sec, the azimuth indicator will start to blink.
2. Slowly rotate the vehicle one turn within 128 sec.


B990C02HP

3. After the rotation is finished, the azimuth compass indicator will stop blinking and now correcting error is made.

NOTE:
It is normal if the azimuth is displayed abnormally in specific places(tunnel, parking lot in building, basement garage, area in the vicinity of a transformer station, etc.). The azimuth is displayed normally after escaping those places.

B990D01HP-GAT

ALTIMETER



B990D01HP

Altimeter is operated by atmospheric pressure. The air pressure variation is converted to the altitude on the basis of the sea level(0m, it is equal to 1013.25hpa) by the 50m.
The measurement range is 0~2,800m. And when the altitude is under 50m, it is displayed to 0m.

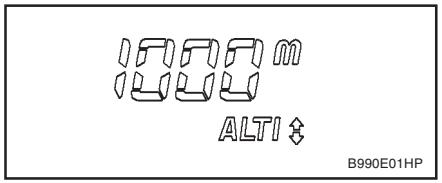
Altitude Correction

Displayed altitude could vary even at same place because of air pressure variation at sea level(0m point). So you can correct this display error in ±300m range by pushing " ▲(up)", " ▼(down)" as listed in following table.

Switch	Pushing time	Altitude
▲ (UP)	Less than 0.5 sec	Increasing by 50m
	More than 0.5 sec	Increasing by 50m gradually
▼(DOWN)	Less than 0.5 sec	Decreasing by 50m
	More than 0.5 sec	Decreasing by 50m gradually

B990E01HP-GAT

RELATIVE ALTIMETER

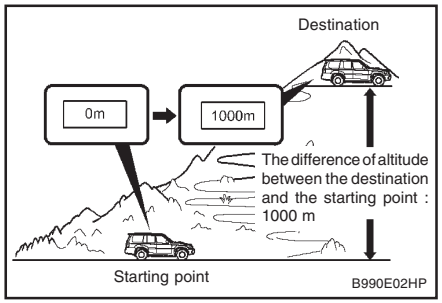


B990E01HP

Relative altimeter is used when you want to know the altitude of the specific location. And it displays by comparing the altitude of the specific location with the current altitude which the vehicle is located in.
When the "MODE" switch is pressed for less than 2 sec, the relative altimeter mode is selected.

When you want to know the difference of altitude between the destination and the starting point.

1. Press the "▲(UP)" and " ▼(DOWN)" switch simultaneously for more than 1 sec to reset the current altitude to 0m.
2. After arriving, the displayed altitude is the difference of altitude between the destination and the starting point.



B990F01HP-GAT

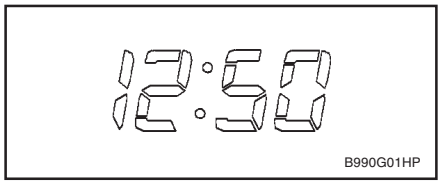
BAROMETER



The current air pressure is displayed in hpa units where the measurement range is from 720hpa to 1,045hpa.(The minimum is 1hpa)
If the "MODE" switch is pressed for less than 2 sec from "Relative Altimeter" mode, the atmospheric pressure will be displayed on the display window.

B990G01HP-GAT

DIGITAL CLOCK



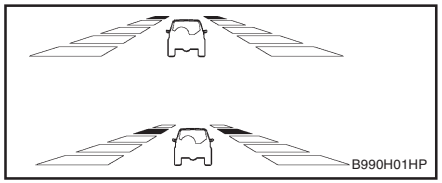
If you press "MODE" switch for more than 2 sec, the mode that you can adjust the time is displayed.

How to adjust the time

1. In time adjustment mode, push the "MODE" switch briefly, and you can adjust "minute". And if you push "MODE" switch once more briefly, you can adjust "hour".
2. Adjust the time by pushing " ▲ (UP)"," ▼ (DOWN)" switch when the time blinks.
3. After adjusting the time, push "MODE" switch for more 2sec, and the mode for adjusting the time is cancelled.

B990H01HP-GAT

ROAD DISPLAY RESPONSIVE TO VEHICLE SPEED

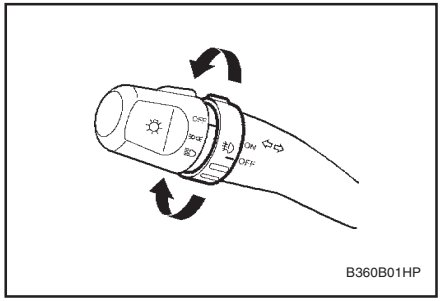


The road display indicator blinks according to the vehicle speed.

Vehicle speed	Blinking cycle
Below 2.8 km/h	Total Lightening
2.8 ~ 40 km/h	1 sec
41 ~ 60 km/h	0.8 sec
61 ~ 80 km/h	0.5 sec
81 ~ 100 km/h	0.3 sec
Above 100 km/h	0.2 sec

B360B01Y-AAT

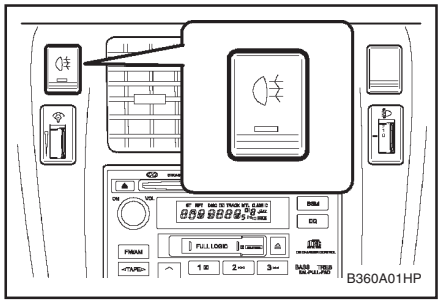
FRONT FOG LIGHT SWITCH



To turn on the front fog lights, place the switch in the "ON" position. They will light when the headlight switch is in the first or second position.

B360A01HP-GAT

REAR FOG LIGHT SWITCH (If installed)



To turn on the rear fog lights, push the switch. They will light when the headlight switch is in the second position or the front fog light is turned on and the key is in the "ON" position.

B340A01A-AAT

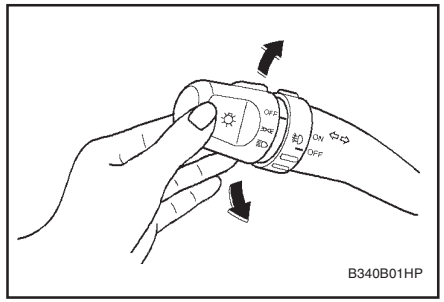
COMBINATION TURN SIGNAL, HEADLIGHT AND HIGH-BEAM SWITCH

Turn Signal Operation

Pulling down on the lever causes the turn signals on the left side of the car to blink. Pushing upwards on the lever causes the turn signals on the right side of the car to blink. As the turn is completed, the lever will automatically return to the center position and turn off the turn signals at the same time. If either turn signal indicator light blinks more rapidly than usual, goes on but does not blink, or does not go on at all, there is a malfunction in the system. Check for a burned-out fuse or bulb or see your Hyundai dealer.

B340B01A-AAT

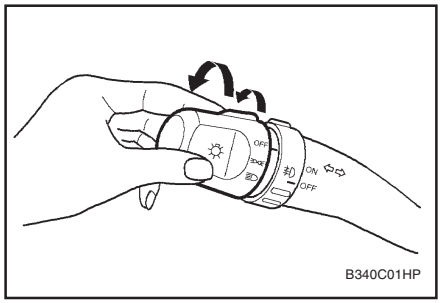
Lane Change Signal



To indicate a lane change, move the lever up or down to a point where it begins flashing.
The lever will automatically return to the center position when released.

B340C03L-AAT

Headlight Switch



To operate the headlights, turn the barrel on the end of the multi-function switch. The first position turns on the parking lights, sidelights, tail lights and instrument panel lights. The second position turns on the headlights.

NOTE:

The ignition must be in the "ON" position to turn on the headlights.

Parking light auto cut

If you do not turn the parking lights "OFF" after driving, the parking lights will automatically shut "OFF" when the driver's door is opened.
To turn them "ON" again, you must simply turn the ignition key to the "ON" position.

B340F01A-GAT

Daytime Running Lights (If Installed)

Your Hyundai is equipped with daytime running lights. The daytime running lights are used to improve visibility for oncoming traffic. Your vehicle daytime running lights are designed to remain on continuously when the engine is operating even though the headlight switch is in the "OFF" position. However, the daytime running lights will be off while the parking brake is applied.

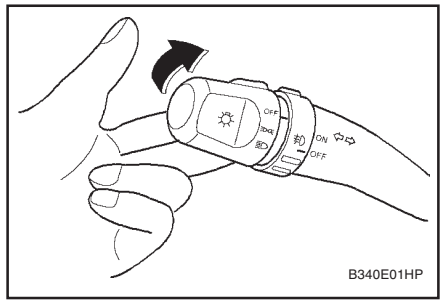
B340D01A-AAT

High-beam Switch

To turn on the headlight high beams, push the lever forward (away from you). The High Beam Indicator Light will come on at the same time. For low beams, pull the lever back toward you.

B340E01A-AAT

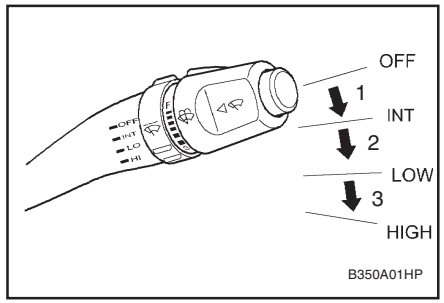
Headlight Flasher



To flash the headlights, pull the switch lever toward you, then release it. The headlights can be flashed even though the headlight switch is in the "OFF" position.

B350A01A-AAT

WINDSHIELD WIPER AND WASHER SWITCH



The windshield wiper switch has three positions:

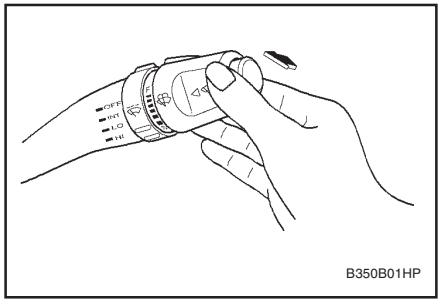
1. Intermittent wiper operation
2. Low-speed operation
3. High-speed operation

NOTE:

To prevent damage to the wiper system, do not attempt to wipe away heavy accumulations of snow or ice. Accumulated snow and ice should be removed manually. If there is only a light layer of snow or ice, operate the heater in the defrost mode to melt the snow or ice before using the wiper.

B350B01Y-GAT

Windshield Washer Operation



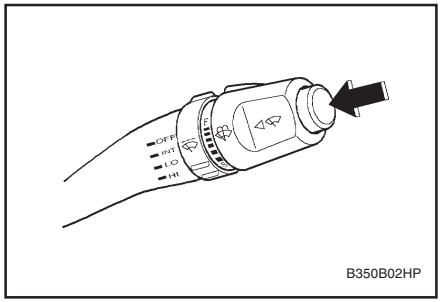
B350B01HP

To use the windshield washer, pull the wiper/washer lever toward the steering wheel. When the washer lever is operated, the wipers automatically make two passes across the windshield. The washer continues to operate until the lever is released.

NOTE:

- **Do not operate the washer more than 15 seconds at a time or when the fluid reservoir is empty.**
- **In icy or freezing weather, be sure the wiper blades are not frozen to the glass prior to operating the wipers.**
- **In areas where water freezes in winter, use windshield washer antifreeze.**

Mist Wiper Operation

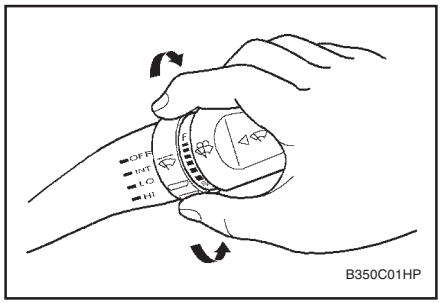


B350B02HP

If a single wipe is desired in mist, push the MIST operation switch at the end of the windshield wiper and washer control lever.

B350C01O-GAT

Adjustable Intermittent Wiper Operation

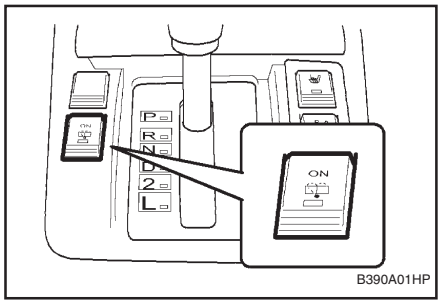


B350C01HP

To use the intermittent wiper feature, place the wiper switch in the "INT" position. With the switch in this position, the interval between wipes can be varied from approximately 1 to 18 seconds by turning the interval adjuster barrel. This is also varied automatically depending on your road speed.

B390A01HP-GAT

REAR WINDOW WIPER AND WASHER (If Installed)



B390A01HP

The rear window wiper and washer are turned on by depressing the button. Washer fluid is sprayed onto the glass as long as the "⛲" is depressed.

1. When the "ON" position is depressed, the rear window wiper starts to operate continuously.
2. When the "⛲" position is depressed, the rear window wiper starts to operate three times after the washer fluid sprays onto the rear window.

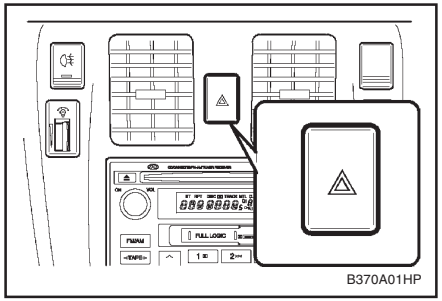
Do not operate the washer continuously for more than 15 seconds or when the fluid reservoir is empty; this could damage the system. Do not operate the wiper when the window is dry; this can result in scratching as well as premature wiper blade wear.
For the reason stated above,do not operate the washer when the washer fluid reservoir is empty.

NOTE:

- **In icy or freezing weather, be sure the wiper blades are not frozen to the glass prior to operating the wipers.**
- **In areas where water freezes in winter, use windshield washer antifreeze.**

B370A01A-AAT

HAZARD WARNING SYSTEM

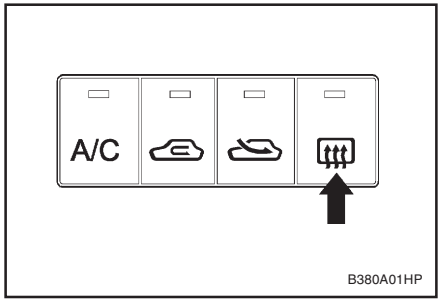


B370A01HP

The hazard warning system should be used whenever you find it necessary to stop the car in a hazardous location. When you must make such an emergency stop, always pull off the road as far as possible.
The hazard warning lights are turned on by pushing in the hazard switch. This causes all turn signal lights to blink. The hazard warning lights will operate even though the key is not in the ignition.
To turn the hazard warning lights off, push the switch a second time.

B380A01HP-AAT

REAR WINDOW DEFROSTER SWITCH (If installed)



B380A01HP

The rear window defroster and heated outside rear view mirrors are turned on by pushing in the switch. At the same time, the rear window defroster indicator light on the switch is turned on. To turn the defroster off, push the switch a second time. The rear window defroster automatically turns itself off after about 20 minutes. To restart the defroster cycle, push in the switch again after it has turned itself off.

CAUTION:

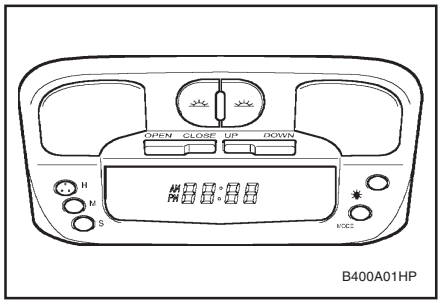
Do not clean the inner side of the rear window glass with an abrasive type of glass cleaner or use a scraper to remove foreign deposits from the inner surface of the glass as this may cause damage to the defroster elements.

NOTE:

The ignition must be in the "ON" position for the rear window defroster to operate.

B400A01HP-GAT

DIGITAL CLOCK (Without Multimeter)



B400A01HP

There are five control buttons for the digital clock. Their functions are:

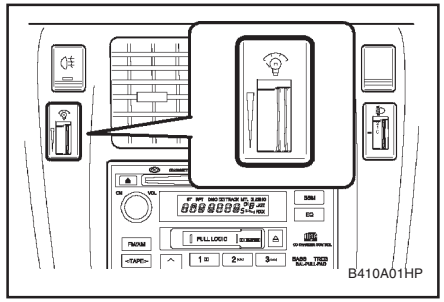
1. **HOUR** - Push "H" to advance the hour indicated.
2. **MIN** - Push "M" to advance the minute indicated.

3. **RESET** - Push "S" to reset minutes to ":00" to facilitate resetting the clock to the correct time. When this is done:
   Pressing "S" between 10 : 30 and 11 : 29 changes the readout to 11 : 00.
   Pressing "S" between 11 : 31 and 12 : 29 changes the readout to 12 : 00.
4. **MODE** - Push "MODE" button to display a 12- or 24-hour clock.
   When the 12-hour clock is in use, the letters AM or PM appear with the time.
5. ☀ - The time is displayed on the LCD by pushing in on the switch and is turned off by pushing in on the switch again.

If your vehicle is equipped with the multimeter, see the page 1-46.

B410A01A-AAT

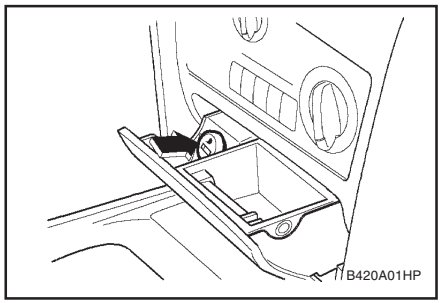
INSTRUMENT PANEL LIGHT CONTROL (RHEOSTAT) (If installed)



The instrument panel lights can be made brighter or dimmer by turning the instrument panel light control knob.

B420A02A-AAT

CIGARETTE LIGHTER



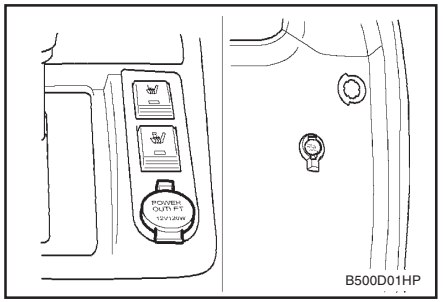
For the cigarette lighter to work, the key must be in the "ACC" position or the "ON" position.
To use the cigarette lighter, push it all the way into its socket. When the element has heated, the lighter will pop out to the "ready" position.
Do not hold the cigarette lighter pressed in. This can damage the heating element and create a fire hazard.
If it is necessary to replace the cigarette lighter, use only a genuine Hyundai replacement or its approved equivalent.

CAUTION:

Do not use electric accessories or equipment other than the Hyundai genuine parts in the socket.

B500D07O-AAT

POWER OUTLET (If installed)



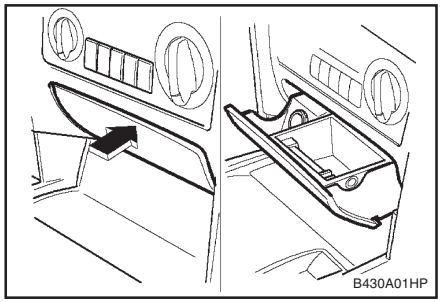
These supply 12V electric power to operate electric accessories or equipment only when the key is in the "ON" or "ACC" position.

CAUTION:

Do not use the power outlet to connect electric accessories or equipment other than those designed to operate on 12 volts.

B430A01Y-AAT

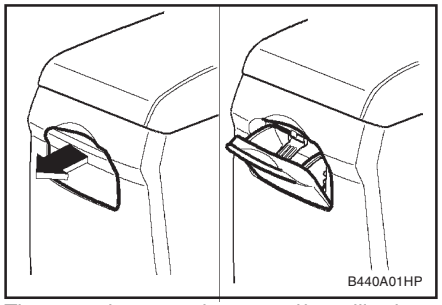
FRONT ASHTRAY



The front ashtray may be opened by pushing and releasing the ashtray/cigarette lighter door at its top edge.
To remove the ashtray in order to clean it, the metal ash receptacle should be removed from the ashtray door. Do not attempt to remove the entire ashtray door assembly or damage will result. Instead, push the metal ash receptacle down and forward in the ashtray door, and it can then be lifted out. To reinstall it, place it in the proper position and press it down and forward to reengage the ash receptacle rear lip in the ashtray door. The ashtray light will only illuminate when the exterior body lights are switched on.

B440A01E-AAT

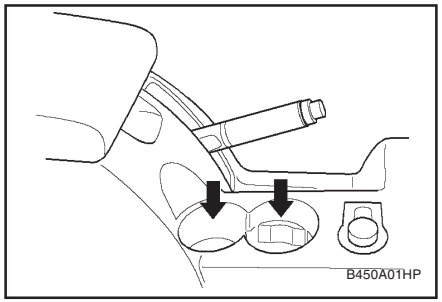
REAR ASHTRAY



The rear ashtray may be opened by pulling it out by its top edge. To remove the ashtray to empty or clean it, press down on the spring-loaded tab inside the ashtray and lift the ashtray upward and pull it all the way out.

B450A01O-GAT

DRINK HOLDER



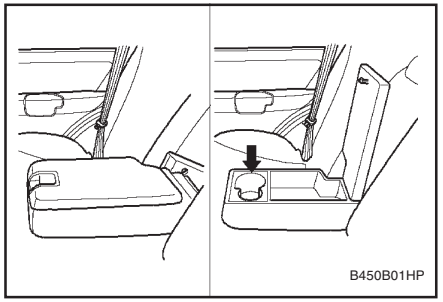
The drink holder is located on the main console for holding cups or cans.

WARNING:

Do not place objects other than cups or cans in the drink holder. Such objects can be thrown out in the event of a sudden stop or an accident, possibly injuring the passengers in the vehicle.

B450B01HP-GAT

REAR DRINK HOLDER (If installed)



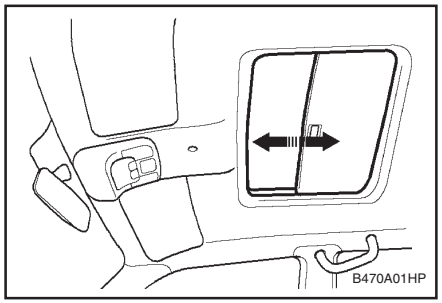
The rear drink holder is located in the rear seat arm rest for holding cups or cans. The rear drink holder can be used by opening the lid of arm rest.

WARNING:

Do not place objects other than cups or cans in the drink holder. Such objects can be thrown out in the event of a sudden stop or an accident, possibly injuring the passengers in the vehicle.

B470A01S-AAT

SUNSHADE (If installed)



The sunshade can be opened and closed by sliding it forward or rearward when the sunroof is closed. The sunshade will open automatically when the sunroof is opened, but it must be closed manually.

B460A01S-AAT

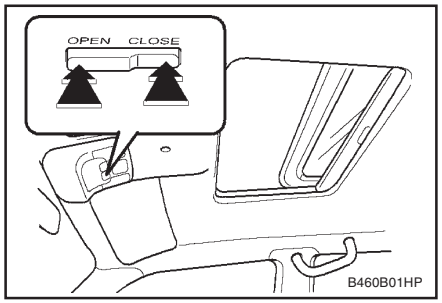
SUNROOF (If Installed)

The sunroof can be operated with the ignition key in the "ON" position

B460B01HP-GAT

OPERATING THE SUNROOF SYSTEM

Opening or Closing the Sunroof



The sunroof can be electrically opened or closed. The sunroof is moved to its fully open position by pushing the "OPEN" switch, and to stop at the desired position, push in any switches (Open, Close, Up, Down).
To close, press and hold the "CLOSE" button. Release the button when the sunroof reaches the desired position.

WARNING:

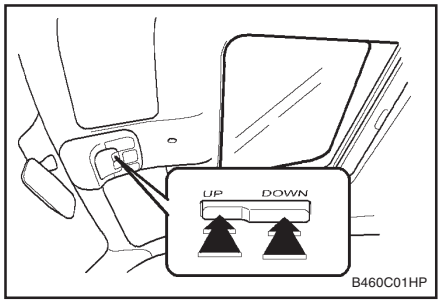
- **Do not close a sunroof if anyone's hands, arms or body are between the sliding glass and the sunroof sash, as this could result in an injury.**
- **Do not place your head or arms out of the sunroof opening at any time.**

CAUTION:

- **Do not open the sunroof in severely cold temperature or when it is covered with ice or snow.**
- **Periodically remove any dirt that may have accumulated on the guide rails.**

B460C01S-AAT

Tilting the Sunroof



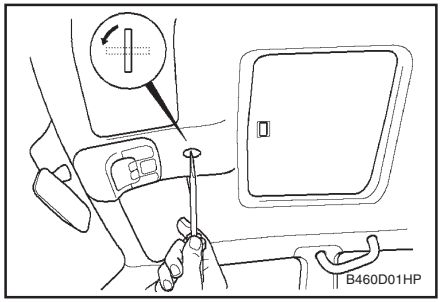
The sunroof can be tilted by pushing the button with the sunroof closed. Release the button when the sunroof reaches the desired position.

NOTE:

After washing the car or after there is rain, be sure to wipe off any water that is on the sunroof before operating it.

B460D01HP-GAT

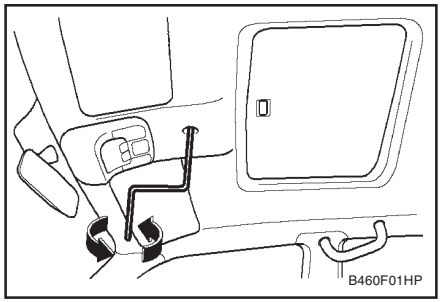
Manual Operation of Sunroof



If the sunroof does not electrically operate:

1. Remove the round plug in the front of the roof panel with a flat-bladed screwdriver or coin.

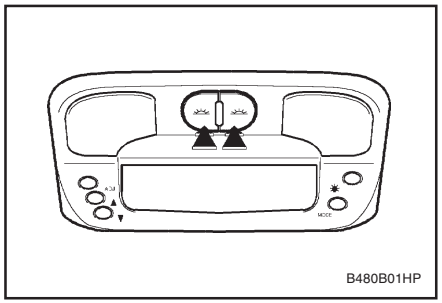
CAUTION:
Remove the round plug with the groove pointing to the front and the rear. Otherwise, the projections of the plug may break if it is not positioned properly.



2. Insert the hexagonal head wrench provided with the vehicle into the socket. This wrench can be found in the glove box.
3. Turn the wrench clockwise to open or counterclockwise to close.

B480B01Y-AAT

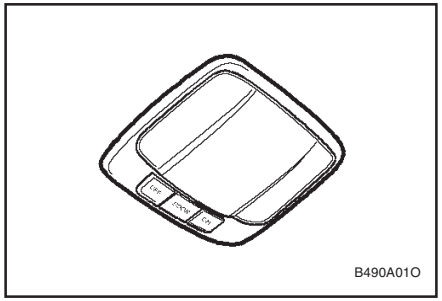
MAP LIGHT



Push in the map light switch to turn the light on or off. This light produces a spot beam for convenient use as a map light at night or as a personal light for the driver and the passenger.

B490A02Y-AAT

INTERIOR LIGHT



The interior courtesy light has three buttons. The three buttons are:

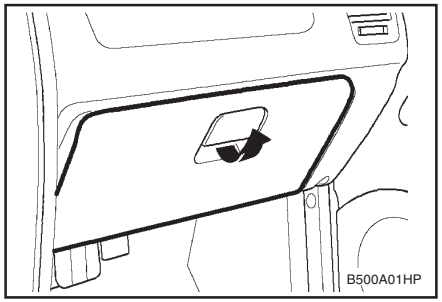
o DOOR
In the "DOOR" position, the interior courtesy light comes on when any door is opened regardless of the ignition key position. The light goes out gradually 6 seconds after the door is closed.

o ON
In the "ON" position, the light stays on at all times.

o OFF
In the "OFF" position, the light stays off at all times even though a door is open.

B500A01A-AAT

GLOVE BOX



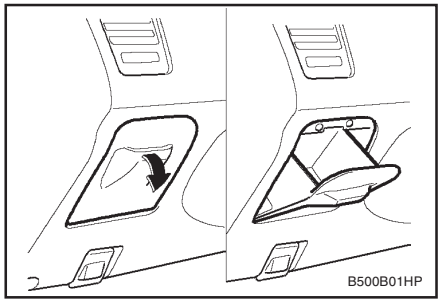
WARNING:

To avoid the possibility of injury in case of an accident or a sudden stop, the glove box door should be kept closed when the car is in motion.

o To open the glove box, pull on the glove box release lever.

B500B01HP-DAT

MULTI BOX

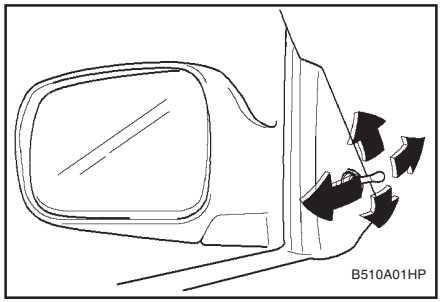


The multi box may be opened by pulling it out by its grip.It is used for storing small articles.

B510A01A-AAT

OUTSIDE REAR VIEW MIRROR

Manual Type



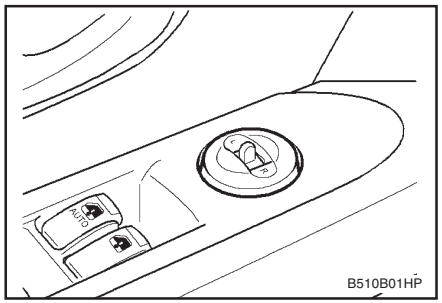
The outside rearview mirrors are equipped with a remote control for your convenience. It is operated by the control lever in the bottom front corner of the window.
Before driving away, always check that your mirrors are positioned so you can see behind you, both to the left and right sides, as well as directly behind your vehicle. When using the mirror, always exercise caution when attempting to judge the distance of vehicles behind or along side of you.

CAUTION:

If the mirror control is jammed with ice, do not attempt to break it free using the control handle or by manipulating the face of the mirror. Use an approved spray de-icer (not radiator antifreeze) to release the frozen mechanism or move the vehicle to a warm place and allow the ice to melt.

B510B01Y-AAT

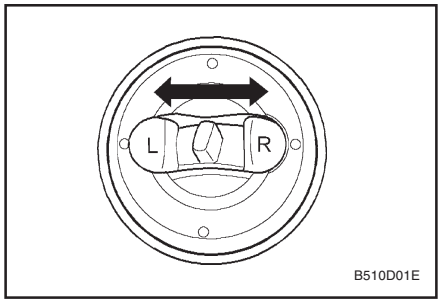
Electric Type (If installed)



The outside rearview mirrors can be adjusted to your preferred rear vision, both directly behind the vehicle, and to the rear of the left and right sides.
The remote control outside rearview mirror switch controls the adjustments for both right and left outside mirrors.

To adjust the position of either mirror:

1. Move the selecting switch to the right or left to activate the adjustable mechanism for the corresponding door mirror.
2. Now, adjust mirror angle by depressing the appropriate perimeter switch as illustrated.



CAUTION:

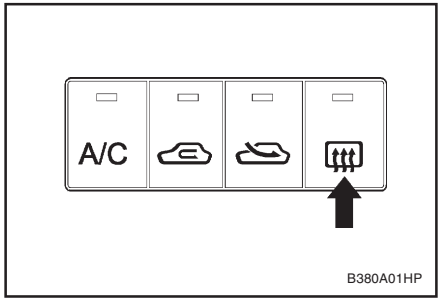
- **Do not operate the switch continuously for an unnecessary length of time.**
- **Scraping ice from the mirror face could cause permanent damage. To remove any ice, use a sponge, soft cloth or approved de-icer.**

WARNING:

Be careful when judging the size or distance of any object seen in the passenger side rear view mirror. It is a convex mirror with a curved surface. Any objects seen in this mirror are closer than they appear.

B510D01HP-GAT

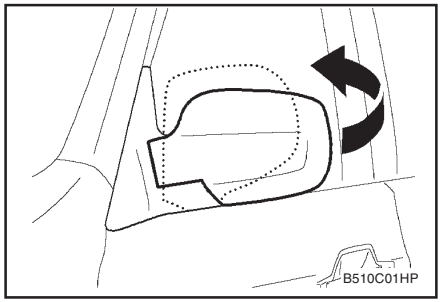
OUTSIDE REAR VIEW MIRROR HEATER (If installed)



The outside rearview mirror heater is actuated in connection with the rear window defroster. To heat the outside rearview mirror glass, push in the switch for the rear window defroster. The rearview mirror glass will be heated for defrosting or defogging and will give you improved rear vision in inclement weather conditions. Push the switch again to turn the heater off. The outside rearview mirror heater automatically turns itself off after 20 minutes.

B510C01A-AAT

FOLDING THE OUTSIDE REAR VIEW MIRRORS



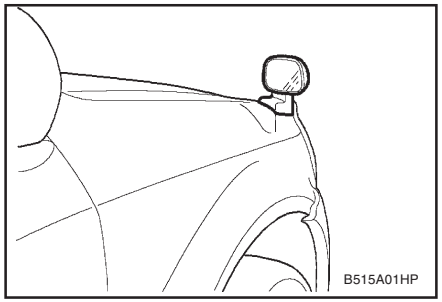
To fold the outside rear view mirrors, push them towards the rear.
The outside rear view mirrors can be folded rearward for parking in narrow areas.

WARNING:

Do not adjust or fold the outside rear view mirrors while the vehicle is moving. This could result in loss of control, and an accident causing death, serious injury or property damage.

B515A01HP-GAT

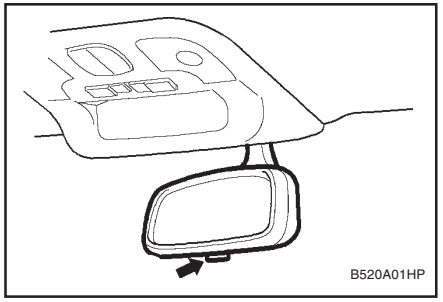
SIDE UNDER VIEW MIRROR (If installed)



Traffic and road conditions can be viewed on the lower right-hand side of the vehicle with the side under view mirror.

B520A01A-AAT

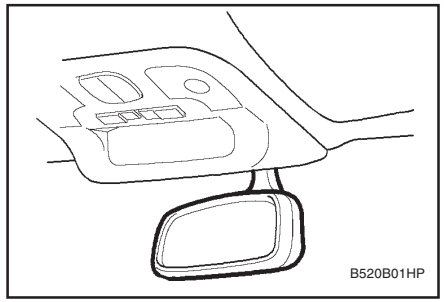
DAY/NIGHT INSIDE REAR VIEW MIRROR



Your Hyundai is equipped with a day/night inside rear view mirror. The "night" position is selected by flipping the tab at the bottom of the mirror toward you. In the "night" position, the glare of headlights of cars behind you is reduced.

B520B01O-GAT

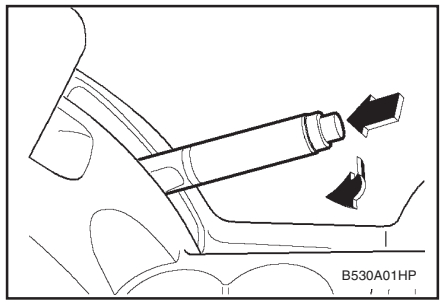
DAY/NIGHT INSIDE REAR VIEW MIRROR (Electric type) (If installed)



The electric type day/night inside rearview mirror controls automatically the glare of headlights of the car behind you. Adjust the rearview mirror to the desired position.

B530A01A-AAT

PARKING BRAKE

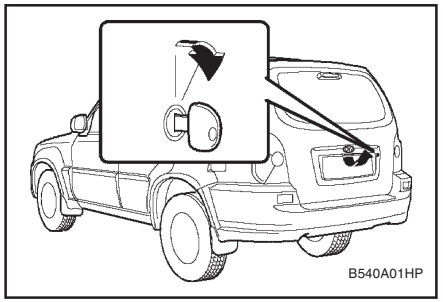


Always engage the parking brake before leaving the car. This also turns on the parking brake indicator light when the key is in the "ON" or "START" position. Before driving away, be sure that the parking brake is fully released and the indicator light is off.

- o To engage the parking brake, pull the lever up as far as possible.
- o To release the parking brake, pull up the lever and press the thumb button. Then, while holding the button in, lower the brake lever.

B540A01O-AAT

TAIL GATE



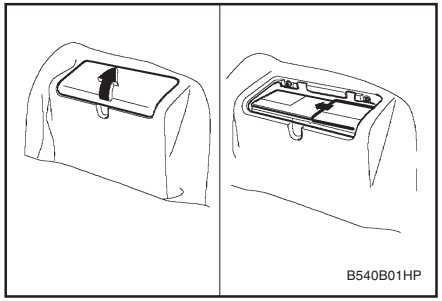
WARNING:

The tail gate should always be kept completely closed while the vehicle is in motion. If it is left open or ajar, poisonous exhaust gases may enter the car resulting in serious illness or death to the occupants. See additional warnings concerning exhaust gases on page 2-1.

- o The tail gate is opened by first turning the key clockwise to release the lock, then raising the door manually.
- o To close, lower the door, then press down on it until it locks. To be sure the door is securely fastened, always try to pull it up again.

B800A01HP-AAT

CD Auto Changer (If Installed)



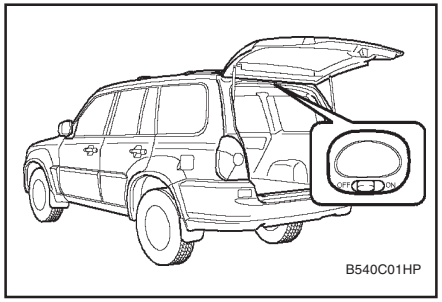
The CD Auto Changer is located in the right side of the luggage compartment. This system can store up to 8 CDs.
You may select music without changing disks. First, open the CD Auto Changer door, remove the CD magazine, and insert up to 8 CDs. Then, push the magazine into the CD Auto Changer. The CD may be operated with the passenger compartment audio system controls.

NOTE:

The magazine can be taken out when the ignition key is in the "ON" position.

B540C01HP-GAT

Luggage compartment light

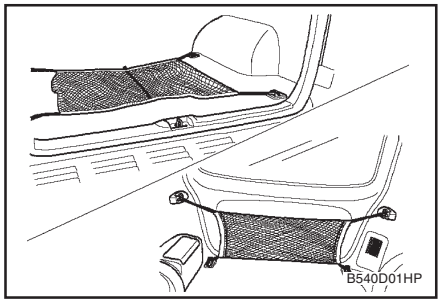


Luggage compartment light has a 3-position switch. The three positions are:

- o In the "MIDDLE" position, the luggage compartment light comes on when the tail gate is opened, then goes out when it is closed.
- o In the "ON" position, the light stays on at all times.
- o In the "OFF" position, the light stays off at all times.

B540D02HP-DAT

Luggage Net



Some objects can be kept in the net at the luggage compartment.
Use the luggage net on the floor or at the back of the luggage compartment to prevent objects from sliding.

CAUTION:

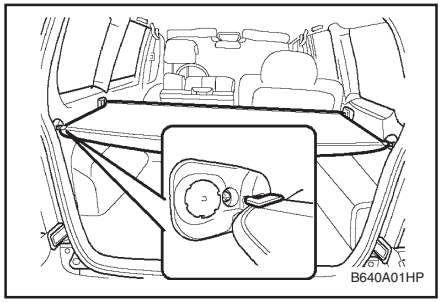
To prevent damage to the goods or the vehicle, care should be taken when carrying fragile or bulky objects in the luggage compartment.

WARNING:

Avoid eye injury. DO NOT overstretch. ALWAYS keep face and body out of recoil path. DO NOT use when strap has visible signs of wear or damage.

B640A01S-AAT

CARGO SECURITY SCREEN (If installed)



To use the security screen, pull it out of the retractor and hook it to the anchors as illustrated.

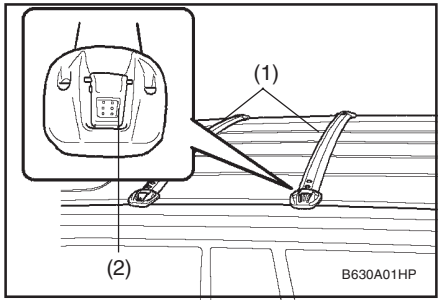
B650A01S-AAT

STOWAGE PRECAUTIONS

1. Do not place objects on the cargo security screen. Such objects may be thrown about inside the vehicle and possibly injure vehicle occupants during an accident or when braking.
2. For better fuel economy, do not carry unnecessary weight.
3. Never allow anyone to ride in the luggage compartment. It is designed for luggage only.
4. Try to maintain the balance of the vehicle and locate the weight as far forward as possible.

B630A01HP-GAT

ROOF RACK (If installed)



If your Hyundai has a roof rack, you can load things on top of your vehicle. The two cross bars (1) on the roof rack can be repositioned forward and rearward for conveniently loading cargo or luggage. With an assistant on the opposite side of the vehicle, press and hold the slider lock buttons (2) on each side, then move the cross bar to the desired position.
The cross bars automatically lock when the slider lock buttons are released.

CAUTION:

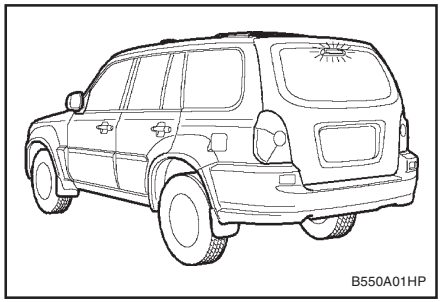
- **The cross bars should be positioned before carrying a load on the roof rack.**
- **In case the sunroof is equipped, do not position roof rack loads that could interfere with opening of the sunroof.**
- **The following specifications are recommended when loading cargo or luggage.**

ROOF RACK	34 kg (75 lb) EVENLY DISTRIBUTED

- **Loading cargo or luggage above 34 kg (75 lb) on the roof rack may damage your vehicle.**
  When you carry large objects, never let them hang over the rear or the sides of your vehicle.
- **To prevent damage or loss of cargo as you are driving, check frequently to make sure the luggage carrier and cargo are still securely fastened.**
- **Always drive your vehicle at a moderate speed.**
- **Loading cargo or luggage over specification on the roof rack may damage stability of your vehicle.**

B550A01A-AAT

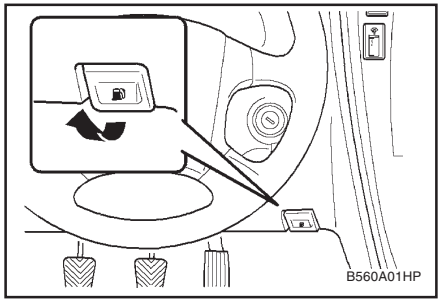
HIGH-MOUNTED REAR STOP LIGHT (If Installed)



In addition to the lower-mounted rear stoplights on either side of the car, the high mounted rear stoplight in the center of the rear window also lights when the brakes are applied.

B560A01HP-GAT

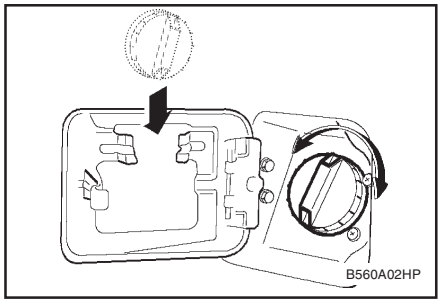
REMOTE FUEL-FILLER LID RELEASE



The fuel-filler lid may be opened from inside the vehicle by pulling up on the fuel-filler lid release lever located below the right of the driver's side crash pad.

NOTE:

If the fuel-filler lid will not open because ice has formed around it, tap lightly or push on the lid to break the ice and release the lid. Do not pry on the lid. If necessary, spray around the lid with an approved de-icer fluid (do not use radiator anti-freeze) or move the vehicle to a warm place and allow the ice to melt.



WARNING:

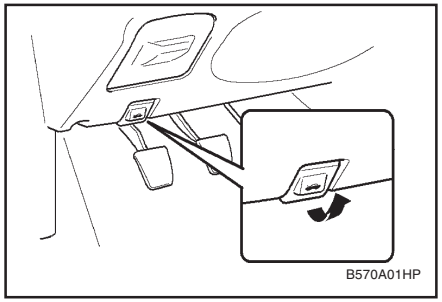
Fuel vapors are dangerous. Before refueling, always stop the engine and never allow sparks or open flames near the filler area. If you need to replace the filler cap, use a genuine Hyundai replacement part.

If you open the fuel filler cap during high ambient temperatures, a slight "pressure sound" may be heard. This is normal and not a cause for concern.

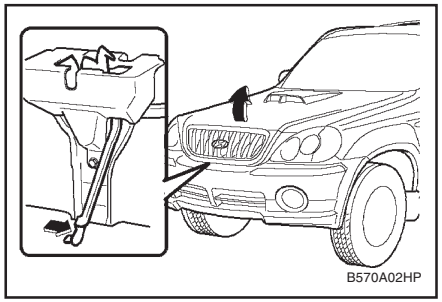
Whenever you open the fuel filler cap, turn it slowly.

B570A01HP-AAT

HOOD RELEASE



1. Pull the release knob to unlatch the hood.



2. Push the secondary latch lever sideways and lift the hood.
3. Raise the hood by hand.

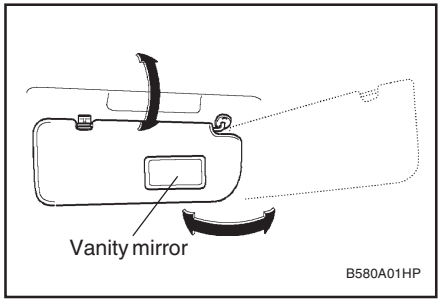
When closing the hood, slowly close the hood and make sure it locks into place.

WARNING:

- **Always double check to be sure that the hood is firmly latched before driving away. If it is not latched, the hood could fly open while the vehicle is being driven, causing a total loss of visibility, which might result in an accident.**
- **Do not move the vehicle with the hood in the raised position, as vision is obstructed and the hood could fall or be damaged.**

B580A02A-AAT

SUNVISOR



Your Hyundai is equipped with sun visors to give the driver and front passenger either frontal or sideward shade. To reduce glare or to shut out direct rays of the sun, turn the sun visor down to block.
A vanity mirror is provided on the back of the sun visor for the front passenger (If installed).

NOTE:

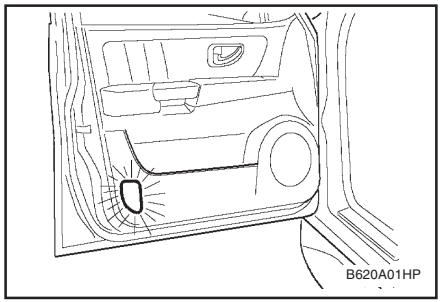
The Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) label containing useful information can be found on the back of each sun visor.

WARNING:

Do not place the sun visor in such a manner that it obscures visibility of the roadway, traffic or other objects.

B620A01S-AAT

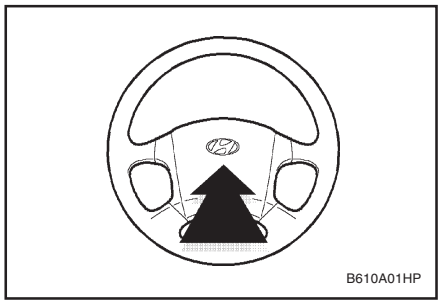
FRONT DOOR EDGE WARNING LIGHT (If installed)



A red light comes on when the front door is opened. The purpose of this light is to assist when you get in or out and also to warn passing vehicles.

B610A01L-GAT

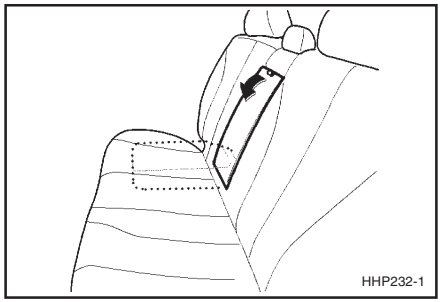
HORN



Press the pad on the steering wheel to sound the horn.

B611A01HP-AAT

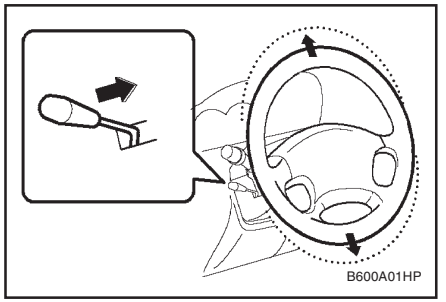
REAR SEAT ARM REST (If installed)



The rear seat arm rest is located in the center of the rear seat back. A storage box and two drink holders are included for convenience.

B600A01HP-GAT

STEERING WHEEL TILT LEVER (If installed)



To adjust the steering wheel:

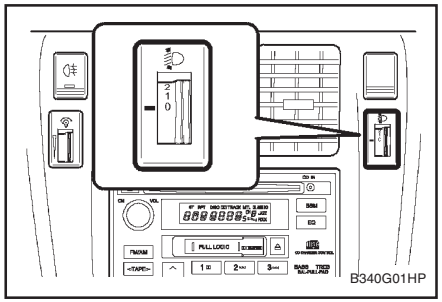
1. Pull the lever toward you and hold it to unlock.
2. Raise or lower the steering wheel to the desired position.
3. After adjustment, release the lever.

WARNING:

Do not attempt to adjust the steering wheel while driving as this may result in loss of control of the vehicle and serious injury or death.

B340G01HP-GAT

HEADLIGHT LEVELING DEVICE SYSTEM (If installed)

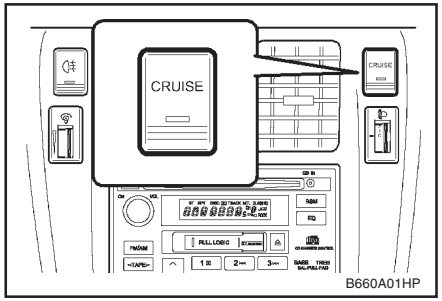


To adjust the headlight beam level according to the number of the passengers and the loading weight in the luggage area, turn the beam leveling switch.
The higher the number of the switch position, the lower the headlight beam level. Always keep the headlight beam at the proper leveling position, or headlights may dazzle other road users.
Listed below are the examples of proper switch settings. For loading conditions other than those listed below, adjust the switch position so that the beam level may be the nearest as the condition obtained according to the list.

LOADING CONDITION	Switch position
Driver only	0
Driver + Front Passenger	0
Full Passengers	1
Full passengers + Maximum Permissible Loading	2
Driver + Maximum Permissible Loading	3

B660A01S-AAT

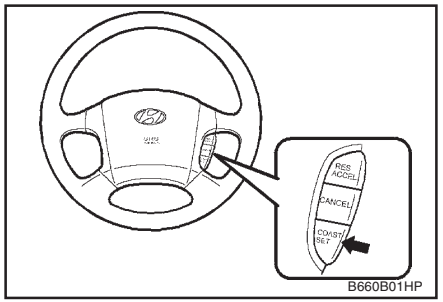
CRUISE CONTROL (If installed)



The cruise control system provides automatic speed control for your comfort when driving on freeways, toll roads, or other noncongested highways. This system is designed to function above approximately 40 km/h(25 mph).

B660B02L-GAT

To Set the Cruise Speed

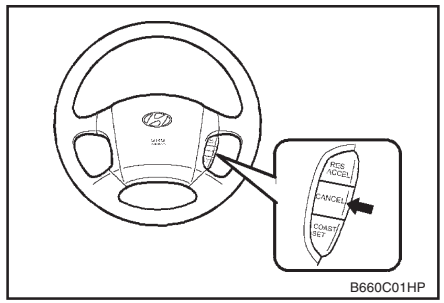


1. Push in the cruise control main switch. This turns the system on.
2. Accelerate to desired cruising speed above 40 km/h(25 mph).
3. Push the control switch "SET" (COAST) position. The "CRUISE" indicator light in the instrument cluster will illuminate after you have set the vehicle speed at the desired speed.
4. Remove your foot from the accelerator pedal and the desired speed will automatically be maintained.
5. To increase speed, depress the accelerator pedal enough for the vehicle to exceed the preset speed. When you remove your foot from the accelerator pedal, the vehicle will return to the speed you have set.

NOTE:
If the vehicle speed decreases more than 15 km/h (9 mph) below the set speed or decreases below 40 km/h (25 mph), the cruise control system will automatically cancel the set speed.

B660C02L-GAT

To cancel the cruise speed



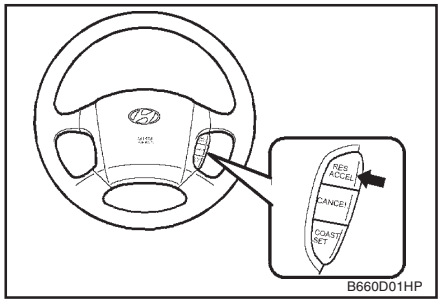
B660C01HP

Do one of the followings:

- o Push the control switch "CANCEL".
- o Depress the brake pedal.
- o Depress clutch pedal (Manual transmission).
- o Shift the selector lever to "N" position (Automatic transmission).
- o Decrease the vehicle speed lower than the memorized speed by 15 km/h(9 mph).
- o Decrease the vehicle speed to less than 40 km/h(25 mph).
- o Release the main switch.

B660D01L-DAT

To Resume the Preset Speed



B660D01HP

The vehicle will automatically resume the speed set prior to cancellation when you push the control switch "RESUME (ACCEL)" and release it to return (when travelling above 40 km/h).

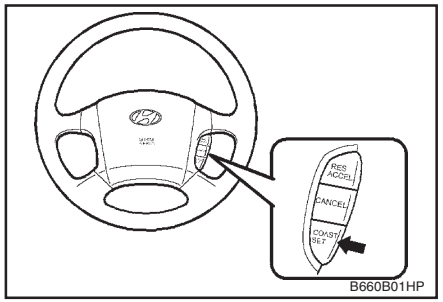
B660E01L-AAT

To Reset at a Faster Speed

1. Push the control switch "RESUME (ACCEL)" and hold it.
2. Accelerate to desired speed and release the control switch. While the control switch is held, the vehicle will gradually gain speed.

B660F01L-GAT

To Reset at a Slower Speed



B660B01HP

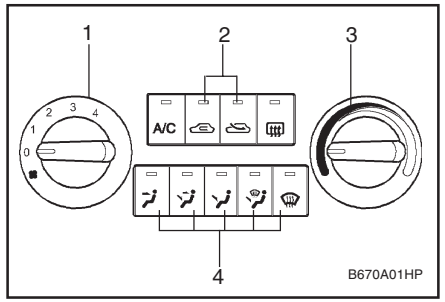
1. Push the control button "SET (COAST)" and hold it. While the control switch is pushed, the vehicle speed will gradually decrease.
2. When the desired speed is obtained, release the control button.

WARNING:
- **o Keep the main switch off when not using the cruise control.**
- **o Do not use the cruise control when it may not be safe to keep the car at a constant speed, for instance, driving in heavy or varying traffic, or on slippery (rainy, icy or snow-covered) or winding roads or over 6% up-hill or down-hill roads.**
- **o Pay particular attention to the driving conditions whenever using the cruise control system.**

- **During cruise-control driving with a manual transmission vehicle, do not shift into neutral without depressing the clutch pedal or the engine will be overrevved. If this happens, depress the clutch pedal or release the main switch.**
- **During normal cruise control operation, when the "SET" button is activated or reactivated after applying the brakes, the cruise control will energize after approximately 3 seconds. This delay is normal.**

B670A01HP-GAT

HEATING AND VENTILATION

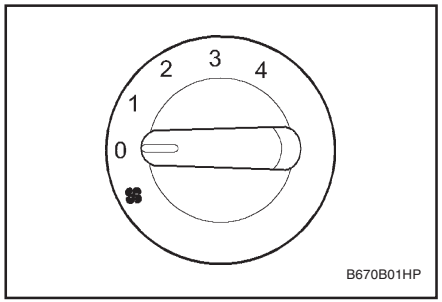


There are four controls for the heating and cooling system. They are:

1. Fan speed control.
   This is used to turn the fan on and select the fan speed.
2. Air intake control.
   This allows you to select fresh outside air or recirculation inside air.
3. Temperature control.
   This is used to turn the heating system on and off and to select the degree of heating desired.
4. Air flow control.
   This is used to direct the flow of air.
   Air can be directed to the floor, dashboard outlets, or windshield. Five symbols are used to represent Face, Bi-Level, Floor, Floor-Defrost and Defrost air positions.

B670B01A-AAT

Fan Speed Control (Blower Control)

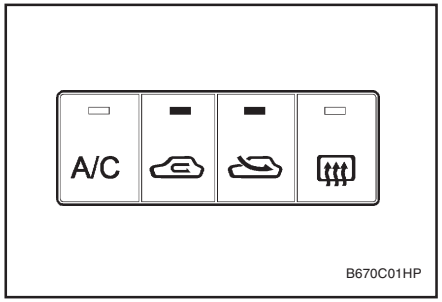


This is used to turn the blower fan on and off and to select the fan speed.

The blower fan speed, and therefore the volume of air delivered from the system, may be controlled manually by setting the blower control between the "1" and "4" position.

B670C01Y-AAT

Air Intake Control



This is used to select fresh outside air or recirculating inside air.

Fresh

Recirculation

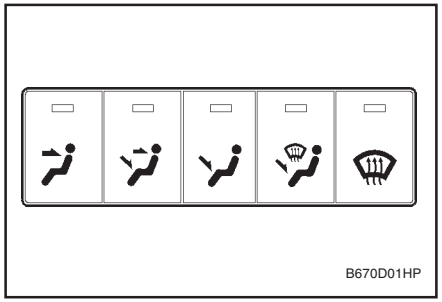
With the "" mode selected, air enters the vehicle from outside and is heated or cooled according to the other functions selected.
With the "" mode selected, air from within the passenger compartment is drawn through the heating system and heated or cooled according to the other functions selected.

NOTE:

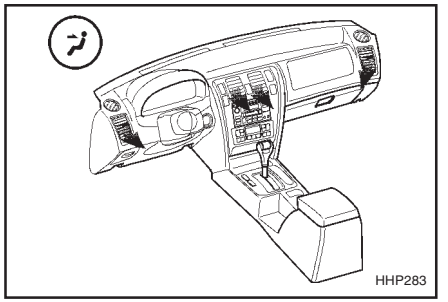
- **It should be noted that prolonged operation of the heating system in "⟨⟩" mode will give rise to fogging of the windshield and side windows and the air within the passenger compartment will become stale. In addition prolonged use of the air conditioning with the "⟨⟩" mode selected may result in the air within the passenger compartment becoming excessively dry.**
- **When the ignition switch is turned "ON", the air intake control will change to "⟨⟩" mode (regardless of switch position). This is normal operation.**

B670D01L-AAT

Air Flow Control

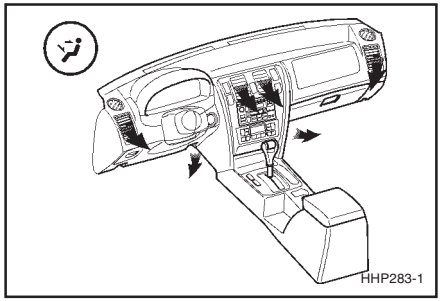


This is used to direct the flow of air. Air can be directed to the floor, dashboard outlets, or windshield. Five symbols are used to represent Face, Bi-Level, Floor, Floor-Defrost and Defrost air position.



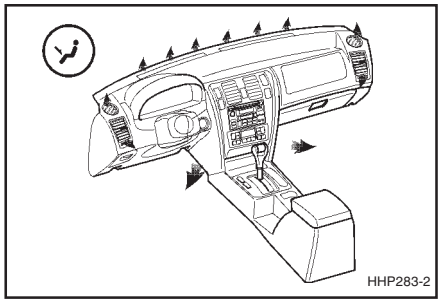
Face-Level

Selecting the "Face" mode will cause air to be discharged through the face level vents.



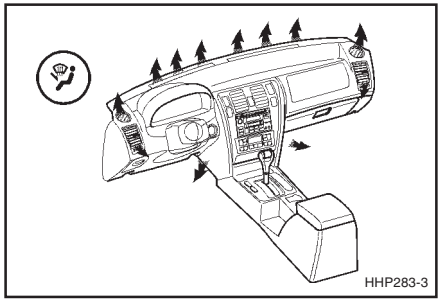
Bi-Level

Air is discharged through the face vents and the floor vents. This makes it possible to have cooler air from the dashboard vents and warmer air from the floor outlets at the same time.



Floor-Level

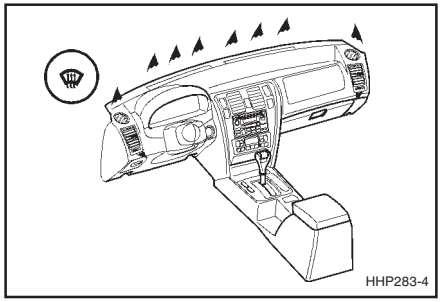
Air is discharged through the floor vents, windshield defroster nozzle, side defroster nozzle, side ventilator.



Floor-Defrost Level

Air is discharged through the windshield defrost nozzle, the floor vents, side defroster nozzle, side ventilator.

If the "Floor-Defrost" mode is selected, the A/C will turn on automatically and "Fresh" mode will be activated.

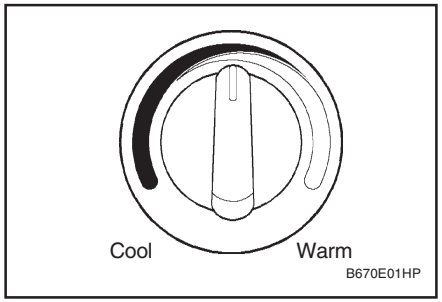


Defrost-Level

Air is discharged through the windshield defrost nozzle, side defroster nozzle, side ventilator.
If the "Defrost" mode is selected, the A/C will turn on automatically and "Fresh" mode will be activated.

B670E02A-AAT

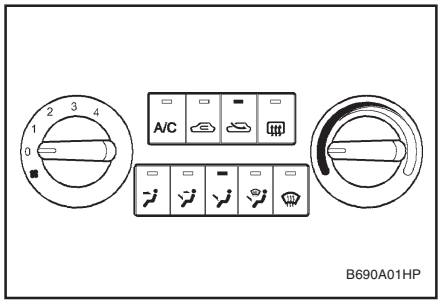
Temperature Control



This control is used to adjust the degree of heating or cooling desired.

B690A01S-AAT

HEATING CONTROLS



For normal heating operation, set the air intake control to the fresh air ( ) position and the air flow control to the floor ( ) position.

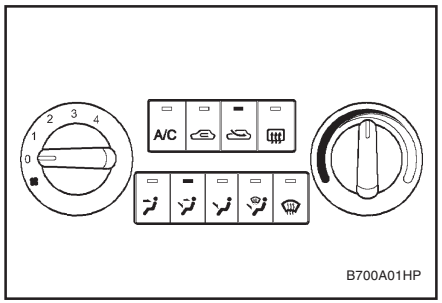
For faster heating, the air intake control should be set in the recirculate ( ) position.

If the windows fog up, set the air flow control to the defrost ( ) position (The A/C will turn on automatically and "Fresh" mode will be activated).

For maximum heat, move the temperature control to "Warm".

B700A01A-AAT

BI-LEVEL HEATING

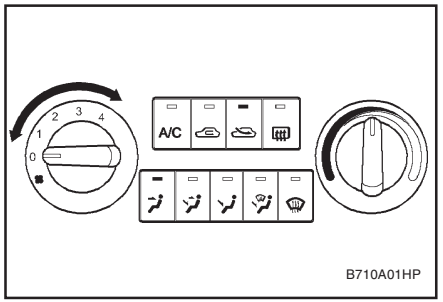


Your Hyundai is equipped with bi-level heating controls. This makes it possible to have cooler air from the dashboard vents and warmer air from the floor outlets at the same time. To use this feature:

- Set the air intake control to the fresh air ( ) position.
- Set the air flow control at the bi-level ( ) position.
- Set the temperature control between "Cool" and "Warm".

B710A01A-AAT

VENTILATION

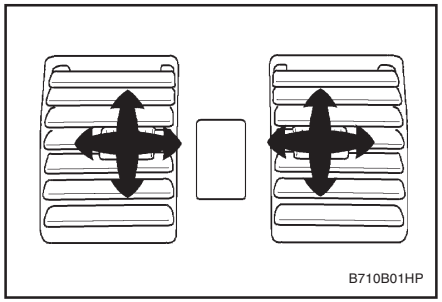


To operate the ventilation system:

- Set the air intake control at the fresh air ( ) position.
- To direct all intake air to the dashboard vents, set the airflow control to the face ( ) position.
- Adjust the fan speed control to the desired speed.
- Set the temperature control between "Cool" and "Warm".

B710B01S-AAT

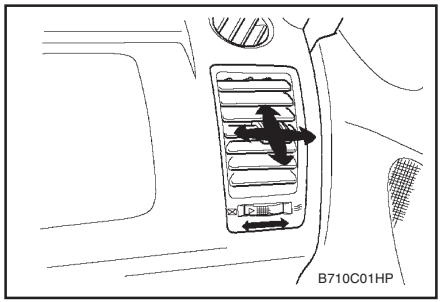
CENTER VENTILATOR



The center ventilators are located in the middle of the dashboard. The direction of air flow from the vents in the center of the dashboard is adjustable.
To control the direction of the air flow, move the knob in the center of the vent up-and-down and side-to-side.

B710C01HP-AAT

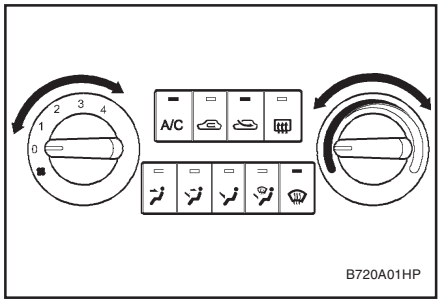
SIDE VENTILATOR



The side ventilators are located on each side of dashboard. To change the direction of the air flow, move the knob in the center of the vent up-and-down and side-to-side. The side vent knobs control the amount of outside air entering the vehicle through the side vents. The vents are opened when the vent knob is moved to " " position. The vents are closed when the vent knob is moved to " ". Keep these vents clear of any obstructions.

B720A02FC-AAT

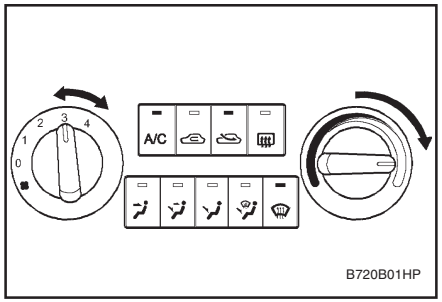
DEFROSTING/DEFOGGING



Use the heating/ventilation system to defrost or defog the windshield.

To remove interior fog on the windshield:

- Set the air flow control to the defrost ( ) position.(The A/C will turn on automatically and "Fresh" mode will be activated.)
- Set the temperature control to the desired position.
- Set the fan speed control between "1" and "4" position.



To remove frost or exterior fog on the windshield:

- Set the air flow control to the defrost ( ) position.(The A/C will turn on automatically and "Fresh" mode will be activated.)
- Set the temperature control to warm.
- Set the fan speed control to position "3" or "4".

NOTE:

When the A/C is operated continuously on the floor-defrost level ( ) or defrost level ( ), it may cause fog to form on the exterior windshield. If this occurs, set the air flow control to the face level position ( ) and fan speed control to the low position.

B730A01L-AAT

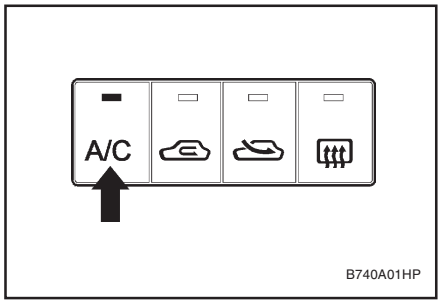
Operation Tips

- To keep dust or unpleasant fumes from entering the car through the ventilation system, temporarily set the air intake control to the position. Be sure to return the control to the position when the irritation has passed to keep fresh air in the vehicle. This will help keep the driver alert and comfortable.
- Air for the heating/cooling system is drawn in through the grilles just ahead of the windshield. Care should be taken that these are not blocked by leaves, snow, ice or other obstructions.
- To prevent interior fog on the windshield, set the air intake control to the fresh air ( ) position, and fan speed to the desired position, turn on the air conditioning system, and adjust temperature control to desired temperature.

B740A01S-AAT

AIR CONDITIONING SYSTEM (If installed)

Air Conditioning Switch

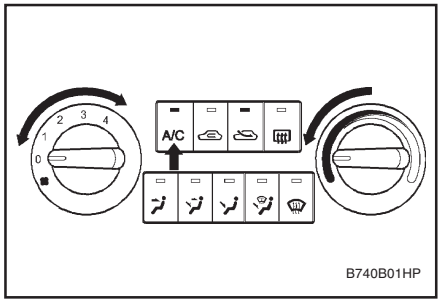


The air conditioning is turned on or off by pushing the A/C button on the heating/air conditioning control panel.

B740B01HP-GAT

Air Conditioning Operation

Cooling

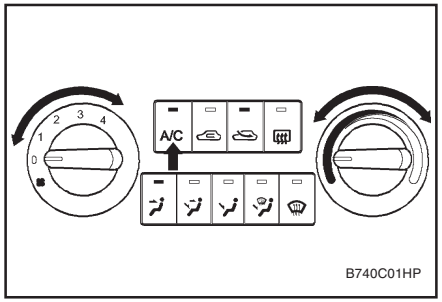


To use the air conditioning to cool the interior:

- Set the side vent control to " ", to shut off the outside air entry.
- Turn on the fan control switch.
- Turn on the air conditioning switch by pushing in on the switch. The air conditioning indicator light should come on at the same time.
- Set the air intake control to the fresh air ( ) position.
- Set the temperature control to "Cool". ("Cool" provides maximum cooling. The temperature may be moderated by moving the control toward "Warm".)
- Adjust the fan control to the desired speed. For greater cooling, turn the fan control to one of the higher speeds or temporarily select the recirculate ( ) position on the air intake control.

B740C01A-AAT

De-Humidified Heating



For dehumidified heating:

- Turn on the fan control switch.
- Turn on the air conditioning switch. The air conditioning indicator light should come on at the same time.
- Set the air intake control to the fresh air ( ) position.
- Set the air flow control to the face ( ) position.
- Adjust the fan control to the desired speed.
- For more rapid action, set the fan at one of the higher speeds.
- Adjust the temperature control to provide the desired amount of warmth.

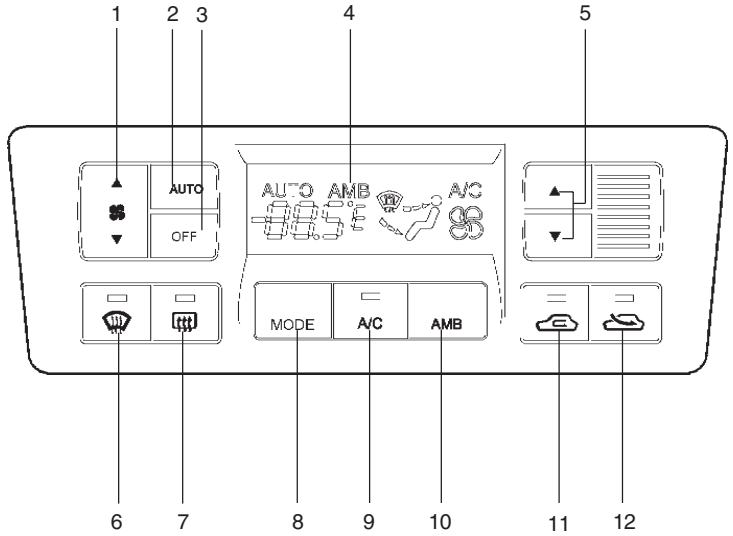
B970A01Y-AAT

AUTOMATIC HEATING AND COOLING CONTROL SYSTEM (If Installed)

Your Hyundai is equipped with an automatic heating and cooling control system controlled by simply setting the desired temperature.

B970B01HP-GAT

Heating and Cooling Controls

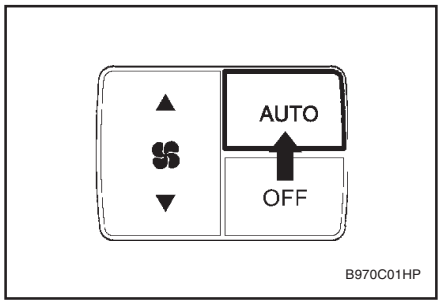


B970B01HP

1. Blower Fan Control Switch
2. AUTO (Automatic Control)Switch
3. OFF Switch
4. Display Window
5. Temperature Control Button
6. Defroster Switch
7. Rear Window Defroster Switch (If installed)
8. Air Flow Control Switch
9. Air Conditioning Switch
10. Ambient Temperature Switch
11. Air Intake Control Switch (Recirculation air)
12. Air Intake Control Switch (Fresh air)

B970C02L-AAT

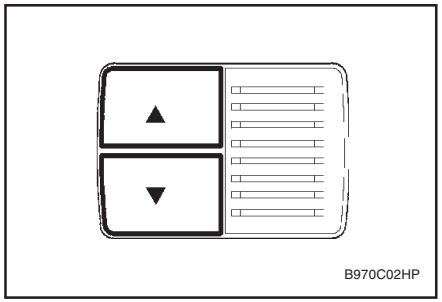
Automatic Operation



B970C01HP

The FATC (Full Automatic Temperature Control) system automatically controls heating and cooling as follows:

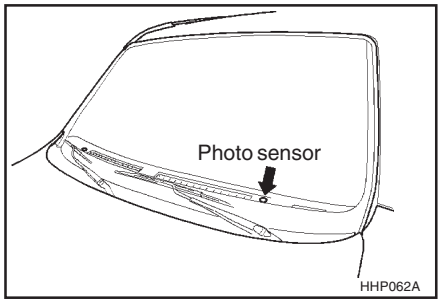
1. Push the "AUTO" switch. The indicator light will illuminate confirming that the Face, Floor and/or Bi-Level modes as well as the blower speed and, air conditioner will be controlled automatically.


B970C02HP

2. Push the "TEMP" button to set the desired temperature.
   The temperature will increase to the maximum 32°C(90°F) by pushing on the ▲button. Each push of the button will cause the temperature to increase by 0.5°C(1°F).
   The temperature will decrease to the minimum 17°C(62°F) by pushing on the ▼button. Each push of the button will cause the temperature to decrease by 0.5°C(1°F).

NOTE:
If the battery has been discharged or disconnected, the temperature mode will reset to centigrade degrees.
This is a normal condition and you can change the temperature mode from centigrade to fahrenheit as follows;
Press the TEMP down (▼) button 3 seconds or more with the AMB button held down.

The display shows that the unit of temperature is adjusted to centigrade or fahrenheit (°C → °F or °F → °C).

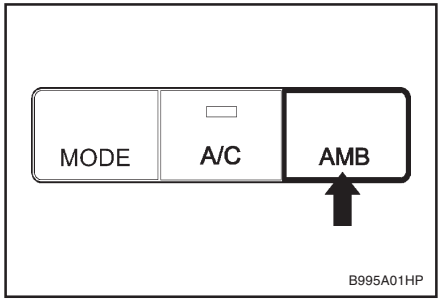


HHP062A

NOTE:
Never place anything over the sensor which is located on the instrument panel to ensure better control of the heating and cooling system.

B995A01Y-AAT

AMBIENT SWITCH



Pressing the AMB button displays the ambient temperature on the display.

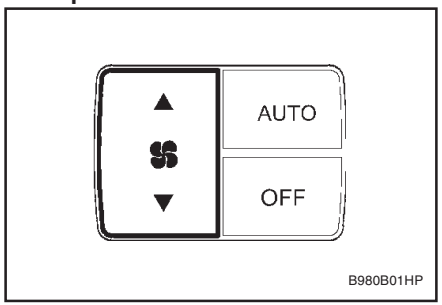
B980A01Y-AAT

MANUAL OPERATION

The heating and cooling system can be controlled manually as well by pushing buttons other than the "AUTO" button. In this state, the system sequentially works according to the order of buttons selected.
The function of the buttons which are not selected will be controlled automatically.
Press the "AUTO" button in order to convert to automatic control of the system.

B980B01Y-AAT

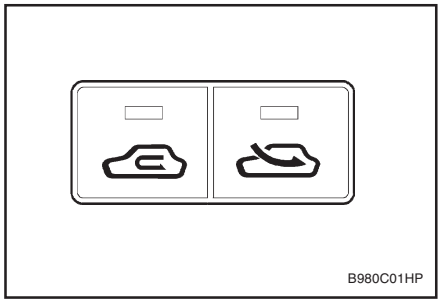
Fan Speed Control Switch



The fan speed can be set to the desired speed by pressing the appropriate fan speed control button. The higher the fan speed is, the more air is delivered. Pressing the "OFF" button turns off the fan.

B670C02HP-GAT

Air Intake Control Switch



This is used to select fresh outside air or recirculation inside air.
To change the air intake control mode, push the control button.

FRESH MODE ( ) : The indicator light on the button is illuminated when the air intake control is fresh mode.

RECIRCULATION MODE ( ) : The indicator light on the button is illuminated when the air intake control is recirculation mode.

With the "Fresh" mode selected, air enters the vehicle from the outside and is heated or cooled according to the function selected.

With the "Recirculation" mode selected, air from within the passenger compartment will be drawn through the heating system and heated or cooled according to the function selected.

NOTE:

- **It should be noted that prolonged operation of the heating system in "Recirculation" mode will give rise to fogging of the windshield and side windows and the air within the passenger compartment will become stale. In addition, prolonged use of the air conditioning with the "Recirculation" mode selected may result in the air within the passenger compartment becoming excessively dry.**
- **When the ignition switch is turned "ON", the air intake control will change to ( ) mode (regardless of switch position). This is normal operation. The air intake control operates in "AUTO" mode when turning the ignition to the ON position if the "AUTO" mode was used before shutting off the engine.**

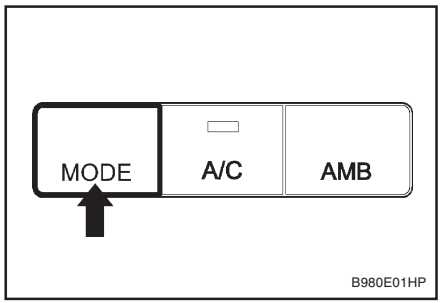
B980D01Y-AAT

Heating and Cooling System Off

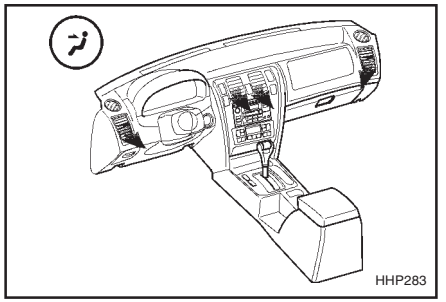
Press the "OFF" button to stop the operation of the heating and cooling system.

B980E01L-GAT

Air Flow Control

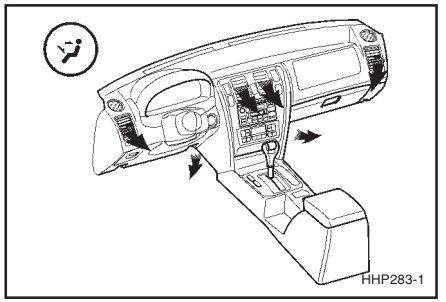


This is used to direct the flow of air. Air can be directed to the floor, dashboard outlets, or windshield. Four symbols are used to represent Face, Bi-Level, Floor and Floor-Defrost air position.



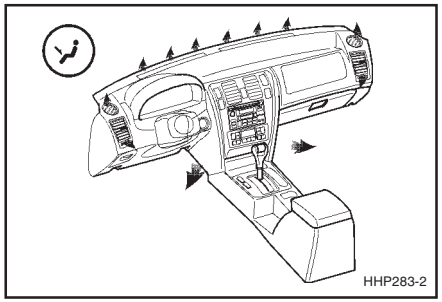
Face-Level

When selecting the "Face" mode, the indicator light will come on, causing air to be discharged through the face level vents.



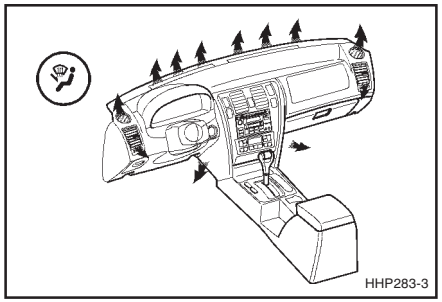
Bi-Level

When selecting the "Bi-Level" mode, the indicator light will come on and the air will be discharged through the face vents and the floor vents. This makes it possible to have cooler air from the dashboard vents and warmer air from the floor outlets at the same time.


HHP283-2

Floor-Level

When selecting the "Floor-Level" mode, the indicator light will come on and the air will be discharged through the floor vents, windshield defrost nozzle, side defroster nozzle, side ventilator.

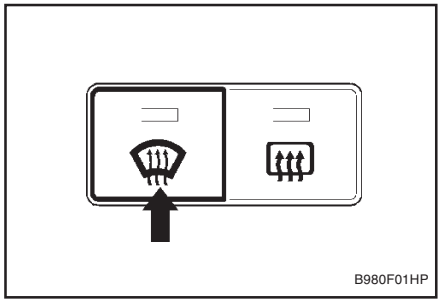

HHP283-3

Floor-Defrost Level

When selecting the "Floor-Defrost" mode, the indicator light will come on and the air will be discharged through the windshield defrost vents, the floor vents, side defroster nozzle side ventilator .

B980F02E-GAT

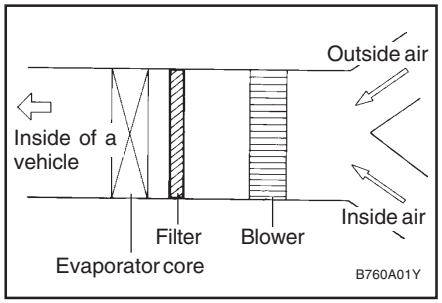
Defrost Switch


B980F01HP

When the "Defrost" button is pressed, the "" mode will be automatically selected and the air will be discharged through the windshield defrost vents. To assitst in defrosting, the air conditioning will operate if ambient temperature is higher than 3.5°C and automatically turns off if the ambient temperature drops below 3.5°C.

B760A04A-GAT

AIR FILTER (FOR EVAPORATOR AND BLOWER UNIT) (If installed)



The air filter is located in front of the evaporator unit behind the glove box.
It operates to decrease pollutants from entering the car and to filter the air.
To replace the air filter, refer to the page 6-15.

CAUTION:

- **Replace the filter every 20,000 km (12,000 miles) or once a year.**
  If the car is being driven in severe conditions such as dusty, rough roads, more frequent air filter inspections and changes are required.
- **When the air flow rate is decreased, it must be checked at authorized dealer.**

B740D01Y-AAT

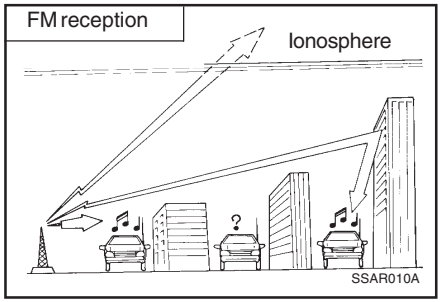
Operation Tips

- If the interior of the car is hot when you first get in, open the windows for a few minutes to expel the hot air.
- When you are using the air conditioning system, keep all windows closed to keep hot air out.
- When moving slowly, as in heavy traffic, shift to a lower gear. This increases engine speed, which in turn increases the speed of the air conditioning compressor.
- On steep grades, turn the air conditioning off to avoid the possibility of the engine overheating.
- During winter months or in periods when the air conditioning is not used regularly, run the air conditioning once every month for a few minutes. This will help circulate the lubricants and keep your system in peak operating condition.

B750A02A-AAT

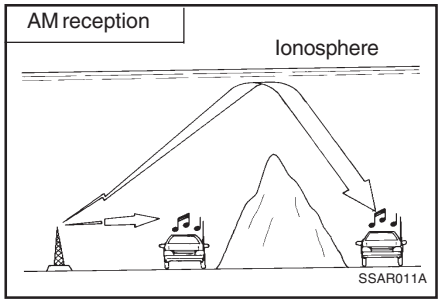
STEREO SOUND SYSTEM

How Car Audio Works

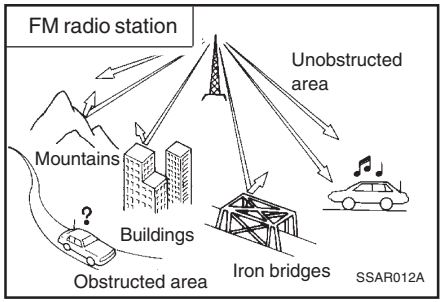


AM and FM radio signals are broadcast from transmitter towers located around your city. They are intercepted by the radio antenna on your car. This signal is then received by the radio and sent to your car speakers.

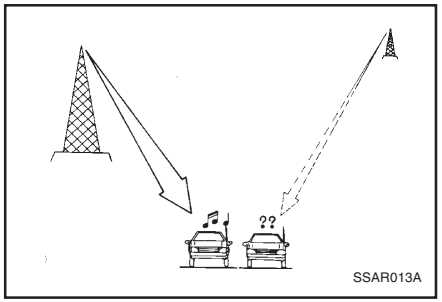
When a strong radio signal has reached your vehicle, the precise engineering of your audio system ensures the best possible quality reproduction. However, in some cases the signal coming to your vehicle may not be strong and clear. This can be due to factors such as the distance from the radio station, closeness of other strong radio stations or the presence of buildings, bridges or other large obstructions in the area.



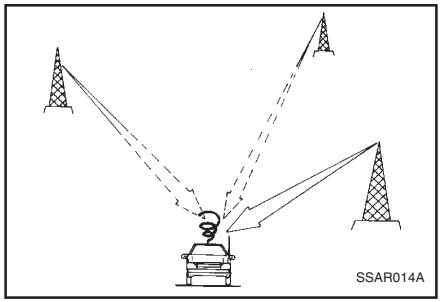
AM broadcasts can be received at greater distances than FM broadcasts. This is because AM radio waves are transmitted at low frequencies. These long, low frequency radio waves can follow the curvature of the earth rather than travelling straight out into the ionosphere. In addition, they curve around obstructions so that they can provide better signal coverage.



FM broadcasts are transmitted at high frequencies and do not bend to follow the earth's surface. Because of this, FM broadcasts generally begin to fade at short distances from the station. Also, FM signals are easily affected by buildings, mountains, or other obstructions. These can result in certain listening conditions which might lead you to believe a problem exists with your radio. The following conditions are normal and do not indicate radio trouble:



- Fading - As your car moves away from the radio station, the signal will weaken and sound will begin to fade. When this occurs, we suggest that you select another stronger station.
- Flutter/Static - Weak FM signals or large obstructions between the transmitter and your radio can disturb the signal causing static or fluttering noises to occur. Reducing the treble level may lessen this effect until the disturbance clears.



- Station Swapping - As an FM signal weakens, another more powerful signal near the same frequency may begin to play. This is because your radio is designed to lock onto the clearest signal. If this occurs, select another station with a stronger signal.
- Multi-Path Cancellation - Radio signals being received from several directions can cause distortion or fluttering. This can be caused by a direct and a reflected signal from the same station, or by signals from two stations with close frequencies. If this occurs, select another station until the condition has passed.

B750B02Y-AAT

Using a cellular phone or a two-way radio

When a cellular phone is used inside the vehicle, noise may be produced from the audio equipment. This does not mean that something is wrong with the audio equipment. In such a case, use the cellular phone at a place as far as possible from the audio equipment.

CAUTION:

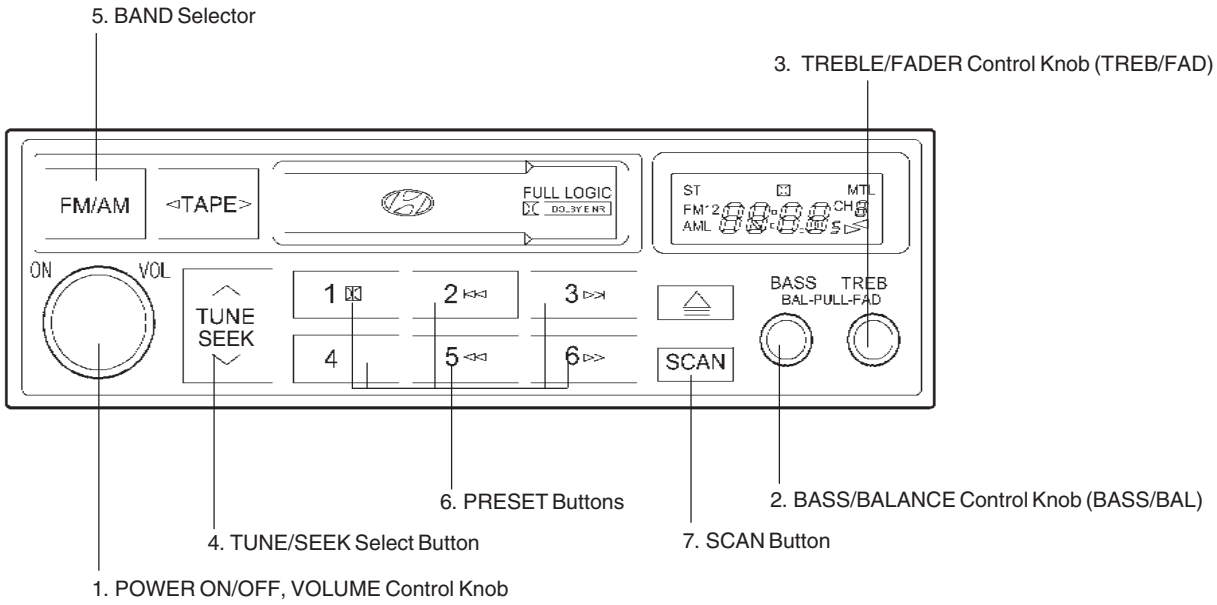
When using a communication system such a cellular phone or a radio set inside the vehicle, a separate external antenna must be fitted. When a cellular phone or a radio set is used with an internal antenna alone, it may interfere with the vehicle's electrical system and adversely affect safe operation of the vehicle.

WARNING:

Don't use a cellular phone when you are driving. Stop at a safe place to use a cellular phone.

H240A01O-GAT

STEREO RADIO OPERATION (H240) (If Installed)



H240A01O

H240B02O-AAT

1. POWER ON-OFF Control Knob

The radio unit may be operated when the ignition key is in the "ACC" or "ON" position. Press the knob to switch the power on. The LCD shows the radio frequency in the radio mode or the tape direction indicator in the tape mode. To switch the power off, press the knob again.

VOLUME Control

Rotate the knob clockwise to increase the volume and turn the knob counterclockwise to reduce the volume.

2. BASS Control Knob

Press to pop the knob out and turn to the left or right for the desired bass tone.

BAL (Balance Control) Knob

Pull the bass control knob further out. Turn the control knob clockwise to emphasize right speaker sound (left speaker sound will be attenuated).
When the control knob is turned counterclockwise, left speaker sound will be emphasized (right speaker sound will be attenuated).

3. TREB (Treble Control) Knob

Press to pop the knob out and turn to the left or right for the desired treble tone.

FAD (Fader Control) Knob

Pull the treble control knob further out.
Turn the control knob counterclockwise to emphasize front speaker sound (rear speaker sound will be attenuated).
When the control knob is turned clockwise, rear speaker sound will be emphasized (front speaker sound will be attenuated).

4. TUNE (Manual) Select Button

Press the ∧ side or ∨ side to increase or to decrease the frequency. Press either button and hold down to continuously scroll. Release button once the desired station is reached.

SEEK Operation (Automatic Channel Selection)

Press the TUNE select button 0.5 sec or more. Releasing it will automatically tune to the next available station with a beep sound.
When the ∧ side is pressed longer than 0.5 second, releasing will automatically tune to the next higher frequency and when the ∨ side is pressed longer than 0.5 second, releasing will automatically tune to the next lower frequency.

5. BAND Selector

Pressing the FM/AM button changes the AM, FM1 and FM2 bands. The mode selected is displayed on LCD.

6. PRESET STATION SELECT Button

Six (6) stations for AM, FM and FM2 respectively can be preset in the electronic memory circuit on this unit.

HOW TO PRESET STATIONS

Six AM and twelve FM stations may be programmed into the memory of the radio. Then, by simply pressing the band select button and/or one of the six station select buttons, you may recall any of these stations instantly. To program the stations, follow these steps:

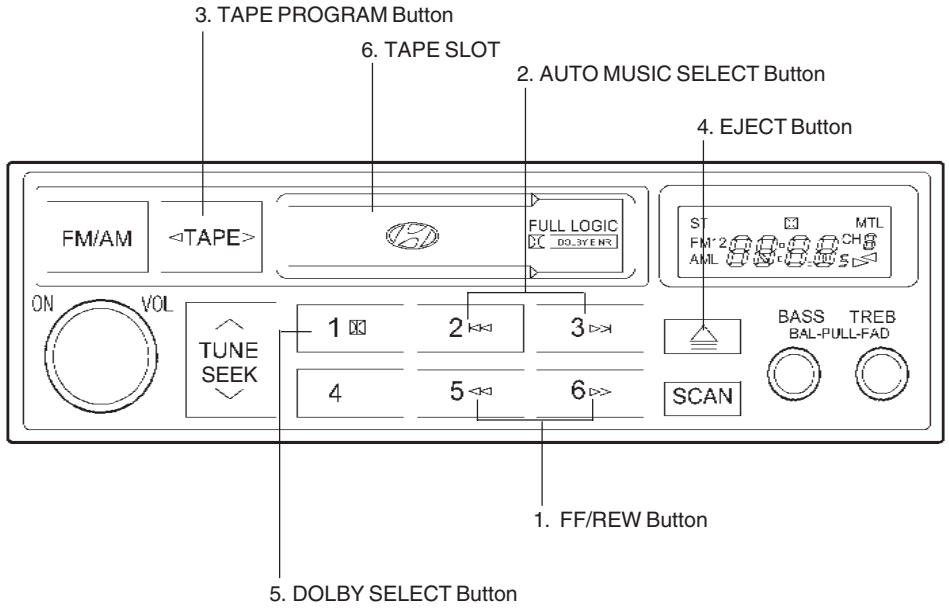
- Press band selector to set the band for AM, FM, or FM2.
- Select the desired station to be stored by seek or manual tuning.
- Determine the preset station select button you wish to use to access that station.
- Press the station select button for more than two seconds. A select button indicator will show in the display indicating which select button you have depressed. The frequency display will flash after it has been stored into the memory with a beep sound. You should then release the button, and proceed to program the next desired station. A total of 18 stations can be programmed by selecting one AM and two FM stations per button.
- When completed, any preset station may be recalled by selecting AM, FM or FM2 band and the appropriate station button.

7. SCAN Button

When the scan button is pressed, the frequency will increase and the receivable stations will be tuned in one after another, receiving each station for 5 seconds. To stop scanning, press the scan button again.

H240C01O-GAT

CASSETTE TAPE PLAYER OPERATION (H240) (If Installed)



H240A01O

H240A02O-AAT

1. FF/REW Button

- o The FF (fast forward tape winding) starts when the ▶▶ button is pressed during PLAY or REW.
- o PLAY starts when the ▶▶ button is pressed again during the FF.
- o REW (rewinding) starts when the ◀◀ button is pressed during PLAY or FF.
- o PLAY starts when the ◀◀ button is pressed again during REW.

2. AUTO MUSIC SELECT Button

Press the button to find the starting point of each song in a prerecorded music tape.
The quiet space between songs (must have at least a 4 sec. gap) can be identified by the AUTO MUSIC SELECT button.

- o Pressing the ▶▶| button will play the beginning of the next music segment.
- o Pressing the |◀◀ button will start replay at the beginning of the music just listened to.

3. TAPE PROGRAM Button

This allows you to play the reverse side of the tape by merely pressing the program button.
An arrow will appear in the display to show tape direction.

NOTE:

When tape operation is abnormal or ER8 fault code is displayed, Press eject button more than 5 seconds to initialize the deck.

4. EJECT Button

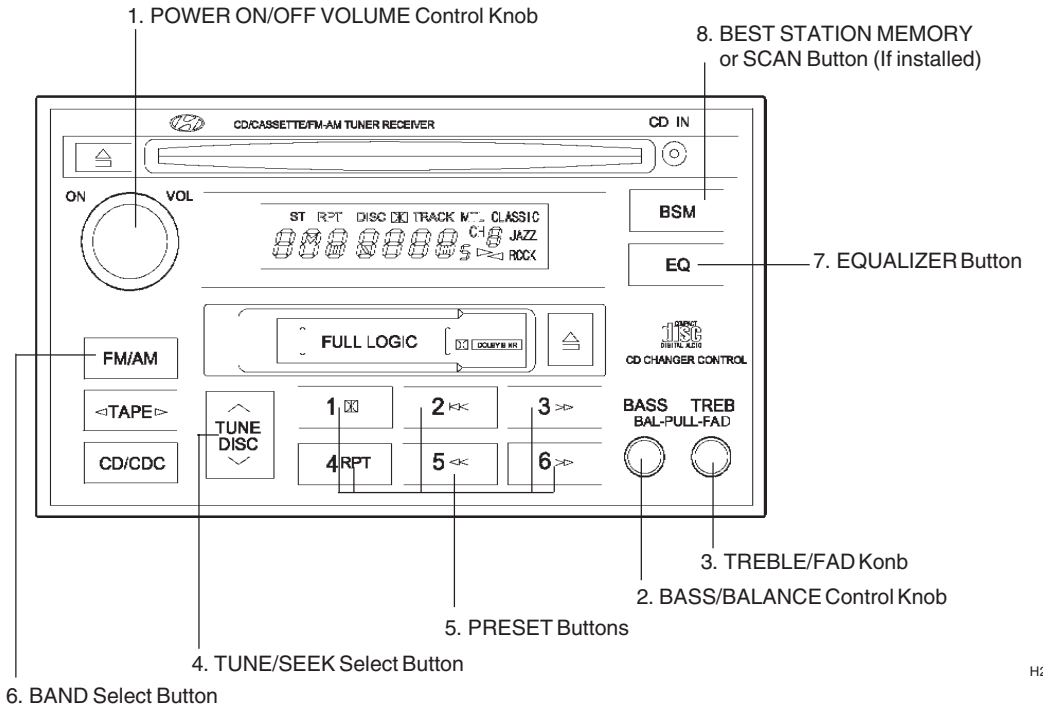
- o When the EJECT button is pressed with a cassette loaded, the cassette will eject.
- o When the EJECT button is pressed during FF/REW, the cassette will eject.

5. DOLBY SELECT Button

If you get background noise during PLAY, you can reduce this considerably by merely pressing DOLBY SELECT button.
If you want to release, press the button again.

H290A01E-GAT

STEREO RADIO OPERATION (H280) (If Installed)



H290A01O

H290B02E-AAT

1. POWER ON-OFF Control Knob

The radio unit may be operated when the ignition key is in the "ACC" or "ON" position. Press the button to switch the power on. The display shows the radio frequency in the radio mode or the tape direction indicator in the tape mode, or CD track either the CD mode or CD AUTO CHANGER mode. To switch the power off, press the button again.

VOLUME Control

Rotate the knob clockwise to increase the volume and turn the knob counterclockwise to reduce the volume.

2. BASS/BALANCE Control Knob

BASS Control Knob

Press to pop the knob out. To increase the bass, rotate the knob clockwise, while to decrease the bass, rotate the knob counterclockwise.

BALANCE Control knob

Pull the Bass control knob out further. Rotate the knob clockwise to emphasize right speaker sound (left speaker sound will be attenuated).
When the control knob is turned counterclockwise, left speaker sound will be emphasized (right speaker sound will be attenuated).

3. TREBLE/FAD Knob

TREBLE Control Knob

Press to pop the knob out and turn to the left or right for the desired treble tone.

FAD (Fader Control) Knob

Further pull the popped-up knob. Turn the control knob counterclockwise to emphasize front speaker sound (rear speaker sound will be attenuated). When the control knob is turned clockwise, rear speaker sound will be emphasized (front speaker sound will be attenuated).

4. TUNE (Manual) Select Button

Press the (∧) side or (∨) side to increase or to decrease the frequency. With the button held down for 0.5 sec. or more, the stop signal (broadcasting radio wave) is ignored and channel selection continues.

SEEK Operation (Automatic Channel Selection)

Press the TUNE select button for 0.5 sec or more. Releasing it will automatically tune to the next available station with a beep sound.
When the (∧) side is pressed longer than 0.5 second, releasing will automatically tune to the next higher frequency and when the (∨) side is pressed longer than 0.5 second, releasing will automatically tune to the next lower frequency.

5. PRESET STATION Select Buttons

Six (6) stations for AM, FM and FM2 respectively can be preset in the electronic memory circuit.

HOW TO PRESET STATIONS

Six AM and twelve FM stations may be programmed into the memory of the radio. Then, by simply pressing the band select button and/or one of the six station select buttons, you may recall any of these stations instantly. To program the stations, follow these steps:

- o Press band selector to set the band for AM, FM and FM2.
- o Select the desired station to be stored by seek or manual tuning.
- o Determine the preset station select button you wish to use to access that station.
- o Press the station select button for more than two seconds. A select button indicator will show in the display indicating which select button you have depressed. The frequency display will flash after it has been stored into the memory with a beep sound. You should then release the button, and proceed to program the next desired station. A total of 18 stations can be programmed by selecting one AM and two FM station per button.
- o When completed, any preset station may be recalled by selecting AM, FM or FM2 band and the appropriate station button.

6. BAND Selector

Pressing the FM/AM button changes the AM, FM1 and FM2 bands. The mode selected is shown on the display.

7. EQUALIZER Button

Press the EQ button to select the CLASSIC, JAZZ, ROCK and DEFEAT MODE for the desired tone quality. Each press of the button changes the display as follows;

CLASSIC → JAZZ → ROCK → DEFEAT

8. Best Station Memory Button (BSM) (If installed)

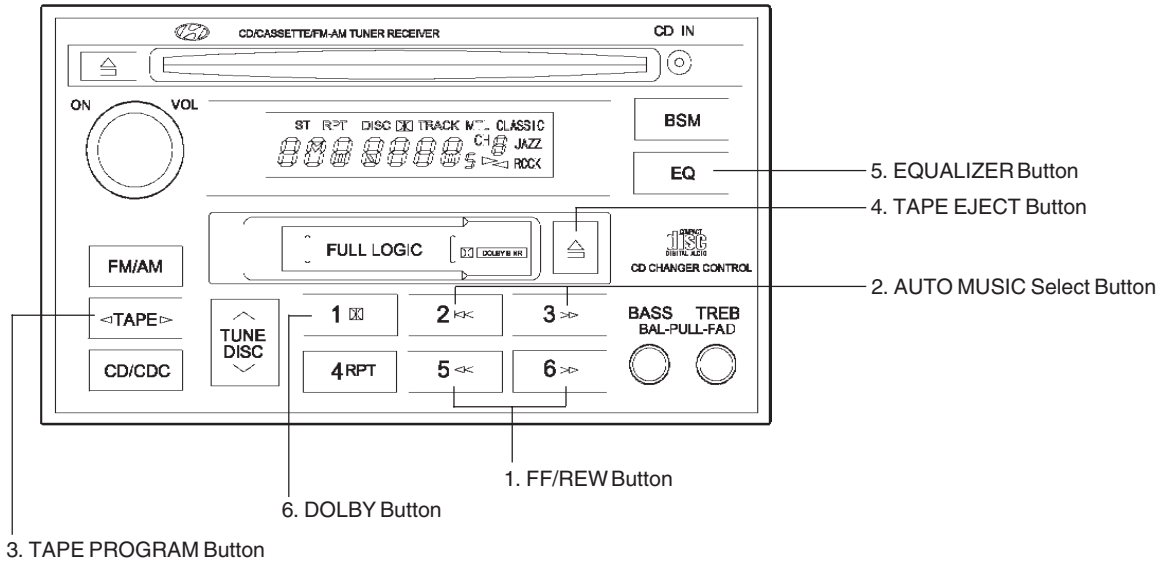
When the BSM button is pressed for two seconds or longer, the six channels from the highest field intensity are selected next and stored in memory. The stations selected are stored in the sequence frequency from the first preset key.

SCAN Button (If installed)

When the scan button is pressed, the frequency will increase and the receivable stations will be tuned in one after another, receiving each station for 5 seconds. To stop scanning, press the scan button again.

H290C01E-GAT

CASSETTE TAPE PLAYER OPERATION (H280) (If Installed)



H290A01O

H290D01O-AAT

1. FF/REW Button

- o Fast forward tape winding starts when the FF (▶▶) button is pressed during the PLAY or REW mode.
- o Tape play starts when the FF (▶▶) button is pressed again during the FF mode.
- o Tape rewinding starts when the REW (◀◀) button is pressed during the PLAY or FF mode.
- o Tape play starts when the REW (◀◀) button pressed again during the REW mode.

2. AUTO MUSIC Select Button

Press the button to find the starting point of each song in a prerecorded music tape. The quiet space between songs (must have at least a 4 sec. gap) can be identified by the AUTO MUSIC Select button.

- o Pressing the ▶▶| button will play the beginning of the next music segment.
- o Pressing the |◀◀ button will start replay at the beginning of the music just listened to.

3. TAPE PROGRAM Button

This allows you to play the reverse side of the tape by merely depressing the program button. An arrow will appear in the display to show tape direction.

4. TAPE EJECT button

- o When the ⏏ button is pressed with the cassette loaded, the cassette is ejected.
- o When the ⏏ button is pressed during the FF/REW mode, the cassette is ejected.

5. EQ Button

Press the EQ button to select the CLASSIC, JAZZ, ROCK and DEFEAT MODE for the desired tone quality. Each press of the button changes the display as follows;

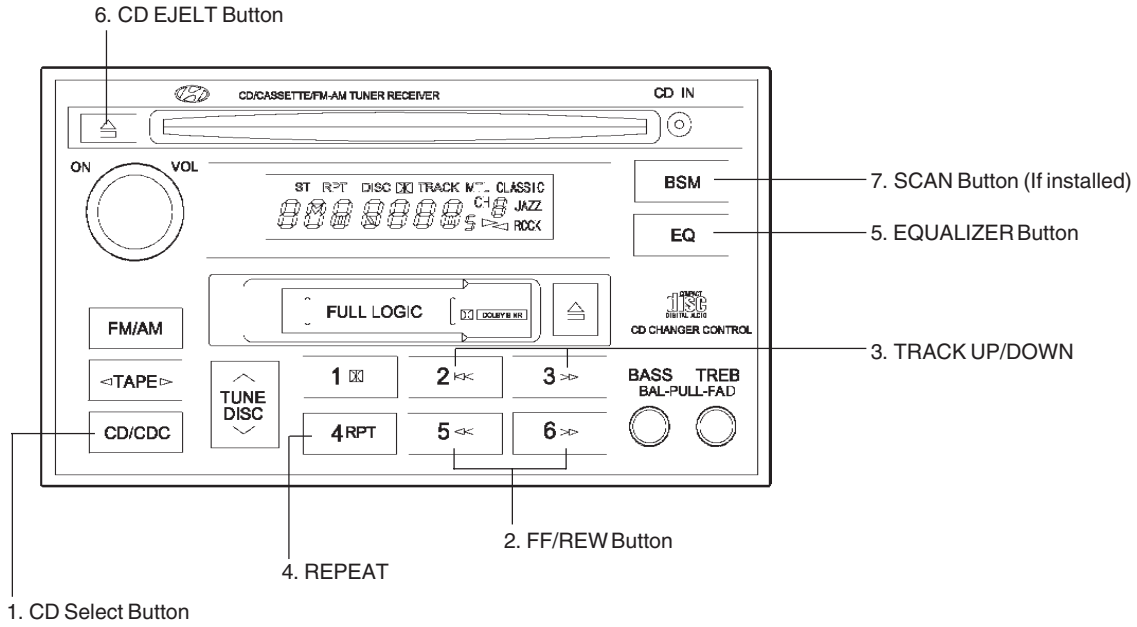
CLASSIC → JAZZ → ROCK → DEFEAT

6. DOLBY Button

If you get background noise during tape PLAY, you can reduce this considerably by merely pressing the DOLBY button. If you want to cancel the DOLBY feature, press the button again.

H290E01E-GAT

COMPACT DISC PLAYER OPERATION (H280) (If Installed)



H290A01O

H290F02O-GAT

1. CD Select Button

- o Insert the CD with the label facing upward.
- o Insert the CD to start CD playback, during radio operation or cassette tape playing.
- o When a disc is in the CD deck, if you press the CD/CDC button the CD player will begin playing even if the radio or cassette player is being used.
- o The CD player can be used when the ignition switch is in either the "ON" or "ACC" position.

2. FF/REW (▸▸/◂◂)

If you want to fast forward or reverse through the compact disc track, push and hold the FF (▸▸) or REW (◂◂) button.
When you release the button, the compact disc player will resume playing.

3. TRACK UP/DOWN

- o The desired track on the disc currently being played can be selected using the track number.
- o Press ▸▸| button once to skip forward to the beginning of the next track. Press |◂◂ button once to skip back to the beginning of the track.

4. REPEAT

- o To repeat the track you are currently listening to, press the RPT button. To cancel, press again.
- o If you do not release RPT operation when the track ends, it will automatically be replayed. This process will be continued until you push the button again.

5. EQUALIZER Button

Press the EQ button to select the CLASSIC, JAZZ, ROCK and DEFEAT MODE for the desired tone quality. Each press of the button changes the display as follows;

CLASSIC → JAZZ → ROCK → DEFEAT
↑ ←

6. CD EJECT Button

When the ⏏ button is pressed with a CD loaded, the CD will eject.

7. SCAN Button (If installed)

- o Press the SCAN button to playback the first 10 seconds of each track.
- o Press the SCAN button again within 10 sec. when you have reached the desired track.

NOTE:

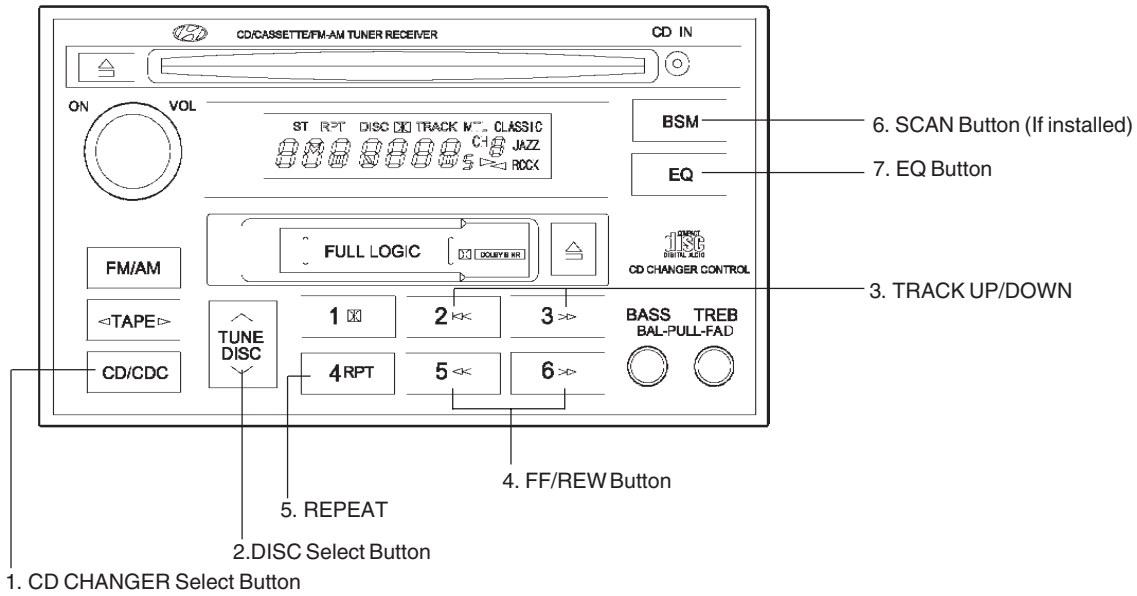
- **o To assure proper operation of the unit, keep the vehicle interior temperature within a normal range by using the vehicle's air conditioning or heating system.**
- **o When replacing the fuse, replace it with a fuse having the correct capacity.**
- **o The preset station frequencies are all erased when the car battery is disconnected. Therefore, all data will have to be set again if this should occur.**
- **o Do not add any oil to the rotating parts. Keep magnets, screwdrivers and other metallic objects away from the tape mechanism and head.**
- **o This equipment is designed to be used only in a 12 volt DC battery system with negative ground.**
- **o This unit is made of precision parts. Do not attempt to disassemble or adjust any parts.**
- **o When driving your vehicle, be sure to keep the volume of the unit set low enough to allow you to hear sounds coming from the outside.**
- **o Do not expose this equipment (including the speakers and tape) to water or excessive moisture.**

CAUTION:

Do not insert warped or poor quality discs into the CD player as damage to the unit may occur.

H290G01E-GAT

CD AUTO CHANGER (H280) (If Installed)



H290A01O

B290H02HP-GAT

The CD auto changer is located in the right side of the luggage compartment.

o To use the CD auto changer.

1. Open the sliding lid of the CD auto changer.
2. To eject the compact disc magazine, press the EJECT button located inside the CD auto changer.
3. Insert the discs into the magazine.
4. Push the magazine into the CD auto changer and close the sliding lid.

o The CD auto changer can be used when the ignition switch is in either "ON" or "ACC" position.

1. CD CHANGER Select Button

When the CD changer magazine contains discs, press the "CD/CDC" button and the CD changer can be used even if the radio or cassette player is being used. The Hyundai CD changer can hold up to eight discs. The disc number will be lit, and the track number, and elapsed time will be displayed.

2. DISC Select Button

To select the CD you want, push "TUNE DISC" to change the disc number.

3. TRACK UP/DOWN

o The desired track on the disc currently being played can be selected using the track number.

o Press ⏭ once to skip forward to the beginning of the next track. Press ⏮ once to skip back to the beginning of the track.

4. FF/REW (▶▶/◀◀)

If you want to fast forward or reverse through the compact disc track, push and hold in the FF (▶▶) or REW (◀◀) button.
When you release the button, the compact disc player will resume playing.

5. REPEAT

o To repeat the track you are listening to, press the RPT button. To cancel, press again.

o If you do not release RPT operation when the track ends, it will automatically be replayed. This process will be continued until you push the button again.

6. SCAN Button (If installed)

o Press the SCAN button to playback the first 10 seconds of each track.

o Press the SCAN button again within 10 sec. for the desired track.

7. EQ Button

Press the EQ button to select the CLASSIC, JAZZ, ROCK and DEFEAT MODE for the desired tone quality. Each press of the button changes the display as follows;

CLASSIC → JAZZ → ROCK → DEFEAT

NOTE:

- **When replacing the fuse, replace it with a fuse having the correct capacity.**
- **This equipment is designed to be used only in a 12 volt DC battery system with negative ground.**
- **This unit is made of precision parts. Do not attempt to disassemble or adjust any parts.**
- **When driving your vehicle, be sure to keep the volume of the unit set low enough to allow you to hear sounds coming from the outside.**

CAUTION:

Do not insert warped or poor quality discs into the CD changer as damage to the unit may occur.

B890A01Y-AAT

AUDIO FAULT CODE

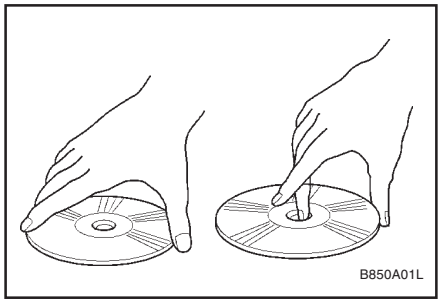
If you see any error indication in the display while using the system in the CD or Tape mode, find the cause in the chart below. If you cannot clear the error indication, take the car to your Hyundai dealer.

INDICATION	CAUSE	SOLUTION
Er2	CD DECK MECHANICAL ERROR (EJECT ERROR, LOADING ERROR)	After resetting the audio, push the eject button. If disc is not ejected, consult your hyundai dealer.
Er3	FOCUS ERROR DATA READ ERROR	Make sure the disc is not scratched or damaged. Press the eject button and pull out the disc. Then insert a normal CD disc.
Er6	DISC ERROR	Check if the disc is inserted correctly in the CD player. Make sure the disc is not scratched or damaged.
Er8	TAPE DECK ERROR TAPE EJECT ERROR	After resetting the audio system, push the eject button. If tape does not eject, consult your Hyundai dealer.
HHH	TEMPERATURE IS TOO HIGH	Fault code will reset automatically when the temperature returns to normal.
no CD	NO DISC IN MAGAZINE NO CD MAGAZINE IN THE AUTO CHANGER	Insert disc in magazine or insert CD magazine in the auto changer.

B850A02F-AAT

CARE OF DISC

Proper Handling



Handle your disc as shown. Do not drop the disc. Hold the disc so you will not leave fingerprints on the surface. If the surface is scratched, it may cause the pickup to skip signal tracks. Do not affix tape, paper, or gummed labels on the disc. Do not write on the disc.

Damaged Disc

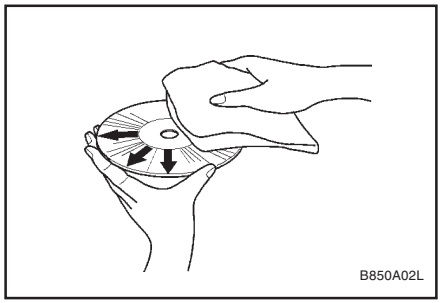
Do not attempt to play damaged, warped or cracked discs. These could severely damage the playback mechanism.

Storage

When not in use, place your discs in their individual cases and store them in a cool place away from the sun, heat, and dust.

Do not grip or pull out the disc with your hand while the disc is being pulled into the unit by the self loading mechanism.

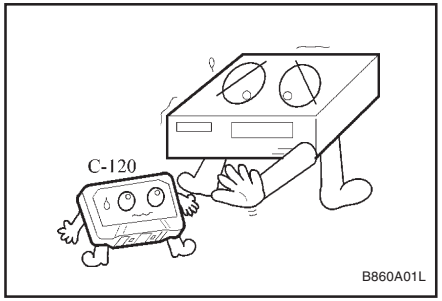
Keep Your Discs Clean



Fingerprints, dust, or soil on the surface of a disc could cause the pickup to skip signal tracks. Wipe the surface clean with a clean soft cloth. If the surface is heavily soiled, dampen a clean soft cloth in a solution of mild neutral detergent to wipe it clean.

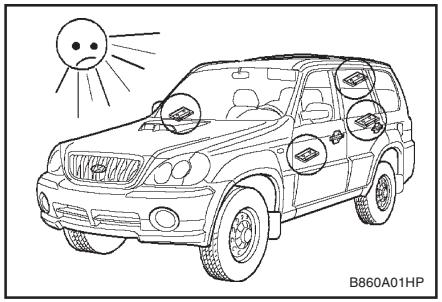
B860A01A-AAT

CARE OF CASSETTE TAPES

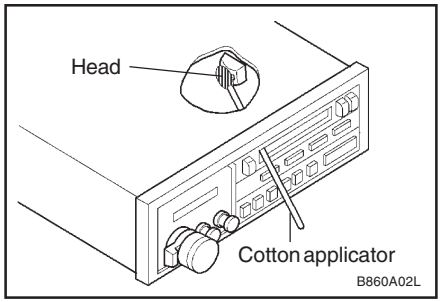


Proper care of your cassette tapes will extend the tape life and increase your listening enjoyment. Always protect your tapes and cassette cases from direct sunlight, severe cold and dusty conditions. When not in use, cassettes should always be stored in the protective cassette case in which they were originally supplied. When the vehicle is very hot or cold, allow the interior temperature to become more comfortable before listening to your cassettes.

- Never leave a cassette inserted in the player when not being played. This could damage the tape player unit and the cassette tape.
- We strongly recommend against the use of tapes longer than C-60 (60 minutes total). Tapes such as C-120 or C-180 are very thin and do not perform as well in the automotive environment.

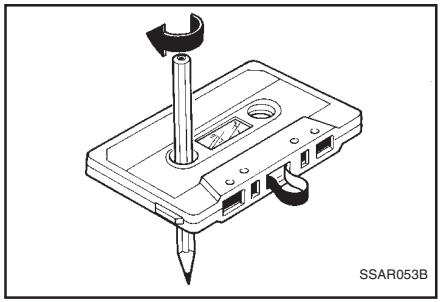

B860A01HP

- o Be sure that the cassette label is not loose or peeling off or tape ejection may be difficult.
- o Never touch or soil the actual audio tape surfaces.
- o Keep all magnetized objects, such as electric motors, speakers or transformers away from your cassette tapes and tape player unit.
- o Store cassettes in a cool, dry place with the open side facing down to prevent dust from setting in the cassette body.
- o Avoid repeated fast reverse usage to replay one given tune or tape section. This can cause poor tape winding to occur, and eventually cause excessive internal drag and poor audio quality in the cassette. If this occurs, it can sometimes be corrected by fast winding the tape from end to end several times. If this does not correct the problem, do not continue to use the tape in your vehicle.



B860A02L

- o The playback head, capstan and pinch rollers will develop a coating of tape residue that can result in deterioration of sound quality, such as a wavering sound. They should be cleaned monthly using a commercially available head cleaning tape or special solution available from audio specialty shops. Follow the supplier's directions carefully and never oil any part of the tape player unit.
- o Always be sure that the tape is tightly wound on its reel before inserting in the player. Rotate a pencil in the drive sprockets to wind up any slack.


SSAR053B

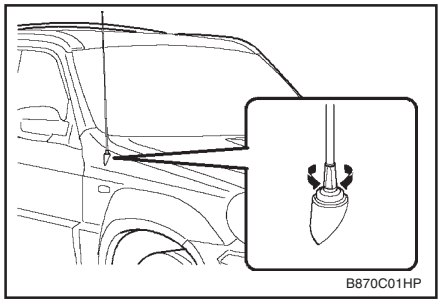
NOTE:

Look at a tape before you insert it.
If the tape is loose, tighten it by turning one of the hubs with a pencil or your finger.
If the label is peeling off, do not put it in the player. It may cause the tape jam in the drive mechanism when you try to eject it.
Do not leave tape sitting where they are exposed to hot warm or, high humidity, such as on top of the dashboard or in the player.
If a tape is excessively hot or cold, let it reach a moderate temperature before putting it in the player.

B870A01A-GAT

ANTENNA

Fixed Rod Antenna



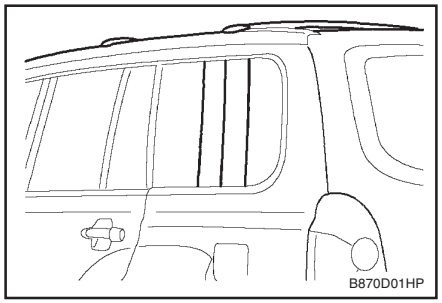
Your car uses a fixed rod antenna to receive both AM and FM broadcast signals.
This antenna is a removable type. To remove the antenna, turn the antenna counterclockwise. To install the antenna, turn the antenna clockwise.

CAUTION:

Be sure to remove the antenna before washing the car in an automatic car wash or the antenna may be damaged.

B880C02B-GAT

Glass Antenna (If installed)



When the radio power switch is turned on while the ignition key is in either the "ON" or "ACC" position, your car will receive both AM and FM broadcast signals through the antenna in the rear quarter glass.

CAUTION:

- **Do not clean the inner side of the rear quarter glass with an abrasive type of glass cleaner or use a scraper to remove foreign deposits from the inner surface of the glass as this may cause damage to the antenna elements.**
- **Avoid adding metalic coating such as Ni, Cd, and so on. These can disturb receiving AM and FM broadcast signals.**

2. DRIVING YOUR HYUNDAI

C010A01O-AAT

WARNING: ENGINE EXHAUST CAN BE DANGEROUS!

Engine exhaust fumes can be extremely dangerous. If, at any time, you smell exhaust fumes inside the vehicle, open the windows immediately.

o Do not inhale exhaust fumes.
Exhaust fumes contain carbon monoxide, a colorless, odorless gas that can cause unconsciousness and death by asphyxiation.

o Be sure the exhaust system does not leak.
The exhaust system should be checked whenever the vehicle is raised to change the oil or for any other purpose. If you hear a change in the sound of the exhaust or if you drive over something that strikes the underneath side of the car, have the exhaust system checked as soon as possible by your Hyundai dealer.

o Do not run the engine in an enclosed area.
Letting the engine idle in your garage, even with the garage door open, is a hazardous practice. Never run the engine in your garage any longer than it takes to start the engine and back the car out.

o Avoid idling the engine for prolonged periods with people inside the car.
If it is necessary to idle the engine for a prolonged period with people inside the car, be sure to do so only in an open area with the air intake set at "Fresh" and fan operating at one of the higher speeds so fresh air is drawn into the interior.

If you must drive with the tail gate open because you are carrying objects that make this necessary:

1. Close all windows.
2. Open side vents.
3. Set the air intake control at "Fresh", the air flow control at "Floor" or "Face" and the fan at one of the higher speeds.

To assure proper operation of the ventilation system, be sure the ventilation air intakes located just in front of the windshield are kept clear of snow, ice, leaves or other obstructions.

C020A01A-AAT

BEFORE STARTING THE ENGINE

Before you start the engine, you should always:

1. Look around the vehicle to be sure there are no flat tires, puddles of oil, water or other indications of possible trouble.
2. After entering the car, check to be sure the parking brake is engaged.
3. Check that all windows, and lights are clean.
4. Check that the interior and exterior mirrors are clean and in position.
5. Check your seat, seatback and headrest to be sure they are in their proper positions.
6. Lock all the doors.
7. Fasten your seat belt and be sure that all other occupants have fastened theirs.
8. Turn off all lights and accessories that are not needed.
9. When you turn the ignition switch to "ON", check that all appropriate warning lights are operating and that you have sufficient fuel.
10. Check the operation of warning lights and all bulbs when key is in the "ON" position.

C030A01HP-GAT

COMBINATION IGNITION SWITCH

To Start the Engine

- o If your Hyundai is equipped with a manual transmission, place the shift lever in neutral and depress the clutch pedal fully.
- o If your Hyundai has an automatic transmission, place the shift lever in "P" (park).
- o To start the engine, insert the ignition key and turn it to the "START" position. Release it as soon as the engine starts. Do not hold the key in the "START" position for more than 15 seconds.

NOTE:

For safety, the engine will not start if the shift lever is not in "P" or "N" Position (Automatic Transmission).

WARNING: (Diesel only)

To ensure that sufficient vacuum exists within the brake system during cold weather start-up conditions, it is necessary to run the engine at idle after starting according to the following table.

Ambient temp.	Warm up time
Above -15°C (5°F)	3 min. or longer
Below -15°C (5°F)	6 min. or longer

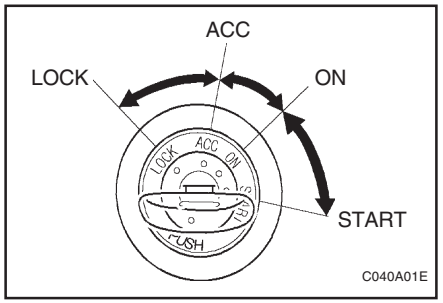
After starting the engine, do not drive the vehicle until the brake vacuum warning light has turned off.
Failure to carry out the above procedure may result in the need to apply greater pedal pressure in order to effect the necessary braking effort.

C040A01A-AAT

KEY POSITIONS

WARNING:

The engine should not be turned off or the key removed from the ignition key cylinder while the vehicle is in motion. The steering wheel is locked by removing the key.



o "START"

The engine is started in this position. It will crank until you release the key.

NOTE:

Do not hold the key in the "START" position for more than 15 seconds.

o "ON"

When the key is in the "ON" position, the ignition is on and all accessories may be turned on. If the engine is not running, the key should not be left in the "ON" position. This will discharge the battery and may also damage the ignition system.

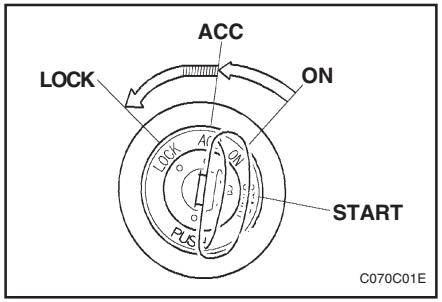
o "ACC"
With the key in the "ACC" position, some electrical accessories (radio, etc.) may be operated.

o "LOCK"
The key can be removed or inserted in this position.
To protect against theft, the steering wheel locks by removing the key.

NOTE:
To unlocking the steering wheel, insert the key, and then turn the steering wheel and key simultaneously.

C070C01A-AAT

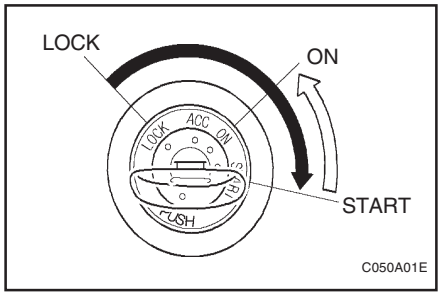
To Remove The Ignition Key



1. Turn the ignition key to the "ACC" position.
2. Simultaneously push and turn the ignition key counterclockwise from the "ACC" position to the "LOCK" position.
3. The key can be removed in the "LOCK" position.

C050A01A-AAT

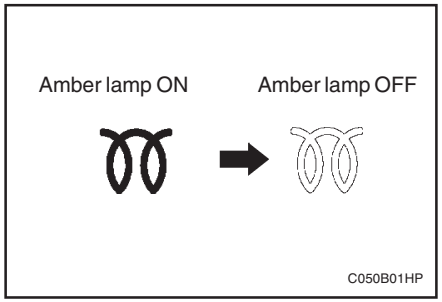
STARTING



WARNING:
Never run the engine in a closed or poorly ventilated area any longer than is needed to move your car in or out of the area. The carbon monoxide gas emitted is odorless and can cause serious injury or death.

C050B01HP-GAT

Starting Procedure
1. Insert key, and fasten the seat belt.
2. Apply the parking brake.
3. If your Hyundai is equipped with a manual transmission, place the shift lever in neutral and depress the clutch pedal fully. If your Hyundai has an automatic transmission, place the shift lever in "P" (park).
4. On vehicles equipped with the diesel preheat indication lamp, turn the ignition key to the "ON" position. The diesel-preheat indication lamp will first illuminate in amber, and then after a short time, the amber illumination will go off, indicating that preheating is completed.



NOTE:
If the engine were not started within 2 seconds after the preheating is completed, turn the ignition key once more to the "LOCK" position during 10 seconds, and then to the "ON" position, in order to preheat again.

5. Operate the accelerator pedal as described below in accordance with the atmospheric temperature and/or engine condition. (Diesel Engine (2.5 TCI) Only)
   (1) When the atmospheric temperature is moderate or the engine is warm:
   Start the engine without depressing the accelerator pedal.
   (2) When the atmospheric temperature is low and the engine is cold:
   Start the engine while depressing the accelerator pedal. If the atmospheric temperature is very low, setting the ignition switch to "ON" for one or two seconds before attempting to start the engine will make it easier to start.
6. Turn the ignition key to the "START" position and release it when the engine starts.

C055B01HP-GAT

STARTING AND STOPPING THE ENGINE FOR TURBO CHARGER INTERCOOLER (Diesel Engine)

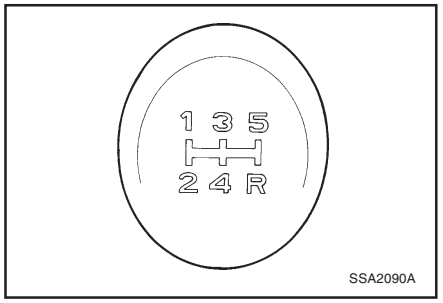
(1) Do not race the engine or sudden accelerate the engine immediately after start it. If the engine is cold, allow the engine to idle for several seconds before it is driven to ensure sufficient lubrication of the turbo charger unit.
(2) After high speed or extended driving, requiring a heavy engine load, the engine should be allowed to idle, as shown in the chart below, before turning it off.
This idle time will allow the turbo charger to cool prior to shutting the engine off.

Driving Condition		Required Idle Time
Normal driving		Not necessary
High speed driving	Up to 80 km/h	About 20 seconds
	Up to 100km/h	About 1 minute
Steep mountain slopes or continued driving in excess of 100km/h		About 2 minutes

WARNING:
Do not turn the engine off immediately after it has been subjected to a heavy load. Doing so may cause severe damage to the engine or turbo charger unit.

C070A02HP-GAT

OPERATING THE MANUAL TRANSMISSION



Your Hyundai's manual transmission has a conventional shift pattern. This shift pattern is imprinted on the shift knob. The transmission is fully synchronized in all forward gears so shifting to either a higher or a lower gear is easily accomplished.

NOTE:
- **To shift into reverse, rest the lever in neutral for at least 3 seconds after your car is completely stopped. Then move the lever into the reverse position.**
- **During cold weather, shifting may be difficult until the transmission lubricant has warmed up. This is normal and not harmful to the transmission.**
- **If you 've come to a complete stop and it's hard to shift into 1st or R(Reverse), put the**

shift lever in N(Neutral) position and release the clutch. Press the clutch pedal back down, and then shift into 1st or R(Reverse) gear position.

- **Do not use the shift lever as a handrest during driving, as this can result in premature wear of the transmission shift forks.**

CAUTION:

When downshifting from fifth gear to fourth gear, caution should be taken not to inadvertently press the gear shift lever sideways in such a manner that second gear is engaged. Such a drastic downshift may cause the engine speed to increase to the point that the tachometer will enter the red-zone. Such overrevving of the engine may possibly cause engine damage.

C070B01A-AAT

Using the Clutch

The clutch should be pressed all the way to the floor before shifting, then released slowly. The clutch pedal should always be used after fully returning to the original position. Do not rest your foot on the clutch pedal while driving. This can cause unnecessary wear. Do not partially engage the clutch to hold the car on an incline. This causes unnecessary wear. Use the parking brake to hold the car on an incline. Do not operate the clutch pedal rapidly and repeatedly.

C070D02O-AAT

Good Driving Practices

- Never take the car out of gear and coast down a hill. This is extremely hazardous. Always leave the car in gear.
- Don't "ride" the brakes. This can cause them to overheat and malfunction. Instead, when you are driving down a long hill, slow down and shift to a lower gear. When you do this, engine braking will help slow the car.
- Slow down before shifting to a lower gear. This will help avoid over-revving the engine, which can cause damage.
- Slow down when you encounter cross winds. This gives you much better control of your car.
- Be sure the car is completely stopped before you attempt to shift into reverse. The transmission can be damaged if you do not. To shift into reverse, depress the clutch, move the shift lever to neutral, wait three seconds, then shift to the reverse position.
- Exercise extreme caution when driving on a slippery surface. Be especially careful when braking, accelerating or shifting gears. On a slippery surface, an abrupt change in vehicle speed can cause the drive wheels to lose traction and the vehicle to go out of control.

WARNING:

- **Avoid high cornering speeds.**
- **Do not make quick steering wheel movements, such as sharp lane changes or fast, sharp turns.**
- **Always wear your seat belts.**
- **The risk of rollover is greatly increased if you lose control of your vehicle at highway speeds.**
- **Loss of control often occurs if two or more wheels drop off the roadway and the driver oversteers to reenter the roadway.**
- **In the event your vehicle leaves the roadway, do not steer sharply. Instead, slow down before pulling back into the travel lanes.**
- **In a collision crash, an unbelted person is significantly more likely to die than a person wearing a seatbelt.**
- **Never exceed posted speed limits.**

C070E03A-GAT

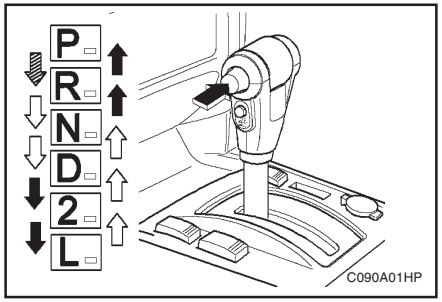
RECOMMENDED SHIFT POINTS

Shift from-to	Recommended
1-2	20 km/h (15 mph)
2-3	40 km/h (25 mph)
3-4	55 km/h (35 mph)
4-5	75 km/h (75 mph)

The shift points as shown above are recommended for optimum fuel economy and performance.

C090A01HP-GAT

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION (If installed)



The highly efficient Hyundai automatic transmission has four forward speeds and one reverse speed. It has a conventional shift pattern as shown in the illustration.
At night, with the side markers or headlights switched on, the appropriate symbol on the quadrant will be illuminated according to the range selected.

CAUTION:
Never shift into "R" or "P" position while the vehicle is moving.

NOTE:
⇨ **Depress the brake pedal and push the button when shifting.**
➡ **Push the button when shifting.**
⇨ **The selector lever can be shifted freely.**

For optimum fuel economy, accelerate gradually. The transmission will automatically shift to the second, third and overdrive gears.

C090B01HP-GAT

The function of each position is as follows:

o P (Park):
Use to hold the vehicle in place when parked or while starting the engine. Whenever parking the car, apply the parking brake and shift the selector lever to the "P" (Park) position.

CAUTION:
Never place the selector lever in the "P" (Park) position unless the vehicle is fully stopped.
Failure to observe this caution will cause severe damage to the transmission.

C090C01A-AAT

o R (Reverse):
Use for backing up the vehicle. Bring the car to a complete stop before shifting the selector lever to "R" position.

C090D01HP-GAT

o N (Neutral):
In the "N" position, the transmission is in neutral, which means that no gears are engaged. The engine can be started with the shift lever in "N" position, although this is not recommended except if the engine stalls while the car is moving.

C090E01HP-GAT

o D (Drive):
Use for normal driving. The transmission will automatically shift through a four-gear sequence, giving best economy and power. Never downshift manually to "2" position or "L" position when vehicle speed is more than 96 km/h (60 mph).

C090F01A-AAT

o 2 (Second gear):
Use for driving on slippery road, hill climbing or engine braking downhill. "2" automatically shifts between 1st and 2nd gears.
This means that no shift-up to 3rd gear is performed. However, the shift-up to 3rd gear is done when the car speed exceeds a certain value to prevent the engine from over-running.
Manually move the selector to "D" returning to normal driving condition.

C090G01HP-GAT

o L (Low gear):
Use for driving up a very steep grade or for engine braking when descending steep hills. When downshifting to "L", the transmission will temporarily remain in second gear until the vehicle has slowed enough for low gear to engage. Do not exceed 50 km/h (30 mph) in low gear.
"L" engages 1st gear only. However, shift-up to 2nd is performed when the vehicle exceeds a certain speed, and as the speed increases, shift-up to 3rd gear occurs to prevent over-running the engine.

C090H01HP-DAT

CAUTION:

o P (Park):

Use this range to park the vehicle. This range is also used when engine is started and warmed up.

o N (Neutral):

The engine can be started in this range, but the use of "P" range is recommended for safer start up.

NOTE:

- **o For smooth operation, depress the brake pedal when shifting from NEUTRAL or PARK to a forward or reverse gear.**
- **o The ignition key must be in the "ON" position and the brake pedal fully depressed in order to move the shift lever from the "P" (Park)position to any of the other positions.**
- **o It is always possible to shift from "R", "N", "D", "2", "L" positions to "P" position. However, the vehicle must be fully stopped to avoid transmission damage.**

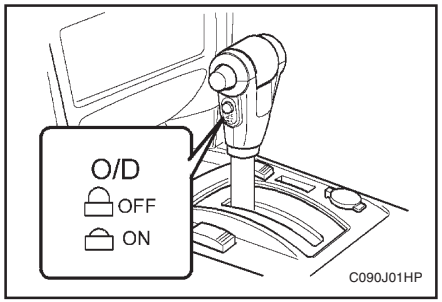
C090I01HP-GAT

CAUTION:

- **o Shift into "R" and "P" position only when the vehicle has completely stopped.**
- **o Do not accelerate the engine in the reverse or any of the forward positions with the brakes applied.**
- **o Always apply the footbrake when shifting from "P" or "N" to "R", "D", "2" or "L" position.**
- **o Do not use the P(Park) position in place of the parking brake. Always set the parking brake, shift the transmission into P(Park) and turn off the ignition when you leave the vehicle, even momentarily.**
  Never leave the vehicle unattended while the engine is running.
- **o Check the automatic transmission fluid level regularly, and add fluid as necessary.**

C090J01HP-DAT

OVERDRIVE SWITCH (If installed)



When the overdrive switch is turned on, the transmission will automatically upshift to the second, third and overdrive gears. When the overdrive switch is turned off, the transmission will not upshift to the overdrive gear at all.

For normal driving, the selector lever should be left in the "D" position and the overdrive switch turned on.

If you need to accelerate rapidly, press the accelerator pedal all the way to the floor. The transmission will automatically shift to a lower gear, depending on the speed.

NOTE:

Turn the overdrive switch on for good fuel economy and smooth driving. If engine braking is needed in the "D" range or if repeated upshifting and downshifting between the 3rd and 4th gear is needed when climbing a gentle slope, it is recommended that the overdrive switch be turned off. Turn the overdrive switch back on immediately afterward.

C090N02O-AAT

Good Driving Practices

- o Never move the gear selector lever from "P" or "N" to any other position with the accelerator pedal depressed.
- o Never move the gear selector lever into "P" when the vehicle is in motion.
- o Be sure the car is completely stopped before you attempt to shift into "R".
- o Never take the car out of gear and coast down a hill. This may be extremely hazardous. Always leave the car in gear when moving.

- o Do not "ride" the brakes. This can cause them to overheat and malfunction. Instead, when you are driving down a long hill, slow down and shift to a lower gear. When you do this, engine braking will help slow the car.
- o Slow down before shifting to a lower gear. Otherwise, the lower gear may not be engaged.
- o Always use the parking brake. Do not depend on placing the transmission in "P" to keep the car from moving.
- o Exercise extreme caution when driving on a slippery surface. Be especially careful when braking, accelerating or shifting gears. On a slippery surface, an abrupt change in vehicle speed can cause the drive wheels to lose traction and the vehicle to go out of control.

WARNING:

- **o Avoid high cornering speeds.**
- **o Do not make quick steering wheel movements, such as sharp lane changes or fast, sharp turns.**
- **o Always wear your seat belts.**
- **o The risk of rollover is greatly increased if you lose control of your vehicle at highway speeds.**
- **o Loss of control often occurs if two or more wheels drop off the roadway and the driver oversteers to reenter the roadway.**
- **o In the event your vehicle leaves the roadway, do not steer sharply. Instead, slow down before pulling back into the travel lanes.**
- **o In a collision crash, an unbelted person is significantly more likely to die than a person wearing a seatbelt.**
- **o Never exceed posted speed limits.**

C120A02A-AAT

ANTI-LOCK BRAKE SYSTEM (If installed)

The Anti-Lock Brake System (ABS) is designed to prevent wheel lock-up during sudden braking or on hazardous road surfaces. The ABS control module monitors the wheel speed and controls the pressure applied to each brake. Thus, in emergency situations or on slick roads, ABS will increase vehicle control during braking.

NOTE:

During ABS operation, a slight pulsation may be felt in the brake pedal when the brakes are applied. Also, a noise may be heard in the engine compartment while braking. These conditions are normal and indicate that the anti-lock brake system is functioning properly.

WARNING:

ABS will not prevent accidents due to improper or dangerous driving maneuvers. Even though vehicle control is improved during emergency braking, always maintain a safe distance between you and objects ahead. Vehicle speeds should always be reduced during extreme road conditions.

The braking distance for cars equipped with an anti-lock braking system may be longer than for those without it in the following road conditions. During these conditions the vehicle should be driven at reduced speeds.

- **o Rough, gravel or snow-covered roads.**
- **o With tire chains installed.**
- **o Roads where the road surface is pitted or has different surface height.**

The safety features of an ABS equipped vehicle should not be tested by high speed driving or cornering. This could endanger the safety of yourself or others.

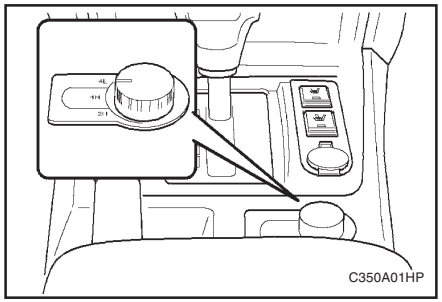
D090A01P-GAT

FOUR-WHEEL DRIVE (4WD)

You can send your engine power to all front and rear wheels for maximum power. 4WD is useful when you drive in snow, mud, ice, mountainous or sandy areas where good traction is required, or when your wheels lose traction using two-wheel drive.

C350A01HP-GAT

Part-time 4WD operation



1. Knob position

This is used to set different positions.

2H(Rear-wheel drive)

When driving on normal roads and highway.

4H(High range 4-wheel drive)

When driving off-road, wet or snow-covered roads with normal speed.
The 4WD engaged indicator light ( ) will be turned on to remind you that you are in the 4H mode.

4L(Low range 4-wheel drive)

Use "4L" for climbing or descending steep hills, off-road driving, and towing the vehicle.
Especially when increased drive power is required.
The 4WD LOW indicator light (4WD LOW) will be turned on to remind you that you are in the 4L mode.

CAUTION:

Do not select 4WD (4H or 4L) mode on dry paved roads. Especially on dry high way, never select the 4WD mode.
Four-wheel driving on dry paved roads for a long period will increase the fuel consumption with possible noise generation and early tire wear. In addition, differential oil temperature increases with possible driving system part wear.

2. Transfer shift knob operation

By turning the transfer shift knob(4H, 4L), both axles of the vehicle are rigidly connected with each other. This improves the traction characteristics.

2H → 4H

Turn the transfer shift knob from the 2H mode to the 4H mode at speed below 80 km/h. It is not necessary to depress the clutch pedal (Manual Transmission) or put the shift lever into "N(neutral)" position (Automatic Transmission). Perform this operation when driving straight.

4H → 2H

Turn the transfer shift knob from the 4H mode to the 2H mode at speed below 80 km/h. It is not necessary to depress the clutch pedal (Manual Transmission) or put the shift lever into "N(neutral)" position (Automatic Transmission). Perform this operation when driving straight.

4H → 4L

1. Stop the vehicle.
2. Depress the clutch pedal (Manual Transmission) or put the shift lever into "N (neutral)" position (Automatic Transmission).
3. Select the 4L mode.

4L → 4H

1. Stop the vehicle.
2. Depress the clutch pedal (Manual Transmission) or put the shift lever into "N (neutral)" position (Automatic Transmission).
3. Select the 4H mode.

D090E01HP-GAT

Driving Four-wheel drive safely

- The driving posture should be more upright and closer to the wheel than usual; adjust the seat to a good position for easy steering and pedal operation.
- Be sure to wear the seat belt.
- Drive carefully when off the road and avoid dangerous areas.
- 4WD has higher ground clearance and a narrower track to make them capable of performing in a wide variety of off road applications. Specific design characteristics give them a higher center of gravity than ordinary cars. An advantage of the higher ground clearance is a better view of the road allowing you to anticipate problems. They are not designed for cornering at the same speeds as

conventional 2-wheel drive vehicles any more than low-slung sports cars are designed to perform satisfactorily under off-road conditions. If at all possible, avoid sharp turns or abrupt maneuvers. As with other vehicles of this type, failure to operate this vehicle correctly may result in loss of control or vehicle rollover.

- o Do not grip the inside or spokes of the steering wheel when driving off-road. The steering wheel could jerk and injure your hands. Always firmly hold the outer steering wheel when you are driving off-road.
- o Drive at lower speeds in strong crosswinds. Because of your vehicle's high center of gravity, its stability will be affected in crosswinds. Slower speeds ensure better vehicle control.
- o Check your brake condition once you are out of mud or water. Press the brake several times as you move slowly until your feel normal braking forces return.
- o Four-wheel driving on flat and normal roads can result in a severe binding condition when turning the steering wheel.

Driving on dry paved road and highway

Select 2H(2WD) to drive on dry paved roads. Especially on dry highway, never select the 4H or 4L(4WD).

Driving on snowy or icy roads

Select the 4H or 4L in accordance with the road conditions, and then gradually depress the accelerator pedal for a smooth start.

Driving on sandy or muddy roads

Select the 4H or 4L and then gradually depress the accelerator pedal for a smooth start. Keep the pressure on the accelerator pedal constant as possible, and drive at low speed.

Climbing sharp grades

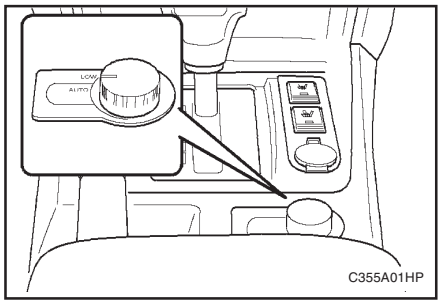
Select the 4L to maximize use the engine torque.

Descending sharp grades

Select 4L, use the engine brake and descend slowly.

C355A02HP-GAT

Full-time 4WD operation (If installed)



1. Knob position

This is used to set different positions.

AUTO Mode

Full power delivered to front and rear axles for increase traction. Use this mode for normal on-road operating conditions such as dry road surfaces, wet pavement, snow-covered roads and/or off-road.

LOW Mode

Full power to both axles, including a lower gear ratio for low-speed applications that require extra power such as dry road surfaces, wet pavement, snow-covered roads and/or off-road.
Especially when increased drive power is required.
"LOW" mode is not recommended on dry pavement.
The 4WD LOW indicator light (4WD LOW) will be turned on to remind you that you are in the LOW mode.

2. Transfer shift knob operation

AUTO → LOW

1. Stop the vehicle.
2. Depress the clutch pedal (Manual Transmission) or put the shift lever into "N(neutral)" position (Automatic Transmission)
3. Turn the transfer shift knob to "LOW" mode.

LOW → AUTO

1. Stop the vehicle.
2. Depress the clutch pedal (Manual Transmission) or put the shift lever into "N (neutral)" position (Automatic Transmission).
3. Turn the transfer shift knob to "AUTO" mode.

Driving 4WD Safely

(1) Be sure to wear the seat belt.

(2) Drive at lower speeds in strong crosswinds. Because of your vehicle's high center of gravity, its stability will be affected in crosswinds. Slower speeds ensure better vehicle control.

(3) Check the brake condition after driving in wet or muddy conditions. Press the brake several times as you move slowly until you feel normal braking forces return.

(4) Do not drive the vehicle through water. (i.e. streams, rivers, lakes, etc.)

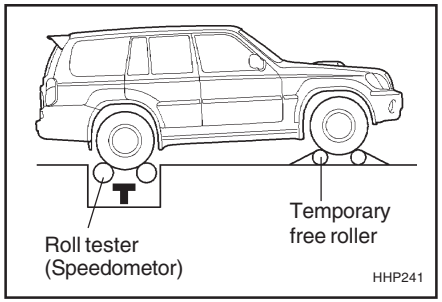
(5) The stopping distance of the full-time 4WD vehicle differs very little from that of the 2WD vehicle.
When driving on a snow-covered road or a slippery, muddy surface, make sure that you keep a sufficient distance between your vehicle and the one ahead of you.

(6) Since the driving torque is always applied to the 4 wheels, the performance of the full-time 4WD vehicle is greatly affected by the condition of the tires. Be sure to equip it with all four tires of the same size and type.
- When replacement of any of the tires or disc wheels is necessary, replace all of them.
- Rotate the tires and check the tire pressure at regular intervals.

(7) The full-time 4WD vehicle cannot be towed by an ordinary tow truck. Make sure that the vehicle is towed with its four wheels raised off the ground.

- If the vehicle is towed with its only two wheels raised off the ground, the 4WD system could be damaged.
- In unavoidable case, if the vehicle is being towed with all four wheels on the ground, it should be towed only forward direction with rope.
- While towing, check the following items.
  1. The ignition switch is in "ACC" or "ON".
  2. Place the shift lever in neutral (For Automatic Transmission, "N" position).
  3. Release the parking brake.

NOTE:
To avoid serious damage to your 4WD vehicle, limit towing to 15km/h (10 mph) and not for more than 1.5km (1 mile) at ANY TIME.



(8) For speedometer test or inspection/maintenance (I/M) program of full-time 4WD vehicle, use a four-wheel chassis dynamometer.

CAUTION:
Never engage the parking brake while performing these tests.

- In rare cases when it's unavoidable that a 4WD vehicle is to be inspected for speedometer test on 2WD roll tester, strictly follow the procedures next.
  1. Check the tire pressures recommended for your vehicle.
  2. Place the rear wheels on the roll tester for speedometer test as shown in the illustration.
  3. Release the parking brake.
  4. Place the front wheels on the temporary free roller as shown in the illustration.

WARNING:
Keep away from the front of the vehicle while inspecting. This is very dangerous as the vehicle can jump forward and cause serious injury or death.

(9) When using tire chains, always attach them to the rear wheels.
(10) If the front or rear wheels get stuck in the mud, do not spin them recklessly. The 4WD system could be damaged.

CAUTION:
- **While the full-time 4WD vehicle is being raised on a jack, never start the engine or cause the tires to rotate.**
  There is the danger that rotating tires touching the ground could cause the vehicle to go off the jack and to jump forward.
- **If one of the front or rear wheels begins to spin in mud, snow, etc., the vehicle can sometimes be driven out by depressing the accelerator pedal further; however, avoid running the engine continuously at high rpm because doing so could damage the 4WD system.**

WARNING:
- **Avoid high cornering speeds.**
- **Do not make quick steering wheel movements, such as sharp lane charges or fast, sharp turns.**
- **The risk of rollover is greatly increased if you lose control of your vehicle at highway speeds.**
- **In a collision crash, an unbelted person is significantly more likely to die than a person wear a seatbelt.**
- **Loss of control often occurs if two or more wheels drop off the roadway and the driver oversteers to reenter the roadway.**
- **In the event your vehicle leaves the roadway, do not steer sharply. Instead, slow down before pulling back into the travel lanes.**

D190A01O-GAT
LIMITED-SLIP DIFFERENTIAL (If installed)

A limited-slip differential, if equipped, is for the rear wheel differential only. The features of this limited-slip differential are described below:
Just as with a conventional differential, the wheel on one side is allowed to turn at a different speed from the wheel on the other side when the vehicle is cornering. The difference between the limited-slip differential and a conventional differential is that if the wheel on one side of the vehicle loses traction, a greater amount of torque is applied to the rear wheel on the other side to improve traction.

C130A01HP-GAT
GOOD BRAKING PRACTICES

WARNING:
Nothing should be carried on top of the cargo area cover behind the rear seat. If there were an accident or a sudden stop, such objects could move forward and cause damage to the vehicle or injure the occupants.

- After being parked, check to be sure the parking brake is not engaged and that the parking brake indicator light is out before driving away.
- Driving through water may get the brakes wet. They can also get wet when the car is washed. Wet brakes can be dangerous! Your car will not stop as quickly if the brakes are wet. Wet brakes cause the car to pull to one side. To dry the brakes, apply the brakes lightly until the braking action returns to normal, taking care to keep the car under control at all times. If the braking action does not return to normal, stop as soon as it is safe to do so and call your Hyundai dealer for assistance.
- Don't coast down hills with the car out of gear. This is extremely hazardous. Keep the car in gear at all times, use the brakes to slow down, then shift to a lower gear so that engine braking will help you maintain a safe speed.

- Don’t "ride" the brake pedal. Resting your foot on the brake pedal while driving can be dangerous because it can result in the brakes overheating and losing their effectiveness. It also increases the wear of the brake components.
- If a tire goes flat while you are driving, apply the brakes gently and keep the car pointed straight ahead while you slow down. When you are moving slowly enough for it to be safe to do so, pull off the road and stop in a safe place.
- If your car is equipped with an automatic transmission, don’t let your car creep forward. To avoid creeping forward, keep your foot firmly on the brake pedal when the car is stopped.
- Use caution when parking on a hill. Engage the parking brake and place the gear selector lever in "P" (automatic transmission) or in first or reverse gear (manual transmission). If your car is facing downhill, turn the front wheels into the curb to help keep the car from rolling. If your car is facing uphill, turn the front wheels away from the curb to help keep the car from rolling. If there is no curb or if it is required by other conditions to keep the car from rolling, block the wheels.
- Under some conditions your parking brake can freeze in the engaged position. This is most likely to happen when there is an accumulation of snow or ice around or near the rear brakes or if the brakes are wet. If there is a risk that the parking brake may freeze, apply it only temporarily while you put the gear selector lever in "P" (automatic) or in first or reverse gear (manual transmission) and block the rear wheels so the car cannot roll. Then release the parking brake.
- Do not hold the vehicle on the upgrade with the accelerator pedal. This can cause the transmission to overheat. Always use the brake pedal or parking brake.

C140A01A-AAT

DRIVING FOR ECONOMY

You can save fuel and get more miles from your car if you follow these suggestions:

- Drive smoothly. Accelerate at a moderate rate. Don't make "jack-rabbit" starts or full-throttle shifts and maintain a steady cruising speed. Don't race between stoplights. Try to adjust your speed to that of the other traffic so you don't have to change speeds unnecessarily. Avoid heavy traffic whenever possible. Always maintain a safe distance from other vehicles so you can avoid unnecessary braking. This also reduces brake wear.
- Drive at a moderate speed. The faster you drive, the more fuel your car uses. Driving at a moderate speed, especially on the highway, is one of the most effective ways to reduce fuel consumption.
- Don't "ride" the brake or clutch pedal. This can increase fuel consumption and also increase wear on these components. In addition, driving with your foot resting on the brake pedal may cause the brakes to overheat, which reduces their effectiveness and may lead to more serious consequences.
- Take care of your tires. Keep them inflated to the recommended pressure. Incorrect inflation, either too much or too little, results in unnecessary tire wear. Check the tire pressures at least once a month.
- Be sure that the wheels are aligned correctly. Improper alignment can result from hitting curbs or driving too fast over irregular surfaces. Poor alignment causes faster tire wear and may also result in other problems as well as greater fuel consumption.
- Keep your car in good condition. For better fuel economy and reduced maintenance costs, maintain your car in accordance with the maintenance schedule in Section 5. If you drive your car in severe conditions, more frequent maintenance is required (see Section 5 for details).
- Keep your car clean. For maximum service, your Hyundai should be kept clean and free of corrosive materials. It is especially important that mud, dirt, ice, etc. not be allowed to accumulate on the underside of the car. This extra weight can result in increased fuel consumption and also contribute to corrosion.
- Travel lightly. Don't carry unnecessary weight in your car. Weight reduces fuel economy.
- Don't let the engine idle longer than necessary. If you are waiting (and not in traffic), turn off your engine and restart only when you're ready to go.

- o Remember, your Hyundai does not require extended warm-up. As soon as the engine is running smoothly, you can drive away. In very cold weather, however, give your engine a slightly longer warm-up period.
- o Don't "lug" or "over-rev" the engine. Lugging is driving too slowly in too high a gear resulting in the engine bucking. If this happens, shift to a lower gear. Over-revving is racing the engine beyond its safe limit. This can be avoided by shifting at the recommended speeds.
- o Use your air conditioning sparingly. The air conditioning system is operated by engine power so your fuel economy is reduced when you use it.

C150A01A-AAT

SMOOTH CORNERING

Avoid braking or gear changing in corners, especially when roads are wet. Ideally, corners should always be taken under gentle acceleration. If you follow these suggestions, tire wear will be held to a minimum.

C160A01A-AAT

WINTER DRIVING

The more severe weather conditions of winter result in greater wear and other problems. To minimize the problems of winter driving, you should follow these suggestions:

C160B01A-GAT

Snowy or Icy Conditions

To drive your vehicle in deep snow, it may be necessary to use snow tires or to install tire chains on your tires. If snow tires are needed, it is necessary to select tires equivalent in size and type of the original equipment tires. Failure to do so may adversely affect the safety and handling of your car. Furthermore, speeding, rapid acceleration, sudden brake applications, and sharp turns are potentially very hazardous practices. During deceleration, use engine braking to the fullest extent. Sudden brake applications on snowy or icy roads may cause skids to occur. You need to keep sufficient distance between the vehicle in operation in front and your vehicle. Also, apply the brake gently. It should be noted that installing tire chains on the tire will provide a greater driving force, but will not prevent side skids.

NOTE:

Tire chains are not legal in all provinces. Check province laws before fitting tire chains.

C160C01A-AAT

Use High Quality Ethylene Glycol Coolant

Your Hyundai is delivered with high quality ethylene glycol coolant in the cooling system. It is the only type of coolant that should be used because it helps prevent corrosion in the cooling system, lubricates the water pump and prevents freezing. Be sure to replace or replenish your coolant in accordance with the maintenance schedule in Section 5. Before winter, have your coolant tested to assure that its freezing point is sufficient for the temperatures anticipated during the winter.

C160D01A-AAT

Check Battery and Cables

Winter puts additional burdens on the battery system. Visually inspect the battery and cables as described in Section 6. The level of charge in your battery can be checked by your Hyundai dealer or a service station.

C160E01A-AAT

Change to "Winter Weight" Oil if Necessary

In some climates it is recommended that a lower viscosity "winter weight" oil be used during cold weather. See Section 9 for recommendations. If you aren't sure what weight oil you should use, consult your Hyundai dealer.

C160F01A-AAT

Check Spark Plugs and Ignition System

Inspect your spark plugs as described in Section 6 and replace them if necessary. Also check all ignition wiring and components to be sure they are not cracked, worn or damaged in any way.

C160G02A-GAT

To Keep Locks from Freezing

To keep the locks from freezing, squirt an approved de-icer fluid or glycerine into the key opening. If a lock is covered with ice, squirt it with an approved de-icing fluid to remove the ice. If the lock is frozen internally, you may be able to thaw it out by using a heated key. Handle the heated key with care to avoid injury.

NOTE:

The proper temperature for using the immobilizer key is from -40°C (-40°F) to 80°C (176°F). If you heat the immobilizer key over 80°C (176°F) to open the frozen lock, it may cause damage to the transponder in its head.

C160H01A-AAT

Use Approved Anti-Freeze in Window Washer System

To keep the water in the window washer system from freezing, add an approved anti-freeze solution in accordance with instructions on the container. Window washer anti-freeze is available from Hyundai dealers and most auto parts outlets. Do not use engine coolant or other types of anti-freeze as these may damage the finish.

C160I01HP-GAT

Don't Let Your Parking Brake Freeze

Under some conditions your parking brake can freeze in the engaged position. This is most likely to happen when there is an accumulation of snow or ice around or near the rear brakes or if the brakes are wet. If there is a risk the parking brake may freeze, apply it only temporarily while you put the gear selector lever in "P" (automatic) or in first or reverse gear (manual transmission) and block the rear wheels so the car cannot roll. Then release the parking brake.

C160J01A-AAT

Don't Let Ice and Snow Accumulate Underneath

Under some conditions, snow and ice can build up under the fenders and interfere with the steering. When driving in severe winter conditions where this may happen, you should periodically check underneath the car to be sure the movement of the front wheels and the steering components is not obstructed.

C160K01A-AAT

Carry Emergency Equipment

Depending on the severity of the weather where you drive your car, you should carry appropriate emergency equipment. Some of the items you may want to carry include tire chains, tow straps or chains, flashlight, emergency flares, sand, a shovel, jumper cables, a window scraper, gloves, ground cloth, coveralls, a blanket, etc.

C170A01A-AAT

HIGHER SPEED MOTORING

Pre-Trip Inspections

1. Tires:
Adjust the tire inflation pressures to specification. Low tire inflation pressures will result in overheating and possible failure of the tires.
Avoid using worn or damaged tires which may result in reduced traction or tire failure.

NOTE:

Never exceed the maximum tire inflation pressure shown on the tires.

2. Fuel, engine coolant and engine oil:
High speed travel consumes more fuel than urban motoring. Do not forget to check both engine coolant and engine oil.

3. Drive belt:
A loose or damaged drive belt may result in overheating of the engine.

C180A01A-AAT

USE OF LIGHTS

Check your lights regularly for correct operation and always keep them clean. When driving during the day in conditions of poor visibility, it is helpful to drive with headlights on low beam. This enables you to be seen as well as to see.

C190A01HP-GAT

TRAILER OR VEHICLE TOWING

If you are considering towing with your car, you should first check with your Province Department of Motor Vehicles to determine their legal requirements.
Since laws vary from province to province the requirements for towing trailers, cars, or other types of vehicles or apparatus may differ. Ask your Hyundai dealer for further details before towing.

CAUTION:

Do not do any towing with your car during its first 2,000 km (1,200 miles) in order to allow the engine to properly break in. Failure to heed this caution may result in serious engine or transmission damage.

C190B01S-AAT

Trailer Hitches

Select the proper hitch and ball combination, making sure that it's location is compatible with that of the trailer or vehicle being towed.
Use a quality non-equalizing hitch which distributes the tongue load uniformly throughout the chassis.

The hitch should be bolted securely to the car and installed by a qualified technician. DO NOT USE A HITCH DESIGNED FOR TEMPORARY INSTALLATION AND NEVER USE ONE THAT ATTACHES ONLY TO THE BUMPER.

C190C02Y-GAT

Trailer Brakes

If your trailer is equipped with a braking system, make sure it conforms to federal and/or local regulations and that it is properly installed and operating correctly.

NOTE:

If you tow a trailer or vehicle, your car will require more frequent maintenance due to the additional load. See "Maintenance Under Severe Usage Conditions" on page 5-6.

CAUTION:

- **Never connect a trailer brake system directly to the vehicle brake system.**
- **When towing a trailer on steep grades (in excess of 12%) pay close attention to the engine coolant temperature gauge to ensure the engine does not overheat. If the needle of the coolant temperature gauge moves across the dial towards "H" (HOT), pull over and stop as soon as it is safe to do so, and allow the engine to idle until it cools down. You may proceed once the engine has cooled sufficiently.**

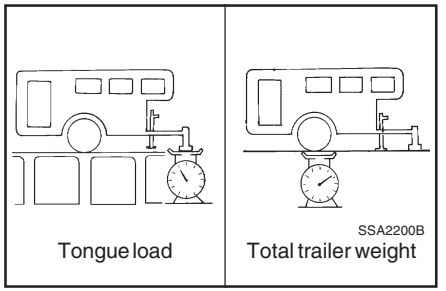
C190D01A-GAT

Safety Chains

Should the hitch connection between your car and the trailer or vehicle you are towing fail, the trailer or vehicle could wander dangerously across other lanes of traffic and ultimately collide with another vehicle. To eliminate this potentially dangerous situation, safety chains, attached between your car and the trailer or towed vehicle, are required in most provinces.

C190E02HP-GAT

Trailer Weight Limit

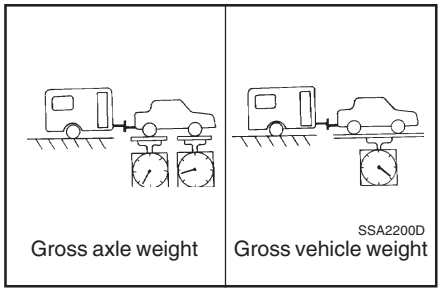


Tongue loads can be increased or decreased by re-distributing the load in the trailer.
This can be verified by checking the total weight of the loaded trailer and then checking the load on the tongue.

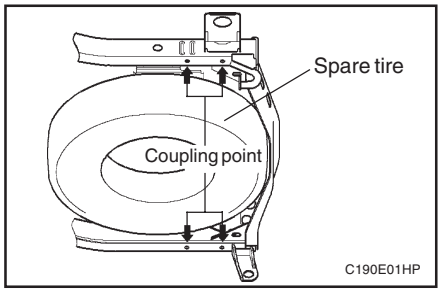
NOTE:

1. **Never load the trailer with more weight in the back than in the front. About 60% of the trailer load should be in the front half on the trailer and the remaining 40% in the rear.**
2. **The total gross vehicle weight with trailer must not exceed the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR) shown on the vehicle identification plate (see page 8-1). The total gross vehicle weight is the combined weight of the vehicle, driver, all passengers and their luggage, cargo, hitch, trailer tongue load and other optional equipment.**
3. **The front or rear mission weight must not exceed the Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR) shown on the vehicle identification plate (see page 8-1). It is possible that your towing package does not exceed the GVWR but exceeds the GAWR. Improper trailer loading and/or too much luggage in the cargo area can overload the rear mission. Redistribute the load and check the mission weight again.**
4. **The maximum permissible static vertical load on the coupling device is :**

Engine		Load
2.5		75 kg
2.9, 3.5	E.C only	115 kg
	Except E.C	75 kg



5. **The maximum permissible overhang of the coupling point is 1,230 mm.**



CAUTION:

The following specifications are recommended when towing a trailer. The loaded trailer weight cannot safely exceed the values in the following chart.

kg (Lbs.)

	Maximum Towable Weight			
	Engine		Trailer	Tongue
With Brake	2.5		1800(3,968)	75 (165)
	2.9	E.C only	2800(6,173)	115(254)
	3.5	Except E.C	1800(3,968)	75(165)
Without Brake	2.5, 2.9, 3.5		700(1,543)	28(61.7)

WARNING:

- **Improperly loading your car and trailer can seriously affect its steering and braking performance causing a crash which could cause injury or death.**
- **When a trailer is used, the operation speed is restricted to 100km/h or less.**

C190F01HP-GAT

Trailer or Vehicle Towing Tips

1. Before towing, check hitch and safety chain connections as well as proper operation of the trailer running lights, brake lights, and turn signals.
2. Always drive your vehicle at a moderate speed (Less than 100 km/h).
3. Trailer towing requires more fuel than normal conditions.
4. To maintain engine braking efficiency, do not tow a trailer with transmission in fifth gear (manual transmission) or an overdrive gear (automatic transmission).

5. Always secure items in the trailer to prevent load shift while driving.
6. Check the condition and air pressure of all tires on the trailer and your car. Low tire pressure can seriously affect the handling. Also check the spare tire.
7. The vehicle/trailer combination is more affected by crosswind and buffeting. When being passed by a large vehicle, keep a constant speed and steer straight ahead. If there is too much wind buffeting slow down to get out of the other vehicle's air turbulence.
8. When parking your car and trailer, especially on a hill, be sure to follow all the normal precautions. Turn your front wheel into the curb, set the parking brake firmly, and put the transmission in 1st or Reverse (manual) or Park (automatic). In addition, place wheel chocks at each of the trailer's tires.
9. If the trailer has electric brakes, start your vehicle and trailer moving, and then apply the trailer brake controller by hand to be sure the brakes are working. This lets you check your electrical connection at the same time.
10. During your trip, check occasionally to be sure that the load is secure, and that the lights and any trailer brakes are still working.
11. Avoid jerky starts, sudden acceleration or sudden stops.
12. Avoid sharp turns and rapid lane changes.
13. Avoid holding the brake pedal down too long or too frequently. This could cause the brakes to overheat, resulting in reduced braking efficiency.
14. When going down a hill, shift into a lower gear and use the engine braking effect. When ascending a long grade, downshift the transmission to a lower gear and reduce speed to reduce chances of engine overloading and/or overheating.
15. If you have to stop while going uphill, do not hold the vehicle in place by pressing on the accelerator. This can cause the automatic transmission to overheat. Use the parking brake or footbrake.

NOTE:

When towing, check transmission fluid more frequently.

CAUTION:

If overheating should occur when towing, (temperature gauge reads near red zone), taking the following action may reduce or eliminate the problem.

1. **Turn off the air conditioner.**
2. **Reduce highway speed.**
3. **Select a lower gear when going uphill.**
4. **While in stop and go traffic, place the gear selector in park or neutral and idle the engine at a higher speed.**

3. WHAT TO DO IN AN EMERGENCY

D010A01A-AAT

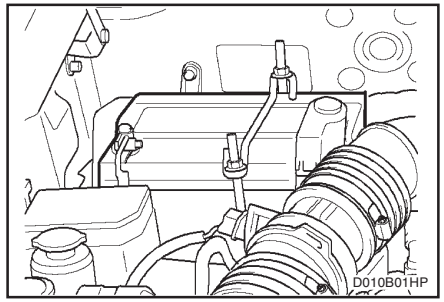
IF THE ENGINE WILL NOT START

WARNING:

If the engine will not start, do not push or pull the car to start it. This could result in a collision or cause other damage. In addition, push or pull starting may cause the catalytic converter to be overloaded and create a fire hazard.

D010B01HP-GAT

If Engine Doesn't Turn Over or Turns Over Slowly



1. If your car has an automatic transmission, be sure the gear selector lever is in "N" or "P" and the emergency brake is set.
2. Check the battery connections to be sure they are clean and tight.
3. Turn on the interior light. If the light dims or goes out when you operate the starter, the battery is discharged.
4. Check the starter connections to be sure they are securely tightened.
5. Do not push or pull the vehicle to start it. See instructions for "Jump Starting".

D010C01Y-AAT

If Engine Turns Over Normally but Does Not Start

1. Check fuel level.
2. With the key in the "OFF" position, check all connectors at ignition coils and spark plugs. Reconnect any that may be disconnected or loose.
3. Check the fuel line in the engine room.
4. If engine still refuses to start, call a Hyundai dealer or seek other qualified assistance.

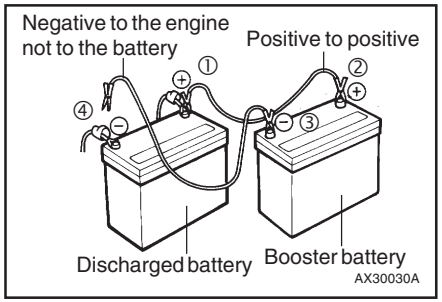
D010D01A-AAT

If Engine Stalls While Driving

1. Reduce your speed gradually, keeping a straight line. Move cautiously off the road to a safe place.
2. Turn on your emergency flashers.
3. Try to start the engine again. If your vehicle will not start, contact a Hyundai dealer or seek other qualified assistance.

D020A02A-AAT

JUMP STARTING



WARNING:

The gas produced by the battery during the jump-start operation is highly explosive. If these instructions are not followed exactly, serious personal injury and damage to the vehicle may occur! If you are not sure how to follow this procedure, seek qualified assistance. Automobile batteries contain sulfuric acid. This is poisonous and highly corrosive. When jump starting, wear protective glasses and be careful not to get acid on yourself, your clothing or on the car.

- If you should accidentally get acid on your skin or in your eyes, immediately remove any contaminated clothing and flush the area with clear water for at least 15 minutes. Then promptly obtain medical attention. If you must be transported to an emergency facility, con-

tinue to apply water to the affected area with a sponge or cloth.
- o The gas produced by the battery during the jump-start operation is highly explosive. Do not smoke or allow a spark or an open flame in the vicinity.
- o The battery being used to provide the jump start must be 12-volt. If you cannot determine that it is a 12-volt battery, do not attempt to use it for the jump start.
- o To jump start a car with a discharged battery, follow this procedure exactly:

1. If the booster battery is installed in another vehicle, be sure the two vehicles are not touching.
2. Turn off all unnecessary lights and accessories in both vehicles.
3. Attach the clamps of the jumper cable in the exact location shown in the illustration. First, attach one clamp of the jumper cable to the positive (+) post or cable of the discharged battery. Then attach the other end of the same cable to the positive (+) post or cable of the booster battery. Next, using the other cable, attach one clamp to the negative (-) post or cable of the booster battery. Then attach the other end of that cable to a solid metal part of the engine away from the battery. Do not connect the cable to any moving part.
4. Start the engine in the car with the booster battery and let it run for a few minutes. This will help to assure that the booster battery is fully charged. During the jumping operation, run the engine in this vehicle at about 2000 rpm.
5. Start the engine in the car with the discharged battery using the normal starting procedure. After the engine starts, leave the jumper cables connected and let the engine run at fast idle or about 2000 rpm for several minutes.
6. Carefully remove the jumper cables in the reverse order of attachment.

If you do not know why your battery became discharged (because the lights were left on, etc.), have the charging system checked by your Hyundai dealer.

D030A01HP-AAT

IF THE ENGINE OVERHEATS

If your temperature gauge indicates overheating, you experience a loss of power, or hear loud pinging or knocking, the engine is probably too hot. If this happens to you, you should:

1. Pull off the road and stop as soon as it is safe to do so.
2. Place the gear selector lever in "P" (automatic), or neutral (manual transmission) and set the parking brake. If the air conditioning is on, turn it off.
3. If engine coolant is running out under the car or steam is coming out from under the hood, stop the engine. Do not open the hood until the engine coolant has stopped running or the steaming has stopped. If there is no visible loss of coolant and no steam, leave the engine running and check to be sure the engine cooling fan is operating. If the fan is not running, turn the engine off.
4. Check to see if the water pump drive belt is missing. If it is not missing, check to see that it is tight. If the drive belt seems to be satisfactory, check for engine coolant leaking from the radiator, hoses or under the car. (If the air conditioning had been in use, it is normal for cold water to be draining from it when you stop).

WARNING:
While the engine is running, keep hands and clothing away from moving parts such as the fan and drive belts to prevent injury.

5. If the water pump drive belt is broken or coolant is leaking out, stop the engine immediately and call the nearest Hyundai dealer for assistance.

WARNING:
Do not remove the radiator cap when the engine is hot. This can allow coolant to be blown out of the opening and cause serious burns.

6. If you cannot find the cause of the overheating, wait until the engine temperature has returned to normal. Then, if coolant has been lost, carefully add coolant to the reservoir (Page 6-8) to bring the fluid level in the reservoir up to the halfway mark.

7. Proceed with caution, keeping alert for further signs of overheating. If overheating happens again, call a Hyundai dealer for assistance.

CAUTION:
Serious loss of coolant indicates there is a leak in the cooling system and this should be checked as soon as possible by a Hyundai dealer.

D040A01HP-GAT

SPARE TIRE

The following instructions for the FULL SIZE spare tire should be observed:
Check inflation pressure as soon as possible after installing the spare tire, and adjust to the specified pressure. The tire pressure should be periodically checked and maintained at the specified pressure while the tire is stored.

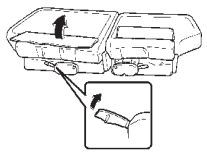
Spare Tire Pressure

Tire Size	Full Size
Inflation Pressure	200 kPa (29 psi)

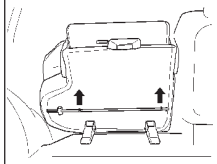
D040B03HP-GAT

Handling the Spare Tire

The second seat

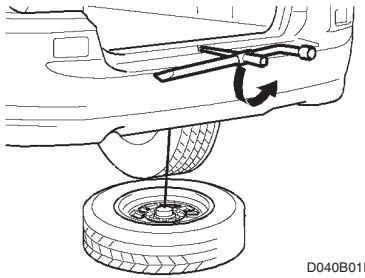


B090B02HP



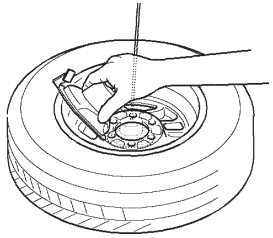
D060B01HP

1. Obtain the spare wheel rod (Jack handle) after folding up the seat cushion of the second seat .
   To fold up the seat cushion, refer to the page 1-15.



D040B01HP

2. Insert the spare wheel rod into the hole in the upper pad of the rear bumper.
3. Connect the wheel nut wrench to the spare wheel rod.
4. Turn the wheel nut wrench counterclockwise and the spare tire will lower.



D040B02HP

5. Remove the lift plate from the center of the spare tire after the spare tire is lowered completely.

Installation is the reverse order of removal.

CAUTION:
When installing, turn the wheel nut wrench clockwise till you hear the crackle once or twice(Tightening torque : 3.87 kg m). And make sure the spare tire is secured in the proper location.

D050A01HP-GAT

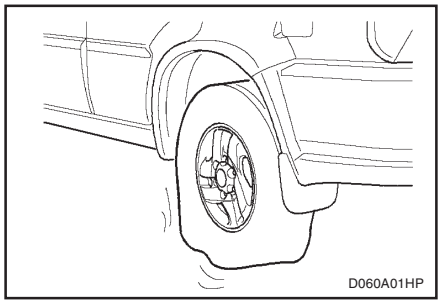
IF YOU HAVE A FLAT TIRE

If a tire goes flat while you are driving:

1. Take your foot off the accelerator pedal and let the car slow down while driving straight ahead. Do not apply the brakes immediately or attempt to pull off the road as this may cause a loss of control. When the car has slowed to such a speed that it is safe to do so, brake carefully and pull off the road. Drive off the road as far as possible and park on firm, level ground. If you are on a divided highway, do not park in the median area between the two traffic lanes.
2. When the car is stopped, turn on your emergency hazard flashers, set the parking brake and put the transmission in "P" (automatic transmission) or reverse (manual transmission).
3. Have all passengers get out of the car. Be sure they all get out on the side of the car that is away from traffic.
4. Change the tire according to the instructions provided as following.

D060A01HP-GAT

CHANGING A FLAT TIRE

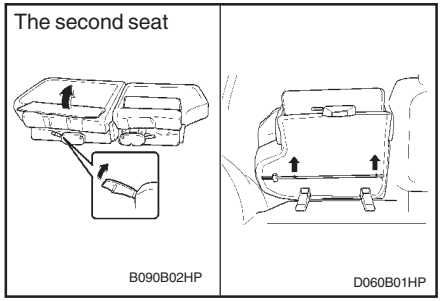


D060A01HP

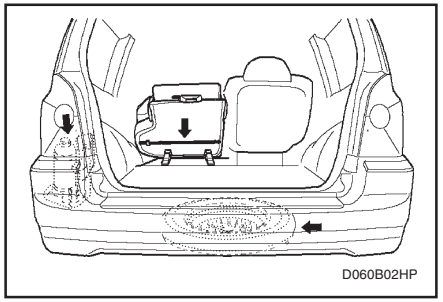
The procedure described on the following pages can be used to rotate tires as well as to change a flat tire. When preparing to change a flat tire, check to be sure the gear selector lever is in "P" (automatic transmission) or reverse gear (manual transmission) and that the parking brake is set, then:

D060B01HP-GAT

1. Obtain Spare Tire and Tool



o Obtain the spare wheel rod (Jack handle) after folding up the seat cushion of the second seat .
To fold up the seat cushion, refer to the page 1-15.



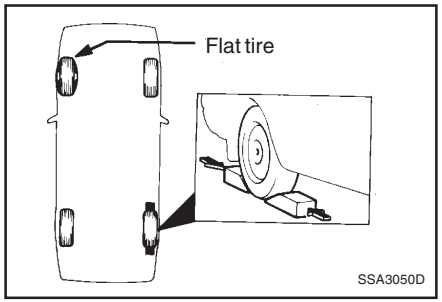
D060B02HP

o Remove the spare tire and take out the jack and tool bag.

NOTE:
The spare tire is located underneath the car.

D060C01A-AAT

2. Block the Wheel



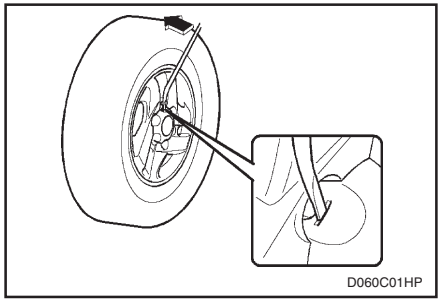
Block the wheel that is diagonally opposite from the flat to keep the vehicle from rolling when the car is raised on the jack.

D065C01HP-GAT

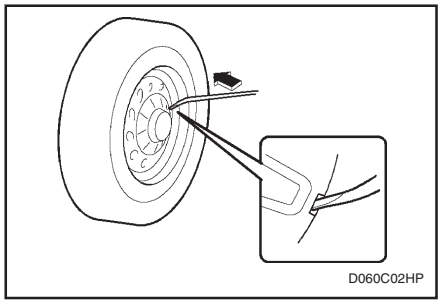
3. Removing the Spare Wheel Cap

Pry off the wheel cap, using the bar as shown in the illustration.

o Alloy Wheel Cap type

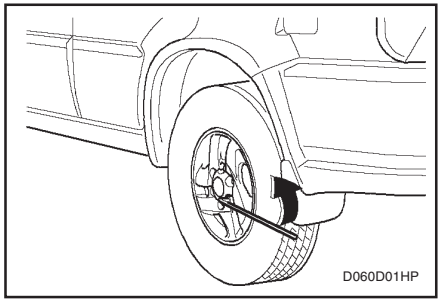


o Steel Wheel Cap type



D060D01A-AAT

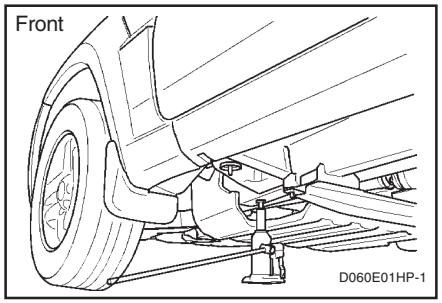
4. Loosen Wheel Nuts

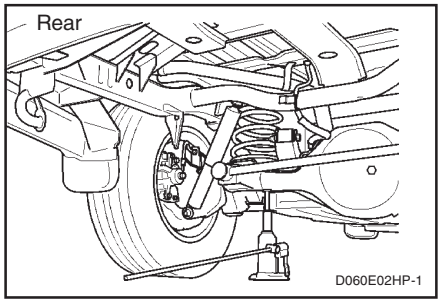


The wheel nuts should be loosened slightly before raising the car. To loosen the nuts, turn the wrench handle counterclockwise. When doing this, be sure that the socket is seated completely over the nut so it cannot slip off. For maximum leverage, position the wrench so the handle is to the right as shown in the illustration. Then, while holding the wrench near the end of the handle, pull up on it with steady pressure. Do not remove the nuts at this time. Just loosen them about one-half turn.

D060E01A-AAT

5. Put the Jack in Place

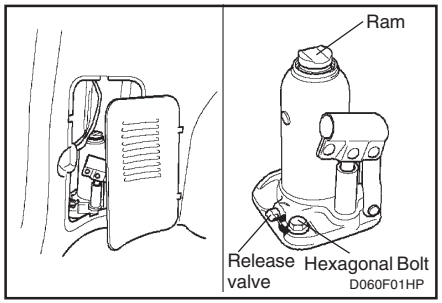




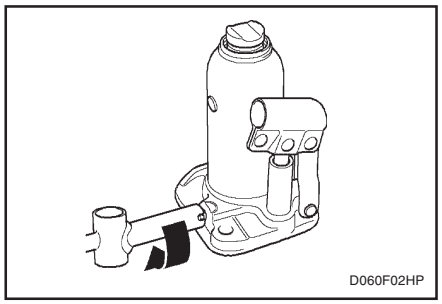
The base of the jack should be placed on firm, level ground. The jack should be positioned as shown in the illustration.

D060F02HP-GAT

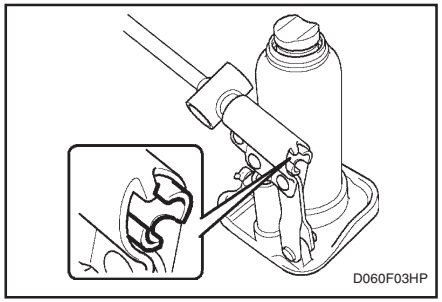
6. Raising the Car



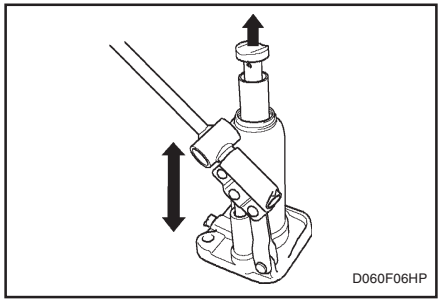
- o Open the lid at the left corner of the luggage compartment.
- o Loosen the hexagonal bolt, and then take out the jack.



Using the jack handle, turn the release valve clockwise until it reaches a stop.

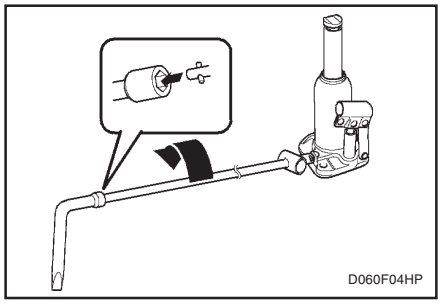


Then fit the jack handle into the holder, and align the groove of the jack handle with the notch of the holder.

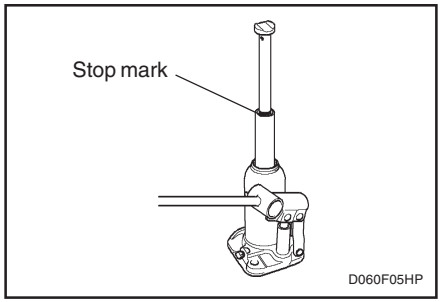


Move the jack handle up and down to raise the ram until just before the jack contacts the jacking point of the car.

Position the jack with the jack handle. Position it only at the specified points indicated in the "Put the Jack in Place".
Use of the jack at other points could damage the car.
Moving the jack handle up and down to raise the ram.
As the jack begins to raise the vehicle, double check that it is properly positioned and will not slip.
Raise the car high enough so that the fully inflated spare tire can be installed. To do this, you will need more ground clearance than is required to remove the flat tire.
Using the jack handle, turn the release valve counterclockwise slow to lower the ram, and then take out the jack.


D060F04HP

When the release valve is difficult to turn by jack handle, connect the wheel nut wrench to the jack handle.



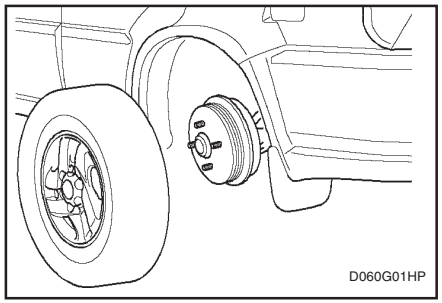
D060F05HP

CAUTION:
(1) Use only the jack included with the vehicle and use it only for changing a wheel and for installing tire chains.
(2) Position the jack on a hard, level surface.
(3) If the release valve is loosened by turning it 2 or more times in the counterclockwise direction, the jack's oil will leak and the jack cannot be used.
(4) This jack is hydraulic, and the ram is a two stage type. When both rams are raised and the stop mark of the upper ram becomes visible, stop jacking immediately.

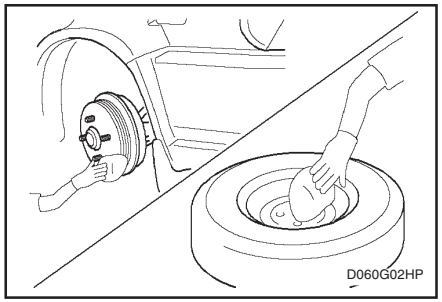
WARNING:
Do not get under the car when it is supported by the jack! This is very dangerous as the vehicle could fall and cause serious injury or death. No one should stay in the car while the jack is being used.

D060G01A-AAT

7. Changing Wheels


D060G01HP

Use the wrench to loosen the wheel nuts, then remove them with your fingers. Remove the wheel cover (if installed) from the wheel and slide the wheel off the studs and lay it flat so it cannot roll away. To put the wheel on the hub, pick up the spare tire, line up the holes with the studs and slide the wheel onto them. If this is difficult, tip the wheel slightly and get the top hole in the wheel lined up with the top stud. Then jiggle the wheel back and forth until the wheel can be slid over the other studs.

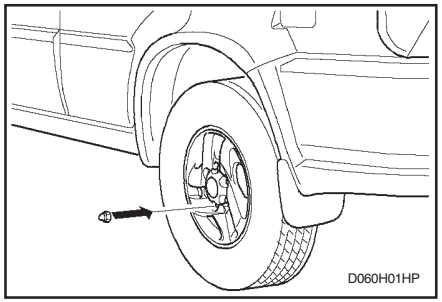


WARNING:
Wheel covers may have sharp edges. Handle them carefully to avoid possible severe injury.

Before putting the wheel into place, be sure that there is nothing on the hub or wheel (such as mud, tar, gravel, etc.) that interferes with the wheel from fitting solidly against the hub. If there is, remove it. If there is not good contact on the mounting surface between the wheel and hub, the wheel nuts could come loose and cause the loss of a wheel. Loss of a wheel may result in loss of control of the vehicle. This may cause serious injury or death.

D060H01A-AAT

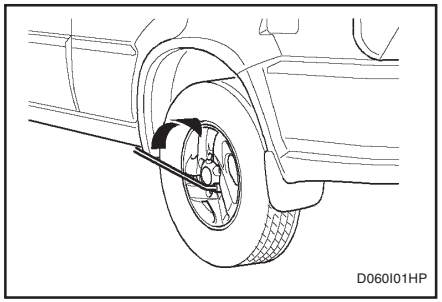
8. Reinstall Wheel Nuts



To reinstall the wheel cover, hold it on the wheel and put the wheel nuts on the studs and tighten them finger tight. The nuts should be installed with their small diameter ends directed inward. Jiggle the tire to be sure it is completely seated, then tighten the nuts with your fingers again.

D060I01HP-GAT

9. Lower Vehicle and Tighten Nuts

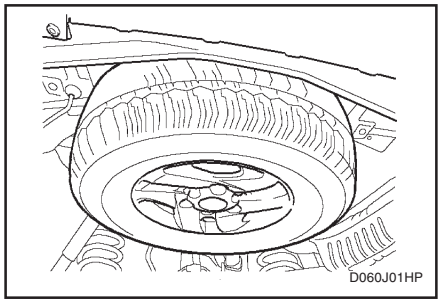


Lower the car to the ground by moving the jack handle up and down. Then position the wrench as shown in the drawing and tighten the wheel nuts. Be sure the socket is seated completely over the nut. Do not stand on the wrench handle or use an extension pipe over the wrench handle. Go around the wheel tightening every other nut until they are all tight. Then double-check each nut for tightness. After changing wheels, have a technician tighten the wheel nuts to their proper torque as soon as possible.

Wheel nut tightening torque:
Steel wheel & aluminium alloy wheel:
900-1,100 kg.cm (65-80 lb.ft)

D060J01A-AAT

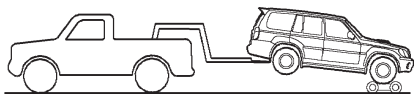
AFTER CHANGING WHEELS



If you have a tire gauge, remove the valve cap and check the air pressure. If the pressure is lower than recommended, drive slowly to the nearest service station and inflate to the correct pressure. If it is too high, adjust it until it is correct. Always reinstall the valve cap after checking or adjusting tire pressure. If the cap is not replaced, air may leak from the tire. If you lose a valve cap, buy another and install it as soon as possible.
After you have changed wheels, always secure the flat tire in its place and return the jack, jack handle, and tools to their proper storage locations.

D080A02A-GAT

IF YOUR CAR MUST BE TOWED



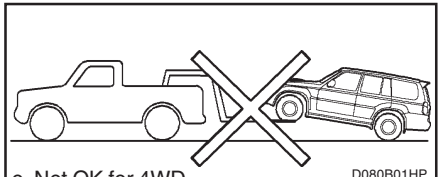
- o OK for 4WD
- o OK for Automatic or Manual Transmission Equipped Vehicle

CAUTION:
Your car can be damaged if towed incorrectly!

If your car has to be towed, it should be done by your Hyundai dealer or a commercial tow truck service. This will help assure that your car is not damaged in towing. Also, professionals are generally aware of local laws governing towing. In any case, rather than risk damage to your car, it is suggested that you show this information to the tow truck operator. Be sure that a safety chain system is used and that all local laws are observed.

D080B01HP-GAT

Towing a Car With Manual Transmission



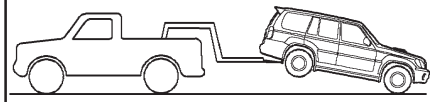
- o Not OK for 4WD (OK for Part Time 4WD in 2H Position)
- o Not OK for Automatic Transmission Equipped Vehicle
- o OK for Manual Transmission

- o Be sure that the ignition key is in the "ACC" position. This is necessary to prevent damage to the steering lock mechanism, which is not designed to hold the front wheels straight while the car is being towed.
- o If any of the loaded wheels or suspension components are damaged, a towing dolly must be used.

CAUTION:
Full time 4 Wheel Drive cannot be towed with a tow truck.
It must be towed by lifting all 4 wheels.

D080C01HP-GAT

Towing A Car With Automatic Transmission



D080C01HP

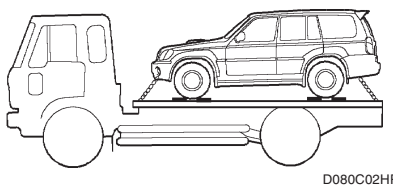
- o Not OK for 4WD
  (OK for Part Time 4WD in 2H Position)
- o OK for Automatic or Manual Transmission Equipped Vehicle with No Damage

CAUTION:

A car with an automatic transmission should never be towed from the front with the rear wheels on the ground. This can cause serious damage to the transmission. If the car must be towed from the front, a towing dolly must be used under the rear wheels.

- o If the car is being towed with all four wheels on the ground, it can be towed only from the front. Be sure that the transmission is in neutral. Do not tow at speeds greater than 50 km/h (30 mph) and for more than 25 km (15 miles).

Be sure the steering is unlocked by placing the key in the "ACC" position. A driver must be in the towed vehicle to operate the steering and brakes.



D080C02HP

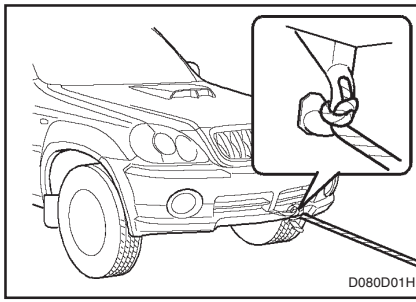
- o OK for 4WD
- o OK for Automatic or Manual Transmission Equipped Vehicle

NOTE:

Before towing, check the level of the transmission fluid. If it is below the "HOT" range on the dipstick, add fluid. If you cannot add fluid, a towing dolly must be used.

D080D01O-GAT

Emergency Towing



D080D01HP

For emergency towing when no commercial tow vehicle is available, attach a tow cable, chain or strap to one of the tie-down hooks under the front of your car. Be very careful when attempting this procedure when the vehicle is on any unpaved surface to avoid damage to your vehicle.
Nor should towing be attempted if the wheels, drive train, axles, steering or brakes are damaged. Before towing, be sure the transmission is in neutral and the key is in "ACC" (with the engine off) or in the "ON" position (with the engine running). A driver must be in the towed car to steer it and operate the brakes.

NOTE:

To avoid serious damage to your 4WD vehicle, limit the towing to 15 km/h (10 mph) and not for more than 1.5 km (1 mile) at ANY TIME.

D120A01A-GAT

IF YOU LOSE YOUR KEYS

If you lose your keys, many Hyundai dealers can make you a new key if you have your key number. If you lock the keys inside your car and you cannot obtain a new key, many Hyundai dealers can use special tools to open the door for you. Information about the key of immobilizer system (if installed) will be found on page 1-2.

4. CORROSION PREVENTION & APPEARANCE CARE

E010A01A-AAT

CORROSION PROTECTION

Protecting Your Hyundai from Corrosion

By using the most advanced design and construction practices to combat corrosion, Hyundai produces cars of the highest quality, However, this is only part of the job. To achieve the long-term corrosion resistance your Hyundai can deliver, the owner's cooperation and assistance is also required.

E010B01A-AAT

Common Causes of Corrosion

The most common causes of corrosion on your car are:

- o Road salt, dirt and moisture that is allowed to accumulate underneath the car.
- o Removal of paint or protective coatings by stones, gravel, abrasion or minor scrapes and dents which leave unprotected metal exposed to corrosion.

E010C01A-AAT

High-Corrosion Areas

If you live in an area where your car is regularly exposed to corrosive materials, corrosion protection is particularly important. Some of the common causes of accelerated corrosion are road salts, dust control chemicals, ocean air and industrial pollution.

E010D01A-AAT

Moisture Breeds Corrosion

Moisture creates the conditions in which corrosion is most likely to occur. For example, corrosion is accelerated by high humidity, particularly when temperatures are just above freezing. In such conditions, the corrosive material is kept in contact with the car surfaces by moisture that is slow to evaporate.

Mud is particularly corrosive because it is slow to dry and holds moisture in contact with the vehicle. Although the mud appears to be dry, it can still retain the moisture and promote corrosion.

High temperatures can also accelerate corrosion of parts that are not properly ventilated so the moisture can be dispersed. For all these reasons, it is particularly important to keep your car clean and free of mud or accumulations of other materials. This applies not only to the visible surfaces but particularly to the underside of the car.

E020A01A-AAT

TO HELP PREVENT CORROSION

You can help prevent corrosion from getting started by observing the following:

E020B01A-AAT

Keep Your Car Clean

The best way to prevent corrosion is to keep your car clean and free of corrosive materials. Attention to the underside of the car is particularly important.

- o If you live in a high-corrosion area — where road salts are used, near the ocean, areas with industrial pollution, acid rain, etc.—, you should take extra care to prevent corrosion. In winter, hose off the underside of your car at least once a month and be sure to clean the underside thoroughly when winter is over.
- o When cleaning underneath the car, give particular attention to the components under the fenders and other areas that are hidden from view. Do a thorough job; just dampening the accumulated mud rather than washing it away will accelerate corrosion rather than prevent it. Water under high pressure and steam are particularly effective in removing accumulated mud and corrosive materials.
- o When cleaning lower door panels, rocker panels and frame members, be sure that drain holes are kept open so that moisture can escape and not be trapped inside to accelerate corrosion.

E020C01A-AAT

Keep Your Garage Dry

Don't park your car in a damp, poorly ventilated garage. This creates a favorable environment for corrosion. This is particularly true if you wash your car in the garage or drive it into the garage when it is still wet or covered with snow, ice or mud. Even a heated garage can contribute to corrosion unless it is well ventilated so moisture is dispersed.

E020D01A-AAT

Keep Paint and Trim in Good Condition

Scratches or chips in the finish should be covered with "touch-up" paint as soon as possible to reduce the possibility of corrosion. If bare metal is showing through, the attention of a qualified body and paint shop is recommended.

E020E01A-AAT

Don't Neglect the Interior

Moisture can collect under the floor mats and carpeting to cause corrosion. Check under the mats periodically to be sure the carpeting is dry. Use particular care if you carry fertilizers, cleaning materials or chemicals in the car.
These should be carried only in proper containers and any spills or leaks should be cleaned up, flushed with clear water and thoroughly dried.

E030A01A-AAT

WASHING AND WAXING

Washing Your Hyundai

Never wash your car when the surface is hot from being in the sun. Always wash your car in the shade.

Wash your car frequently. Dirt is abrasive and can scratch the paint if it is not removed. Air pollution or acid rain may damage the paint and trim through chemical action if pollutants are allowed to remain in contact with the surface. If you live near the ocean or in an area where road salts or dust control chemicals are used, you should pay particular attention to the underside of the car. Start by rinsing the car to remove dust and loose dirt. In winter, or if you have driven through mud or muddy water, be sure to thoroughly clean the underside as well. Use a hard direct stream of water to remove accumulations of mud or corrosive materials. Use a good quality car-washing solution and follow the manufacturer's directions on the package. These are available at your Hyundai dealer or auto parts outlet. Don't use strong household detergents, gasoline, strong solvents or abrasive cleaning powders as these may damage the finish.
Use a clean sponge or cloth, rinse it frequently and don't damage the finish by rubbing too hard. For stubborn spots, dampen them frequently and remove them a little at a time.
To clean whitewall tires, use a stiff brush or soapy steel-wool scouring pad.

To clean plastic wheel covers, use a clean sponge or soft cloth and water.

To clean cast aluminum alloy wheels, use a mild soap or neutral detergent. Do not use abrasive cleaners. Protect the bare-metal surfaces by cleaning, polishing and waxing. Because aluminum is subject to corrosion, be sure to give aluminum alloy wheels special attention in winter. If you drive on salted roads, clean the wheels thoroughly afterwards.

After washing, be sure to rinse thoroughly. If soapy water dries on the finish, streaking will result.

When the weather is warm and the humidity low, you may find it necessary to rinse each section immediately after washing to avoid streaking.

After rinsing, dry the car using a damp chamois or soft, absorbent cloth. The reason for drying the car is to remove water from the car so it will dry without water spots. Don't rub, this can damage the finish.

If you find any nicks or scratches in the paint, use touch-up paint to cover them to prevent corrosion. To protect the paintwork of the car against corrosion, you must clean your Hyundai (at least once a month). Give special attention to the removal of salt, mud and other substances on the underside of the splashboards of the car. Make sure that the outlets and the underside of the doors are open. Paint damage can be caused by small accumulation of tar, industrial precipita-

tion, tree resin, insects and bird droppings, when not removed immediately. If water alone is not strong enough to remove the accumulated dirt, use a mild car washing solution. Be sure to rinse the surface after washing to remove the solution. Never allow the solution to dry on the painted surfaces.

E030B01A-AAT

Spot Cleaning

Don't use gasoline, strong solvents or corrosive cleaning agents. These can damage the finish of the car. To remove road tar, use turpentine on a clean, soft cloth or commercially available bug and tar remover. Be gentle.
To remove dead insects or tree sap, use warm water and mild soap or car-washing solution. Soak the spot and rub gently. If the paint has lost its luster, use a commercial car-cleaning polish.

E030C01A-AAT

Polishing and Waxing

Always wash and dry the car before polishing or waxing or using a combination cleaner and wax. Use a good quality commercial product and follow the manufacturer's directions on the container. Polish and wax the bright trim pieces as well as the paint.

E030D01A-AAT

When to Wax Again

You should polish and wax the car again when water no longer beads on a clean surface but spreads out over a larger area.

E030E01A-AAT

Maintaining Bumpers

Special precautions must be observed to preserve the appearance of the bumpers on your Hyundai. They are:

- o Be careful not to spill battery electrolyte or hydraulic brake fluid on the bumpers. If you do, wash it off immediately with clean water.
- o Be gentle when cleaning the bumper surfaces. They are made of soft plastic and the surface can be damaged if mistreated. Do not use abrasive cleaners. Use warm water and mild soap or car-washing solution.
- o Do not expose the bumpers to high temperatures. For example, if you have your car repainted, do not leave the bumpers on the car if the car is going to be placed in a high-temperature paint booth.

E040A01A-AAT

CLEANING THE INTERIOR

To Clean the Vinyl Upholstery

To clean the vinyl upholstery, first remove loose dirt and dust with a vacuum cleaner. Then apply a solution of mild soap or detergent and water using a clean sponge or soft cloth. Allow this to stay on the surface to loosen the dirt, then wipe with a clean damp sponge or cloth. If all the dirt stains are not removed, repeat this procedure until the upholstery is clean. Do not use gasoline, solvent, paint thinner or other strong cleaners.

E040B01A-AAT

To Clean the Leather Upholstery (If installed)

In the normal course of use, leather upholstered surfaces will, like any material, pick-up dust and dirt. This dust and dirt must be cleaned off or it may work into the surface of the leather, causing damage.

Fine leather needs care, and should be cleaned when necessary. Washing leather thoroughly with soap and water will keep your leather lustrous, beautiful and ensure you have many years of wear.
Take a piece of cheese cloth and using any mild soap and lukewarm water, work up a good lather. Thoroughly wash the leather. Wipe clean with a slightly damp cloth and dry with soft cloth. Do this as often as the leather becomes soiled.

During tanning operations, sufficient oils are incorporated through processing that none need be applied during the life of the leather. Oil applied to the finished surface will in no way help the leather and may do more harm than good. Varnishes and furniture polishes should never be used under any conditions.

E040C01A-AAT

Cleaning the Carpets

Use a foam-type carpet cleaner. Cleaners of this type are available in aerosol cans in liquid form or powder. Read the instructions and follow them exactly. Using a vacuum cleaner with the appropriate attachment, remove as much dirt from the carpets as possible. Apply the foam following the manufacturer's directions, then rub in overlapping circles. Do not add water. These cleaners work best when the carpet is kept as dry as possible.

E040D01A-AAT

Cleaning the Seat Belts

To clean the seat belts, use a cloth or sponge with mild soap or detergent and warm water. Do not use strong detergents, dye, bleach or abrasive materials on the seat belts as this may weaken the fabric.

While cleaning the belts, inspect them for excessive wear, cuts, fraying or other signs of damage and replace them if necessary.

E040E01A-AAT

Cleaning the Windows

You may use any household window cleaner on the windows. However, when cleaning the inside of the rear window be careful not to damage the rear window defroster wiring.

E050A01A-AAT

Any Questions?

If you have any questions about the care of your car, consult your Hyundai dealer.

5. VEHICLE MAINTENANCE REQUIREMENTS

F010A01A-GAT

MAINTENANCE INTERVALS

Service Requirements

To assure that you receive the greatest number of kilometers of satisfying operation from your Hyundai, certain maintenance procedures must be performed. Although careful design and engineering have reduced these to a minimum, those that are required are of the utmost importance.

It is your responsibility to have these maintenance procedures performed to comply with the terms of the warranties covering your new Hyundai. The Service Passport supplied with your new vehicle provides further information about these warranties.

F010B01A-AAT

Maintenance Requirements

The maintenance required for your Hyundai can be divided into three main areas:

- o Specified scheduled procedures
- o General checks
- o Do-it-yourself maintenance

F010C01HP-GAT

Specified Scheduled Procedures

These are the procedures such as inspections, adjustments and replacements that are listed in the maintenance charts starting on page 5-2. These procedures must be performed at the intervals shown in the maintenance schedule to assure that your warranty remains in effect. Although it is strongly recommended that they be performed by the factory-trained or distributor-trained technicians at your Hyundai dealer, these procedures may be performed at any qualified service facility.

It is suggested that genuine Hyundai service parts be used for any required repairs or replacements. Other parts of equivalent quality such as engine oil, engine coolant, manual or auto transmission oil, brake fluid and so on which are not supplied by Hyundai Motor Company or its distributor may be used without affecting your warranty coverage but you should always be sure these are equivalent to the quality of the original Hyundai parts. Your Service Passport provides further information about your warranty coverage.

F010D01A-AAT

General Checks

These are the regular checks you should perform when you drive your Hyundai or you fill the fuel tank. A list of these items will be found on page 6-4.

F010E01A-AAT

Do-It-Yourself Maintenance

If you are mechanically inclined, own a few tools that are required and want to take the time to do so, you can inspect and service a number of items. For more information about doing it yourself, see Section 6.

F010F01A-AAT

A Few Tips

- o Whenever you have your Hyundai serviced, keep copies of the service records in your glove box. This will help ensure that you can document that the required procedures have been performed to keep your warranties in effect. This is especially important when service is not performed by an authorized Hyundai dealer.
- o If you choose to do your own maintenance and repairs, you may find it helpful to have an official Hyundai Shop Manual. A copy of this publication may be purchased at your Hyundai dealer's parts department.

F020A01Y-GAT

SCHEDULED MAINTENANCE REQUIREMENTS

Inspection should be performed any time a malfunction is experienced or suspected. Receipts for all emission control system services should be retained to demonstrate compliance with conditions of the emissions system warranty.

For severe usage maintenance requirements, see page 5-6 of this section.

F030A01A-GAT

SCHEDULED MAINTENANCE

The following maintenance services must be performed to assure good vehicle control and performance. Keep receipts for all vehicle services to protect your warranty. Where both mileage and time are shown, the frequency of service is determined by whichever occurs first.

F030B01HP-GAT

R :Replace I : Inspect and, after Inspection, clean, adjust, repair or replace if necessary.

NO.	DESCRIPTION	KILOMETERS X 1000	15	30	45	60	75	90	105	120
		MONTHS	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96
	ENGINE CONTROL SYSTEM MAINTENANCE (GASOLINE)									
1	ENGINE OIL AND FILTER See Note (1)		R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R
2	DRIVE BELT (ALT, DAMPER, TENSIONER, IDLER)		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	R
3	FUEL FILTER (MFI TYPE)					R				R
4	FUEL LINES, FUEL HOSES AND CONNECTIONS		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
5	TIMING BELT					I		R		
6	VAPOR HOSE AND FUEL FILLER CAP			I		I		I		I
7	VACUUM AND CRANKCASE VENTILATION HOSES			I		I		I		I
8	AIR CLEANER FILTER		I	R	I	R	I	R	I	R
9	SPARK PLUGS			I	R		I	R		I
	SPARK PLUGS (PLATINUM COATED)							R		

Note: (1) European Community Only - API SG, SG/CD, SH OR SH/CD
Except European Community - API SE OR ABOVE
In case of Gasoline standard engine as recommended oil (API SE or ABOVE) is difficult to obtain in field, following oil recomended:
API SD - The engine oil and filter should be changed at every 10,000km or 6 months.

VEHICLE MAINTENANCE REQUIREMENTS

F030D03HP-GAT

R :Replace I : Inspect and, after Inspection, clean, adjust, repair or replace if necessary.

NO.	DESCRIPTION		KILOMETERS X 1000	15	30	45	60	75	90	105	120
			MONTHS	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96
	ENGINE CONTROL SYSTEM MAINTENANCE (DIESEL (2.5 TCI))										
1	ENGINE OIL AND FILTER	European Community only		See Note (1)							
	(API CF-4 OR ABOVE, ACEA B2 OR B3)	Except European Community		See Note (2)							
2	AIR CLEANER FILTER			I	R	I	R	I	R	I	R
3	FUEL FILTER				R		R		R		R
4	VALVE CLEARANCE			I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
5	INJECTION TIMING				I		I		I		I
6	TIMING BELT						I		R		I
7	DRIVE BELT (FOR WATER PUMP/ALTERNATOR)			I	I	I	R	I	I	I	R
8	ENGINE IDLE SPEED			I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
9	FUEL SYSTEM LEAKS				I		I		I		I
10	INJECTION NOZZLE				I		I		I		I

Note: (1) For every 7,500 km or 6 months, whichever occurs first : "R"
(2) For every 5,000 km or 6 months, whichever occurs first : "R"

VEHICLE MAINTENANCE REQUIREMENTS

F030E04HP-GAT

R :Replace I : Inspect and, after Inspection, clean, adjust, repair or replace if necessary.

NO.	DESCRIPTION		KILOMETERS X 1000	15	30	45	60	75	90	105	120
			MONTHS	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96
	ENGINE CONTROL SYSTEM MAINTENANCE (DIESEL (2.9 CRDi))										
1	ENGINE OIL AND FILTER		Europe Countries Only	See Note (1)							
	(API CF-4 OR ABOVE, ACEA B4 OR ABOVE)		Except Europe Countries	See Note (2)							
2	AIR CLEANER FILTER			I	R	I	R	I	R	I	R
3	FUEL FILTER CARTRIDGE		Central and South America Only	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R
			Except Central and South America		R		R		R		R
4	TIMING BELT								R		
5	DRIVE BELT (FOR AIR COMPRESSOR, ALTERNATOR)				I		I		I		I

Note: (1) For Ireland, Portugal - For every 15,000km or 12 months, whichever occurs first: "R"
Except Ireland, Portugal - For every 10,000km or 6 months, whichever occurs first: "R"
(2) For every 7,500 km or 6 months, whichever occurs first : "R"

VEHICLE MAINTENANCE REQUIREMENTS

F030C04HP-GAT

R : Replace I : Inspect and, after inspection, clean, adjust, repair or replace if necessary

NO.	DESCRIPTION		KILOMETERS X 1000	15	30	45	60	75	90	105	120
			MONTHS	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96
	GENERAL MAINTENANCE										
1	COOLING SYSTEM			I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
2	COOLANT	Gasoline Engine		See Note (1)							
		Diesel Engine			R		R		R		R
3	MANUAL TRANSMISSION OIL			I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
4	AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION FLUID AND FILTER	European Community Only		I	I	I	I	I	R	I	I
		Except European Community		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
5	BRAKE HOSES AND LINES			I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
6	BRAKE FLUID				I		I		I		I
7	REAR BRAKE DRUMS/LININGS, PARKING BRAKE				I		I		I		I
8	BRAKE PADS, CALIPERS AND ROTORS			I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
9	EXHAUST PIPE AND MUFFLER			I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
10	SUSPENSION MOUNTING BOLTS			I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
11	STEERING GEAR BOX, LINKAGE & BOOTS/ LOWER ARM BALL JOINT, UPPER ARM BALL JOINT			I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
12	POWER STEERING PUMP AND HOSES			I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
13	DRIVE SHAFTS AND BOOTS				I		I		I		I
14	AIR CONDITIONING REFRIGERANT			I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
15	TRANSFER CASE OIL *1			I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
16	AXLE GEAR OIL *1			R	I	I	R	I	I	R	I
17	PROPELLAR SHAFT CLEAN, BOLT RETIGHTEN				I		I		I		I
18	AIR FILTER (For Evaporator and Blower Unit)			See Note (2)							

Note : (1) FOR EVERY 24 MONTHS OR 45,000 KM, WHICHEVER OCCURS FIRST : "R"
(2) FOR EVERY 12 MONTHS OR 20,000 KM, WHICHEVER OCCURS FIRST : "R"

*1. Transfer Case Oil and Axle Gear Oil should be changed anytime they have been submerged in water.

F040A03HP-GAT

MAINTENANCE UNDER SEVERE USAGE CONDITIONS

The following items must be serviced more frequently on cars normally used under severe driving conditions. Refer to the chart below for the appropriate maintenance intervals.

R : Replace I : Inspect and, after inspection, clean, adjust, repair or replace if necessary

MAINTENANCE ITEM		MAINTENANCE OPERATION	MAINTENANCE INTERVALS	DRIVING CONDITION
ENGINE OIL AND FILTER (GASOLINE ENGINE)		R	EVERY 7,500 KM OR 6 MONTHS	A, B, C, F, H
ENGINE OIL AND FILTER (DIESEL ENGINE (2.5 TCI))	European Community Only		EVERY 4,000 KM	
	Except European Community		EVERY 3,000 KM	
ENGINE OIL AND FILTER (DIESEL ENGINE (2.9 CRDi))	European Community Only		EVERY 7,500 KM OR 6 MONTHS	
	Except European Community		EVERY 5,000 KM OR 6 MONTHS	
AIR CLEANER FILTER		R	MORE FREQUENTLY	C, E
SPARK PLUGS		R	MORE FREQUENTLY	B, H
TIMING BELT		R	EVERY 60,000 KM OR 48 MONTHS	D, E, F, G
BRAKE PADS, CALIPERS AND ROTORS		I	MORE FREQUENTLY	C, D, G, H
REAR BRAKE DRUMS/LININGS/PADS, PARKING BRAKE		I	MORE FREQUENTLY	C, D, G, H
STEERING GEAR BOX, LINKAGE AND BOOTS/ LOWER ARM BALL JOINT, UPPER ARM BALL JOINT		I	MORE FREQUENTLY	C, D, E, F
DRIVESHAFTS AND BOOTS		I	EVERY 15,000 KM OR 12 MONTHS	C, D, E, F
MANUAL TRANSMISSION OIL		R	EVERY 100,000 KM	A, C, D, E, F, G, H, I, J
AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION FLUID AND FILTER	European Community Only	R	EVERY 45,000 KM	A, C, E, F, G, H, I
	Except European Community		EVERY 40,000 KM	
TRANSFER CASE OIL		R	EVERY 100,000 KM	C, E, G, I

SEVERE DRIVING CONDITIONS

A - Repeated short distance driving
B - Extensive idling
C - Driving in dusty, rough roads
D - Driving in areas using salt or other corrosive materials or in very cold weather
E - Driving in sandy areas
F - More than 50% driving in heavy city traffic during hot weather above 32°C (90°F)
G - Driving in mountainous areas
H - Towing a trailer
I - Driving for patrol car, taxi, or other commercial use or vehicle towing
J - Driving over 170 km/h

F060A01A-AAT

EXPLANATION OF SCHEDULED MAINTENANCE ITEMS

F060M01A-AAT

o Engine Oil and Filter

The engine oil and filter should be changed at the intervals specified in the maintenance schedule. If the car is being driven in severe conditions, more frequent oil and filter changes are required.

F060B01A-AAT

o Drive Belts

Inspect all drive belts for evidence of cuts, cracks, excessive wear or oil saturation and replace if necessary. Drive belts should be checked periodically for proper tension and adjusted as necessary.

F060C01A-AAT

o Fuel Filter

A clogged filter can limit the speed at which the vehicle may be driven, damage the emission system and cause hard starting. If an excessive amount of foreign matter accumulates in the fuel tank, the filter may require replacement more frequently.
After installing a new filter, run the engine for several minutes, and check for leaks at the connections. Fuel filters should be installed by trained technicians.

F060D01A-AAT

o Fuel Lines, Fuel Hoses and Connections

Check the fuel lines, fuel hoses and connections for leakage and damage. Have a trained technician replace any damaged or leaking parts immediately.

F060E01A-AAT

o Timing Belt

Inspect all parts related to the timing belt for damage and deformation. Replace any damaged parts immediately.

F060G01A-AAT

o Vapor Hose and Fuel Filler Cap

The vapor hose and fuel filler cap should be inspected at those intervals specified in the maintenance schedule. Make sure that a new vapor hose or fuel filler cap is correctly replaced.

F060F01A-AAT

o Vacuum, Crankcase Ventilation Hoses

Inspect the surface of hoses for evidence of heat and/or mechanical damage. Hard and brittle rubber, cracking, tears, cuts, abrasions, and excessive swelling indicate deterioration. Particular attention should be paid to examine those hose surfaces nearest to high heat sources, such as the exhaust manifold.
Inspect the hose routing to assure that the hoses do not come in contact with any heat source, sharp edges or moving component which might cause heat damage or mechanical wear. Inspect all hose connections, such as clamps and couplings, to make sure they are secure, and that no leaks are present. Hoses should be replaced immediately if there is any evidence of deterioration or damage.

F060H01A-AAT

o Air Cleaner Filter

A Genuine Hyundai air cleaner filter is recommended when the filter is replaced.

F060J01A-AAT

o Spark Plugs

Make sure to install new spark plugs of the correct heat range.

F070C01A-AAT

o Engine Coolant

The coolant should be changed at the intervals specified in the maintenance schedule.

F070D01A-AAT

o Manual Transmission Oil

Inspect the manual transmission oil according to the maintenance schedule.

NOTE:

If the oil level is low, check for possible leaks before adding oil. Do not overfill.

F070E01HP-GAT

o Automatic Transmission Fluid and Filter

The fluid level should be in the "HOT" range of the dipstick, after the engine and transmission are at normal operating temperature. Check the automatic transmission fluid level with the engine running and the transmission in neutral, with the parking brake properly applied. Use DEXRON-II or III when adding or changing fluid.

F070F01A-AAT

o Brake Hoses and Lines

Visually check for proper installation, chafing, cracks, deterioration and any leakage. Replace any deteriorated or damaged parts immediately.

F070G02A-AAT

o Brake Fluid

Check brake fluid level in the brake fluid reservoir. The level should be between "MIN" and "MAX" marks on the side of the reservoir. Use only hydraulic brake fluid conforming to DOT 3 or DOT 4.

F070H01A-AAT

o Rear Brake Drums/ Linings, Parking Brake

Check the rear brake drums and linings for scoring, burning, leaking fluid, broken parts, and excessive wear. Inspect the parking brake system including the parking brake lever and cables. For detailed service procedures, refer to the Shop Manual.

F070J01A-AAT

o Brake Pads, Calipers and Rotors

Check the pads for excessive wear, discs for run out and wear, and calipers for fluid leakage.

F070K01A-AAT

o Exhaust Pipe and Muffler

Visually inspect the exhaust pipes, muffler and hangers for cracks, deterioration, or damage. Start the engine and listen carefully for any exhaust gas leakage. Tighten connections or replace parts as necessary.

F070L01A-AAT

o Suspension Mounting Bolts

Check the suspension connections for looseness or damage. Retighten to the specified torque.

F070M01B-AAT

o Steering Gear Box, Linkage & Boots/ Lower Arm Ball Joint, Upper Arm Ball Joint

With the vehicle stopped and engine off, check for excessive free-play in the steering wheel. Check the linkage for bends or damage. Check the dust boots and ball joints for deterioration, cracks, or damage. Replace any damaged parts.

F070N01A-AAT

o Power Steering Pump, Belt and Hoses

Check the power steering pump and hoses for leakage and damage. Replace any damaged or leaking parts immediately. Inspect the power steering belt for evidence of cuts, cracks, excessive wear, oiliness and proper tension. Replace or adjust it if necessary.

F070P01A-AAT

o Driveshafts and Boots

Check the drive shafts, boots and clamps for cracks, deterioration, or damage. Replace any damaged parts and, if necessary, repack the grease.

F070Q01A-AAT

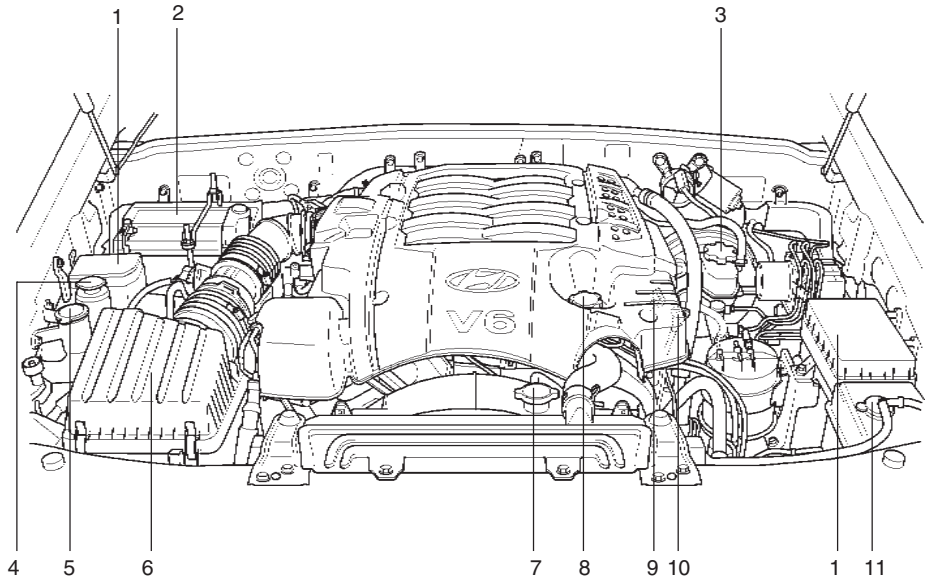
o Air Conditioning Refrigerant

Check the air conditioning lines and connections for leakage and damage. Check air conditioning performance according to the relevant shop manual if necessary.

6. DO-IT-YOURSELF MAINTENANCE

G010A01HP-GAT

GASOLINE ENGINE COMPARTMENT (3.5 V6)

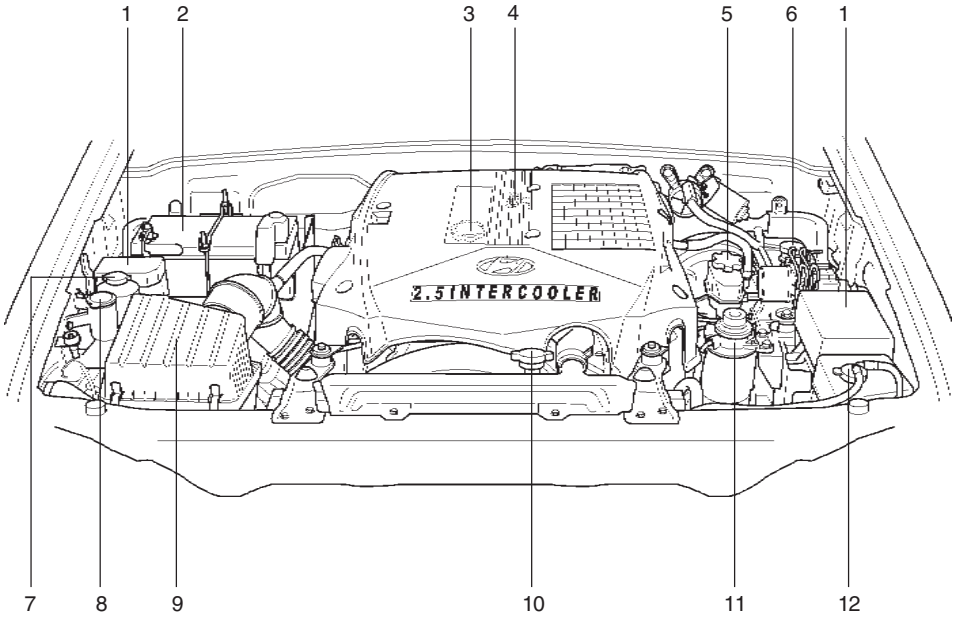


G010A02HP

1. Fuse and Relay box
2. Battery
3. Brake fluid reservoir
4. Power steering fluid reservoir
5. Windshield washer fluid reservoir
6. Air cleaner
7. Radiator cap
8. Engine oil filler cap
9. Automatic Transmission fluid level dipstick (Vehicle with Automatic Transmission)
10. Engine oil level dipstick
11. Engine Coolant reservoir cap

G010B01HP-GAT

DIESEL ENGINE COMPARTMENT (2.5 TCI)

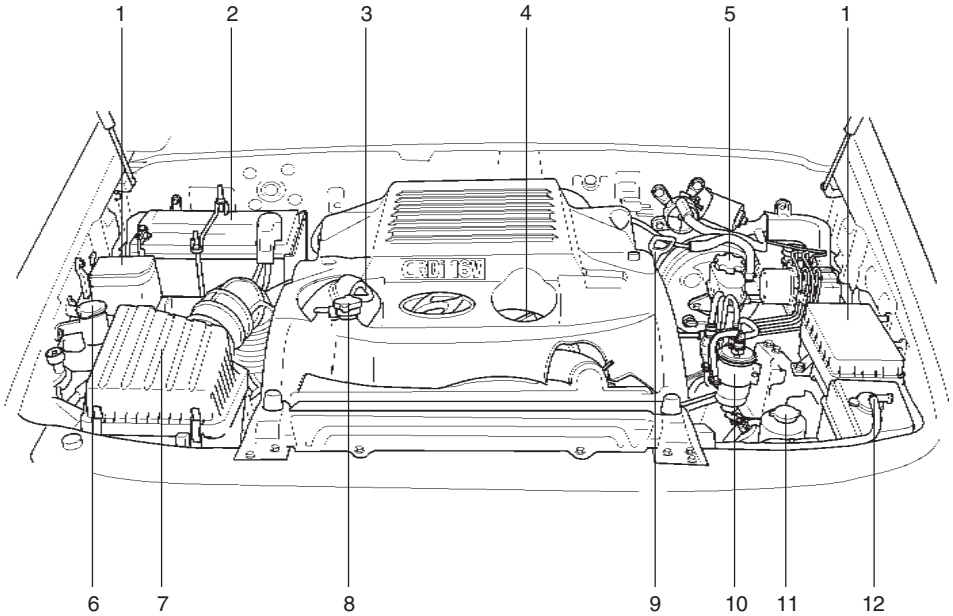


G010B02HP

1. Fuse and Relay box
2. Battery
3. Engine oil filler cap
4. Engine oil level dipstick
5. Brake fluid reservoir
6 Clutch fluid reservoir
7. Power steering fluid reservoir
8. Windshield washer fluid reservoir
9. Air cleaner
10. Radiator cap
11. Fuel filter
12. Engine Coolant reservoir cap

G010C01HP-GAT

DIESEL ENGINE COMPARTMENT (2.9 CRDi)



G010C02HP

1. Fuse and Relay box
2. Battery
3. Engine oil level dipstick
4. Engine oil filler cap
5. Brake fluid reservoir
6. Windshield washer fluid reservoir
7. Air cleaner
8. Radiator cap
9. Automatic Transmission fluid level dipstick (Vehicle with Automatic Transmission)
10. Fuel filter
11. Power steering fluid reservoir
12. Engine Coolant reservoir cap

G020A01A-AAT

GENERAL CHECKS

Engine Compartment

The following should be checked regularly:

- o Engine oil level and condition
- o Transmission fluid level and condition
- o Brake fluid level
- o Clutch fluid level
- o Engine coolant level
- o Windshield washer fluid level
- o Accessory drive belt condition
- o Engine coolant hose condition
- o Fluid leaks (on or below components)
- o Power steering fluid level
- o Battery condition
- o Air filter condition

G020B01A-AAT

Vehicle Exterior

The following should be checked monthly:

- o Overall appearance and condition
- o Wheel condition and wheel nut torque
- o Exhaust system condition
- o Light condition and operation
- o Windshield glass condition
- o Wiper blade condition
- o Paint condition and body corrosion
- o Fluid leaks
- o Door and hood lock condition
- o Tire pressure and condition (including spare tire)

G020C01A-AAT

Vehicle Interior

The following should be checked each time when the vehicle is driven:

- o Lights operation
- o Windshield wiper operation
- o Horn operation
- o Defroster, heating system operation (and air conditioning, if installed)
- o Steering operation and condition
- o Mirror condition and operation
- o Turn signal operation
- o Accelerator pedal operation
- o Brake operation, including parking brake
- o Manual transmission operation, including clutch operation
- o Automatic transmission operation, including "Park" mechanism operation
- o Seat control condition and operation
- o Seat belt condition and operation
- o Sunvisor operation

If you notice anything that does not operate correctly or appears to be functioning incorrectly, inspect it carefully and seek assistance from your Hyundai dealer if service is needed.

G030A01A-AAT

CHECKING THE ENGINE OIL

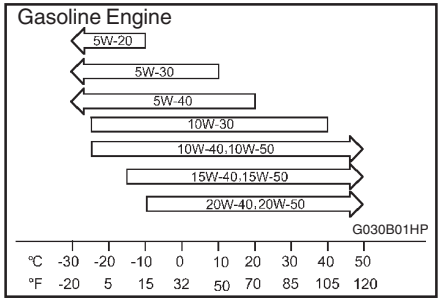
Engine oil is essential to the performance and service of the engine. It is suggested that you check the oil level at least once a week in normal use and more often if you are on a trip or driving in severe conditions.

G030B03HP-GAT

Recommended Oil

1. Gasoline Engine

(1) Select engine oil of the proper SAE viscosity number according to the atmospheric temperature.
Recommended viscosity is given in the following illustration.



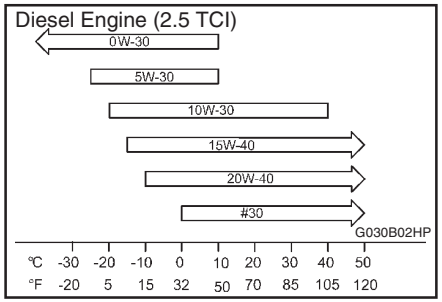
NOTE:
SAE 5W-20 is not recommended for sustained high speed vehicle operation.

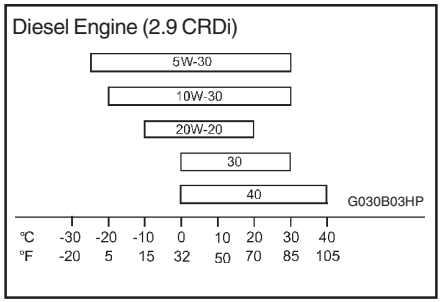
(2) The engine oil quality should meet the following API classification.

Europe : SG, SG/CD, SH OR SH/CD
Except Europe : SE or ABOVE

2. Diesel Engine

(1) Select engine oil of the proper SAE viscosity number according to the atmospheric temperature.
Recommended viscosity is given in the following illustration.





NOTE:

For diesel-powered vehicle (2.5 TCI only) SAE 5W-30 oil should be used only in areas where extremely cold temperatures of 10°C(50°F) or below are experienced.

For diesel-powered vehicle (2.5 TCI only), if the atmospheric temperatures are 0°C (32°F) or below, SAE 30 oil must not be used. This oil should be used only in areas where the atmospheric temperatures are 0°C (32°F) or above.

(2) The engine oil quality should meet the following API classification:

Diesel Engine (2.5 TCI) : CF-4 or ABOVE
Diesel Engine (2.9 CRDi) : CF-4 or ABOVE

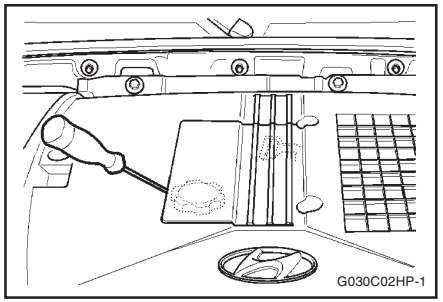
(3) The engine oil quality should meet the following ACEA classification :

Diesel Engine (2.5 TCI) : B2 or B3
Diesel Engine (2.9 CRDi) : B4 or ABOVE

G030C01A-AAT

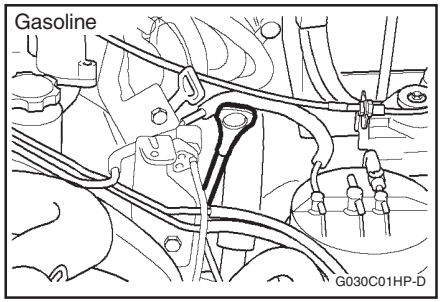
To Check the Oil Level

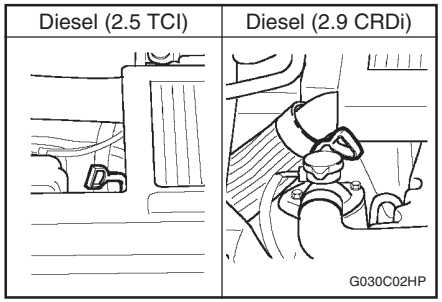
Before checking the oil, warm up the engine to the normal operating temperature and be sure your car is parked on level ground. Turn the engine off.



NOTE:

Before checking or adding the engine oil, remove the cover above the engine oil filler cap and the engine oil level dipstick with a blade screwdriver inserted in the notch (2.5 TCI only).

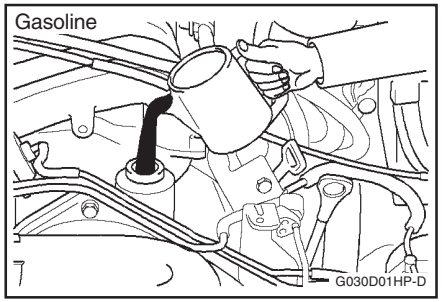


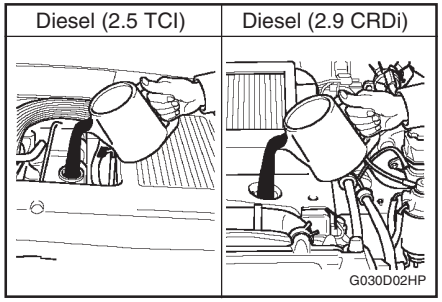


Wait a minute, then remove the dipstick, wipe it off, fully reinsert the dipstick and withdraw it again. Then note the highest level the oil has reached on the dipstick. It should be between the upper ("F") and lower ("L") range.

G030D01A-GAT

Adding Oil





If the oil level is close to or below the "L" mark, add oil until it reaches the "F" mark. To add oil:

1. Remove the oil filler cap by turning it counter-clockwise.
2. Add oil, then check the level again. Do not overfill.
3. Replace the cap by turning it clockwise.

The distance between the "F" and "L" marks is equal to about 1 liter of oil.

G350A01A-GAT

ENGINE OIL CONSUMPTION

Function of Engine Oil

Engine oil has the primary function of lubricating and cooling the inside of the engine.

Engine oil consumption

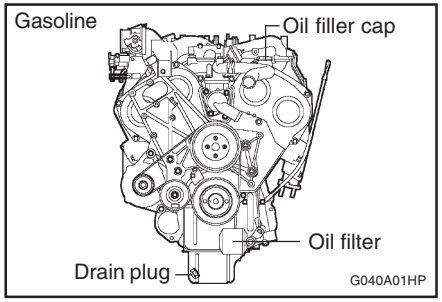
It is normal that an engine should consume some engine oil while normal driving. The cause of oil consumption in a normal engine are as follows;

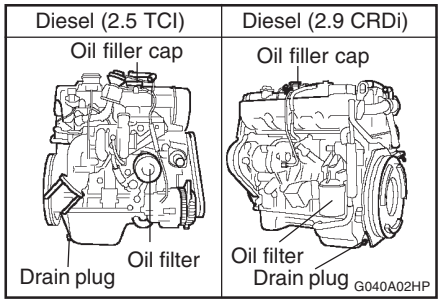
o Engine oil is used to lubricate pistons, piston rings and cylinders.
A thin film of oil is left on the cylinder wall when a piston moves downwards in the cylinder. High negative pressure generated during engine operation sucks some of the oil into the combustion chamber.
This oil with some oil of the cylinder wall is burned by the high temperature combustion gases during the combustion process.

o The engine oil consumption is strongly effected by the viscosity and quality of oil, engine rpm and driving condition etc. The engine oil is more consumed under severe driving conditions such as high speeds and frequent acceleration and deceleration than normal driving condition.

G040A02HP-GAT

CHANGING THE OIL AND FILTER





The engine oil and filter should be changed at those intervals specified in the maintenance schedule in Section 5. If the car is being driven in severe conditions, more frequent oil and filter changes are required.

The procedure for changing the oil and filter is as follows:

1. Park the car on level ground and set the parking brake. Start the engine and let it warm up until the needle on the coolant temperature gauge moves above the lowest mark. Turn the engine off and place the gear selector lever in "P" (automatic transmission) or reverse gear (manual transmission).
2. Open the hood and remove the engine oil filler cap.
3. Slide underneath the car and loosen the drain plug by turning it counterclockwise with a wrench of the proper size. Be sure that a drain pan is in position to catch the oil as it drains out, then remove the drain plug.

WARNING:
Be very careful when draining the engine oil as it may be hot enough to burn you!

4. When the oil has stopped draining, replace the drain plug using a new washer and retighten by turning it clockwise.

   Oil pan drain plug tightening torque: 3.5 ~ 4.5 kgf.m

5. Remove the oil filter by turning it counterclockwise with a oil filter wrench of the proper size. A certain amount of oil will come out when you remove the filter. So be sure to have your drain pan in place underneath it.
6. Install a new oil filter in accordance with the instructions on the carton or on the filter itself. Do not over-tighten **(Tightening torque: Gasoline- 1.2 ~ 1.6 kgf·m, Diesel - 2.3 ~ 2.5 kgf·m).** Be sure that the mounting surface on the engine is clean and that the old gasket is removed completely. Lubricate the new gasket on the filter with clean engine oil before installation.
7. Refill the crankcase with the recommended engine oil. Refer to the specification in chapter 9 for engine oil capacity.

8. Start the engine and check to be sure no oil is leaking from the drain plug or oil filter.
9. Shut off the engine and recheck the oil level.

NOTE:
Always dispose of used engine oil in an environmentally acceptable manner. It is suggested that it be placed in a sealed container and taken to a service station for reclamation. Do not pour the oil on the ground or put it into the household trash.

WARNING:
Used motor oil may cause irritation or cancer of the skin if left in contact with the skin for prolonged periods of time. Wash your hands thoroughly with soap and warm water as soon as possible after handling used oil.

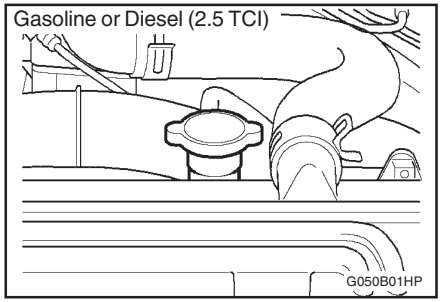
G050A01A-AAT

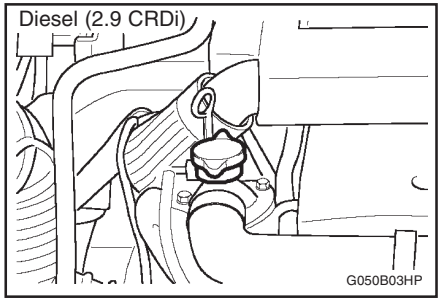
CHECKING AND CHANGING THE ENGINE COOLANT

WARNING:
Do not remove the radiator cap when the engine is hot. When the engine is hot, the engine coolant is under pressure and may erupt through the opening if the cap is removed. You could be seriously burned if you do not observe this precaution. Do not remove the radiator cap until the radiator is cool to touch.

G050B01A-DAT

Recommended Engine Coolant



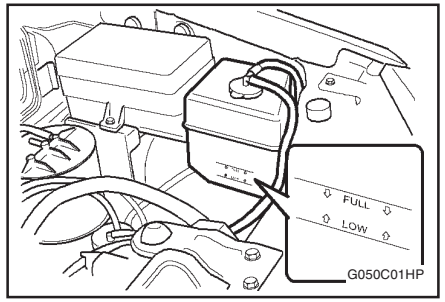


Use a high quality ethylene-glycol coolant in a 50/50 mix with water. The engine coolant should be compatible with aluminum engine parts. Additional corrosion inhibitors or additives should not be used. The cooling system must be maintained with the correct concentration and type of engine coolant to prevent freezing and corrosion. Never allow the concentration of antifreeze to exceed the 60% level or go below the 35% level, otherwise damage to the cooling system may result. For proper concentration when adding or replacing the engine coolant, refer to the following table.

Ambient temperature °C (°F)	Engine Coolant concentration	
	Antifreeze solution	Water
-15 (5)	35%	65%
-25 (-13)	40%	60%
-35 (-31)	50%	50%
-45 (-49)	60%	40%

G050C01A-AAT

To Check the Coolant Level



The coolant level can be seen on the side of the plastic coolant reservoir. The level of the coolant should be between the "LOW" and "FULL" lines on the reservoir when the engine is cool. If the level is below the "LOW" mark, add engine coolant to bring it up between "LOW" and "FULL". If the level is low, inspect for coolant leaks and recheck the fluid level frequently. If the level drops again, visit your Hyundai dealer for an inspection and diagnosis of the reason.

G050D01HP-GAT

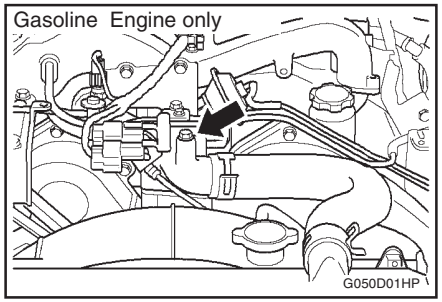
To Change the Engine Coolant

The engine coolant should be changed at those intervals specified in the vehicle maintenance schedule in Section 5.

CAUTION:

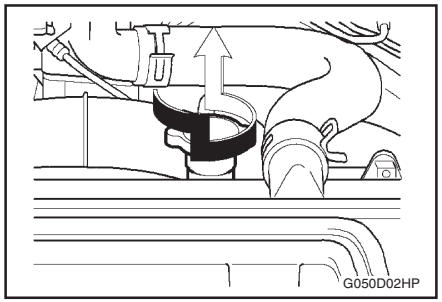
Engine coolant can damage the finish of your car. If you spill engine coolant on the car, wash it off thoroughly with clean water.

1. Park the car on level ground, set the parking brake and remove the radiator cap when cool.
2. Be sure your drain receptacle is in place. Open the drain cock on the radiator. Allow all the engine coolant to drain from the cooling system, then securely close the drain cock.
3. Check Section 9 for the capacity of the cooling system in your car. Then, following the manufacturer's directions on the engine coolant container, add the appropriate quantity of coolant to the radiator.

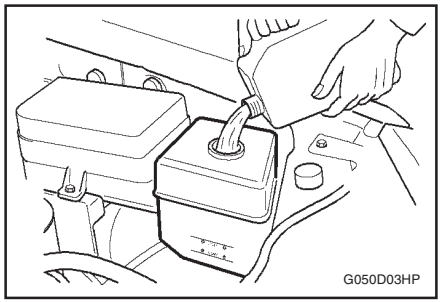


NOTE: Gasoline Engine Only

Before adding the coolant to the radiator, unscrew the flange bolt for fitting water outlet to escape the excess pressure. And if the coolant overflows from the hole while adding the coolant, screw the bolt and continue to add the coolant.



4. Turn the radiator cap counterclockwise without pressing down on it, until it stops. This relieves any pressure remaining in the cooling system. And remove the radiator cap by pushing down and turning counterclockwise. Now fill the radiator with clean demineralized or distilled water. Continue to add clean demineralized or distilled water in small quantities until the fluid level stays up in the radiator neck.



5. Start the engine, top off the radiator with water and then add coolant to the reservoir until the level is between "LOW" and "FULL".
6. Replace the radiator and reservoir caps and check to be sure the drain cocks are fully closed and not leaking.

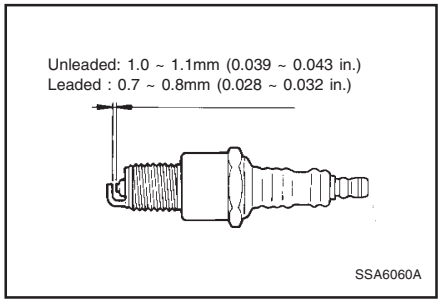
WARNING:

The cooling fan is controlled by engine coolant temperature and may sometimes operate even when the engine is not running.

Use extreme caution when working near the blades of the coolant fan so that you are not injured by a rotating fan blade. As the engine coolant temperature decreases, the fan will automatically shut off. This is a normal condition.

G060A01HP-GAT

SPARK PLUGS (Gasoline Engine Only)



Your engine was originally equipped with platinum-tipped spark plugs.
Platinum-tipped spark plugs will last longer than conventional type spark plugs and can be identified by blue lines on the ceramic shell.

NOTE:

Do not clean or regap platinum-tipped spark plugs.

G060B01HP-AAT

Replacing the Spark Plugs

The spark plugs should be changed at the intervals specified in the vehicle maintenance schedule in Section 5 or whenever engine performance indicates they should be changed. Symptoms that suggest poor spark plug performance include engine misfiring under load, loss of fuel economy, poor acceleration, etc.
When spark plugs are replaced, always use spark plugs recommended by Hyundai. The use of other spark plugs can result in loss of performance, radio interference or engine damage.

Recommended Spark Plugs:

Type	Remark
RC10PYPB4 (CHAMPION)	Unleaded*
PFR5N-11 (NGK)	
RC10YC(CHAMPION)	Leaded
BKR5ES (NGK)	

*: Platinum coated

NOTE:

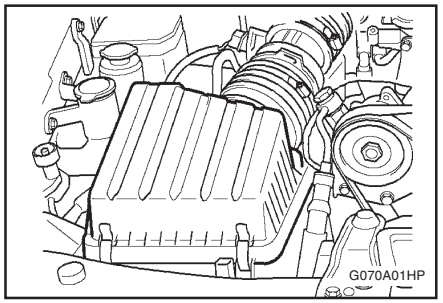
- **When replacing the spark plug, genuine Hyundai parts are recommended.**
- **It is recommended that the spark plugs be changed by an authorized Hyundai dealer.**

WARNING:

It is recommended that the engine be cool or cold when changing the spark plugs. If the engine is hot, you could burn yourself on the insulated connector, the spark plug or the engine itself.

G070A02Y-AAT

CHANGING THE AIR CLEANER FILTER



The replacement of air cleaner filter is performed in the following manner.

1. Unsnap the clips around the cover.
2. When this is done, the cover can be lifted off, the old filter removed and the new filter put in its place.

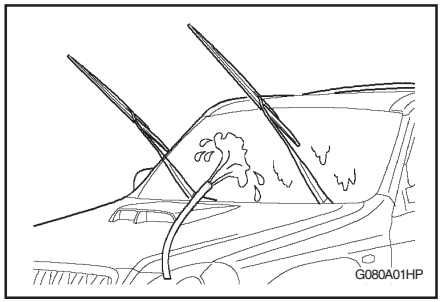
Genuine Hyundai replacement parts are recommended.

CAUTION:

Operating your vehicle without a proper air cleaner filter in place can result in excessive engine wear.

G080A02A-AAT

WINDSHIELD WIPER BLADES



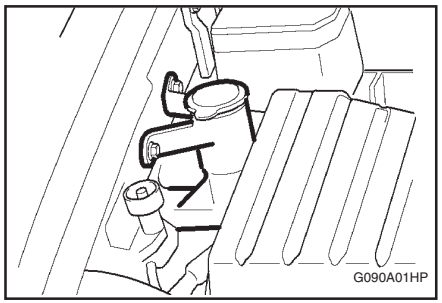
The wiper blades should be carefully inspected from time to time and cleaned to remove accumulations of road film or other debris. To clean the wiper blades and arms, use a clean sponge or cloth with a mild soap or detergent and water. If the wipers continue to streak or smear the glass, replace them with genuine Hyundai replacement parts or their equivalent.

CAUTION:

- **Do not operate the wipers on dry glass. This can result in more rapid wear of the wiper blades and may scratch the glass.**
- **Keep the blade rubber out of contact with petroleum products such as engine oil, gasoline, etc.**

G090A01HP-AAT

FILLING THE WASHER RESERVOIR



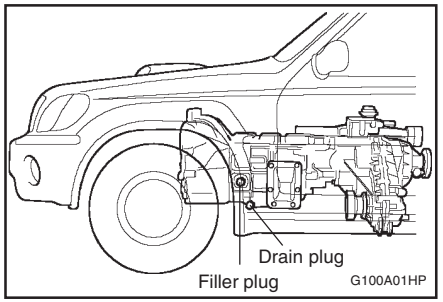
The washer fluid reservoir supplies fluid to the windshield washer system.
A good quality washer fluid should be used to fill the washer reservoir. The fluid level should be checked more frequently during inclement weather or whenever the washer system is in more frequent use.
The capacity of the washer reservoir is 4.5 liters (4.75 U.S. quarts).

CAUTION:

- **Radiator antifreeze (engine coolant) should not be used in the washer system because it will damage the car's finish.**
- **The washer should not be operated if the washer reservoir is empty. This can damage the washer fluid pump.**

G100A02HP-GAT

CHECKING THE TRANSMISSION OIL (MANUAL)



Transmission lubricant in the manual transmission should be checked at those intervals specified in the vehicle maintenance schedule in Section 5.

Recommended Oil

Use only HYUNDAI GENUINE PARTS MTF 75W/90 (API GL-4) in the manual transmission.

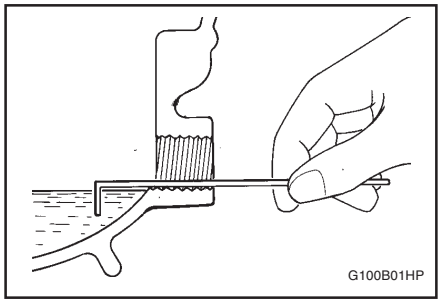
Manual Transmission Oil Capacity

The oil capacity of the manual transmission is ;
Gasoline or Diesel (2.9 CRDi) : 3.2 liters (3.38 U.S. quarts)
Diesel (2.5 TCI) : 2.5 liters (2.64 U.S. quarts)

WARNING:
It is always better to check the transmission oil level when the engine is cool or cold. If the engine is hot, you should exercise great caution to avoid burning yourself on hot engine or exhaust parts.

G100B01HP-GAT

To Check the Manual Transmission Fluid Level



Park the car on level ground with the engine off.

1. Using a wrench of the correct size, loosen the oil filler plug by turning it counterclockwise and remove it with your fingers.
2. Use your finger to feel inside the hole. The oil level should be at its bottom edge. If it is not, check for leaks before adding oil. To refill the transmission or bring the oil level up,add oil slowly until it reaches the proper level. Do not overfill.
3. Replace the plug and washer, screw it in with your fingers and then tighten securely with the wrench.

G110A01HP-GAT

CHECKING THE TRANSMISSION FLUID (AUTOMATIC)

Transmission fluid in the automatic transmission should be checked at those intervals specified in the vehicle maintenance schedule in Section 5.

G110B01HP-GAT

Recommended Fluid

Your Hyundai automatic transmission is specially designed to operate with DEXRON-II or DEXRON-III. Damage caused by a nonspecified fluid is not covered by your new vehicle limited warranty.

G110C03HP-GAT

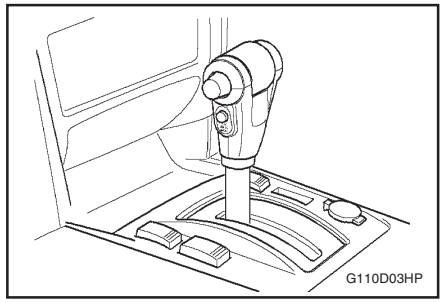
Transmission Fluid Capacity

The fluid capacity of the automatic transmission is;
Gasoline - 10.5 liters (11.09 U.S. quarts)
Diesel (2.9 CRDi) - 11.8 liters (12.47 U.S. quarts)
Diesel (2.5 TCI) - 8.2 liters (8.66 U.S. quarts)

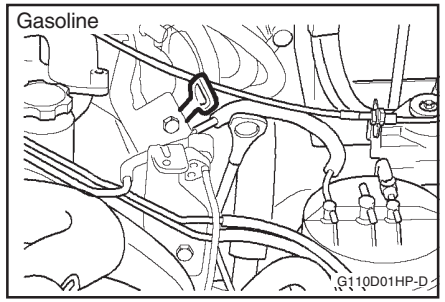
WARNING:
The transmission fluid level should be checked when the engine is at normal operating temperature. This means that the engine, radiator, exhaust system etc., are very hot. Exercise great care not to burn yourself during this procedure.

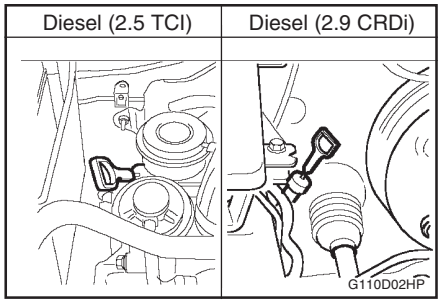
G110D02HP-GAT

To Check the Transmission Fluid Level



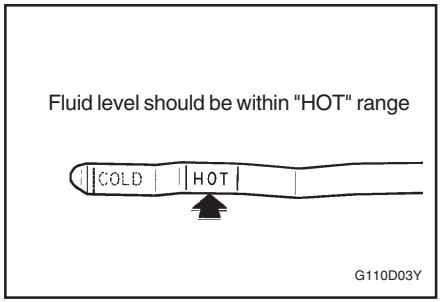
Park the car on level ground with the parking brake engaged. When the transmission fluid level is checked, the transmission fluid should be at normal operating temperature and the engine idling.





While the engine is idling, apply the brakes and move the gear selector lever from "P" to each of its other positions — "R", "N", "D", "2", "L" — and then return to "N" or "P". With the engine still idling:

1. Open the hood, being careful to keep hands, long hair and clothing clear of any moving parts.
2. Remove the transmission dipstick, wipe it clean, reinsert the dipstick as far as it will go, then remove it again. Now check the fluid level on the dipstick. It should be in the "HOT" range on the dipstick.
3. If the transmission fluid level is low, use a funnel to add transmission fluid through the dipstick tube until the level reaches the "HOT" range. Do not overfill.



WARNING:
The cooling fan is controlled by engine coolant temperature and may sometimes operate even when the engine is not running. Use extreme caution when working near the blades of the cooling fan, so that you are not injured by a rotating fan blade. As the engine coolant temperature decreases, the fan will automatically shut off. This is a normal condition.

G120A01A-AAT

CHECKING THE BRAKES

CAUTION:
Because brakes are essential to the safe operation of the car, it is suggested that they be checked and inspected by your Hyundai dealer. The brakes should be checked and inspected for wear at those intervals specified in the vehicle maintenance schedule in Section 5.

G120B02A-AAT

Checking the Brake Fluid Level

WARNING:
Use caution when handling brake fluid. It can damage your vision if it gets into your eyes. It will also damage your vehicle's paint if spilled on it and not removed immediately.

G120C02A-AAT

Recommended Brake Fluid

Use only hydraulic brake fluid conforming to DOT 3 or DOT 4 specifications in your braking system. Follow the instructions printed on the container.

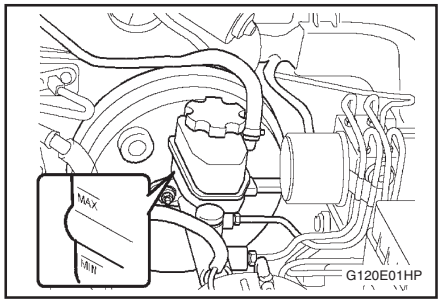
G120D01A-AAT

To Check the Fluid Level

The fluid level in the brake fluid reservoir should be checked periodically. The level should be between the "MIN" and "MAX" marks on the side of the reservoir. If the level is at or below the "MIN" mark, carefully add fluid to bring it up to "MAX". Do not overfill.

G120E02A-AAT

Adding Brake Fluid



WARNING:

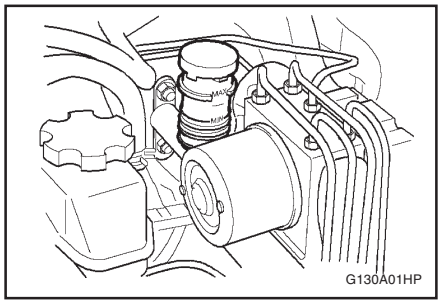
Handle brake fluid carefully. It can damage your vision if it gets into your eyes. Use only DOT 3 or DOT 4 specification fluid from a sealed container. Do not allow the fluid can or reservoir to remain open any longer than required. This will prevent entry of dirt and moisture which can damage the brake system and cause improper operation.

To add brake fluid, first wipe away any dirt then unscrew the fluid reservoir cap. Slowly pour the recommended fluid into the reservoir. Do not overfill. Carefully replace the cap on the reservoir and tighten.

G130A01A-AAT

CHECKING THE CLUTCH FLUID

To Check the Clutch Fluid



The clutch fluid level in the master cylinder should be checked when performing other under hood services. The system should be checked for leakage at the same time. Check to make certain that the clutch fluid level is always between the "MAX" and "MIN" level markings on the fluid reservoir. Fill as required. Fluid loss indicates a leak in the clutch system which should be inspected and repaired immediately. Consult your Hyundai dealer.

G130B02A-AAT

To Replace the Fluid

Recommended brake fluid conforming to DOT 3 or DOT 4 specification should be used. The reservoir cap must be fully tightened to avoid contamination from foreign matter or moisture.

NOTE:

Do not allow any other liquids to contaminate the brake fluid. Seal damage will result.

WARNING:

Use caution when handling brake fluid. It can damage your vision if you get it in your eyes. It will also damage your vehicle's paint if spilled on it and not removed immediately.

G140A01A-AAT

AIR CONDITIONING CARE

Keeping the Condenser Clean

The air conditioning condenser (and engine radiator) should be checked periodically for accumulation of dirt, dead insects, leaves, etc. These can interfere with maximum cooling efficiency. When removing such accumulations, brush or hose them away carefully to avoid bending the cooling fans.

G140B01A-AAT

Checking the Air Conditioning Operation

1. Start the engine and let it run at fast idle for several minutes with the air conditioning set at the maximum cold setting.
2. If the air coming out of the in-dash vents is not cold, have the air conditioning system inspected by your Hyundai dealer.

CAUTION:

Running the air conditioning system for extended periods of time with a low refrigerant level may damage the compressor.

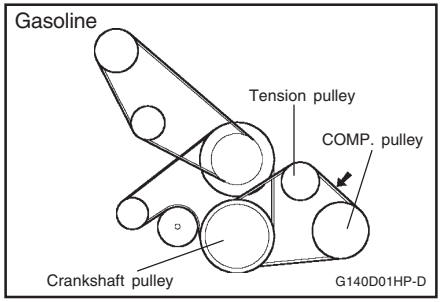
G140C01A-AAT

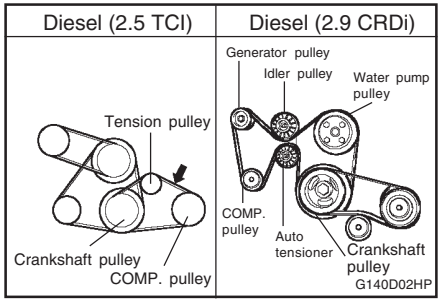
Lubrication

To lubricate the compressor and the seals in the system, the air conditioning should be run for at least 10 minutes each week. This is particularly important during cool weather when the air conditioning system is not otherwise in use.

G140D01HP-GAT

Checking the Compressor Drive Belt





When the air conditioning is being used regularly, the compressor drive belt tension should be checked at least once a month.

To check the drive belt tension, press down on the belt halfway between the engine crankshaft and compressor pulleys. Pressing with your finger, you should not be able to deflect this belt anymore than 8.0 mm. If you have the instruments to check it with a force of 98N (22 lb.), the deflection should be approx. 8.0 mm (0.315 inches). If the belt is too loose, have it adjusted by your Hyundai dealer.

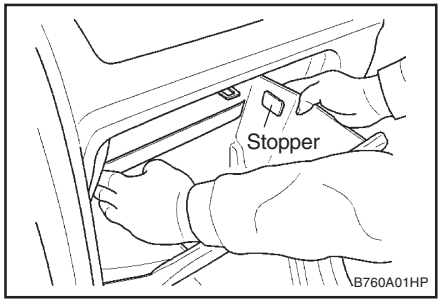
NOTE:

The compressor drive belt tension for diesel engine (2.9 CRDi only) is adjusted automatically.

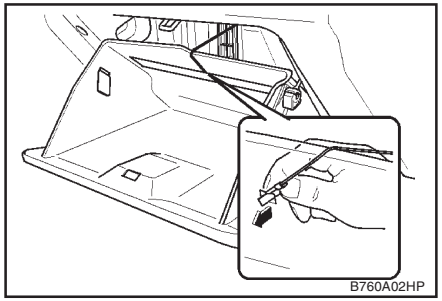
B145A01HP-GAT

CHANGING THE AIR FILTER (For Evaporator and Blower Unit) (If installed)

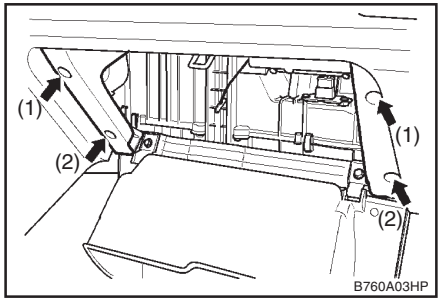
The air filter is located in front of the evaporator unit behind the glove box. It helps to decrease pollutants from entering the car and to filter the air.



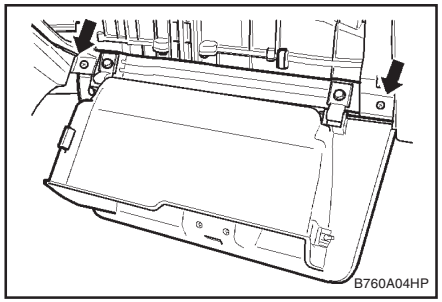
1. Open the glove box and remove the stoppers by pushing the both sides of the glove box inward.



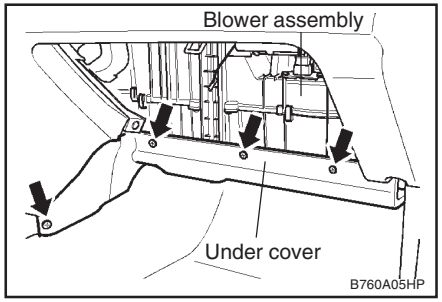
2. Lower the glove box down completely after taking out the damper strap from the hole.



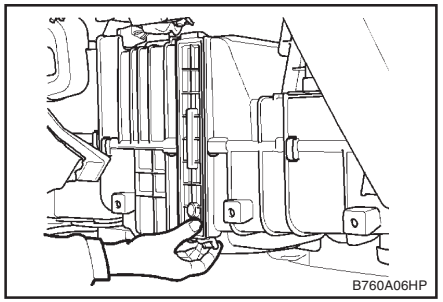
3. Remove the lower instrument panel pad mounting bolts (1) and screws (2), and then detach the lower instrument panel pad.



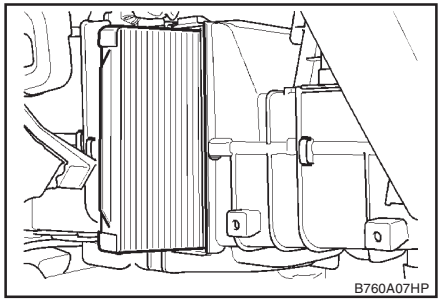
4. Remove the glove box mounting screws from the glove box assembly, and then detach the glove box assembly.



5. After removing the screws on the under cover, detach the under cover from the blower assembly by pushing the cover toward the engine room.



6. Remove the filter cover by pulling the hook of the filter cover.

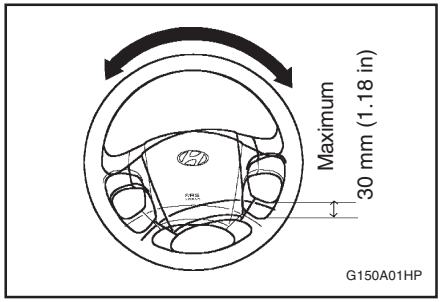


7. Replace the air filter with a new one.
8. Installation is the reverse order of disassembly.

CAUTION:
When installing the under cover, fit the cover in the projection of blower assembly.

G150A01A-GAT

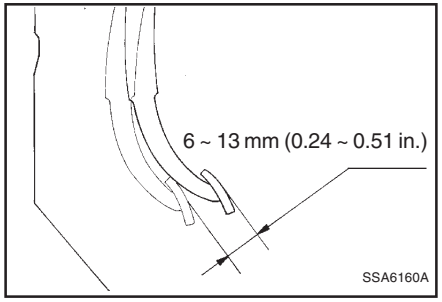
CHECKING STEERING WHEEL FREEPLAY



To check the steering wheel freeplay, stop the car with the wheels pointed straight ahead and gently move the steering wheel back and forth. Use very light finger pressure and be sensitive to changes in resistance that mark the limits of the freeplay. If the freeplay is greater than specified, have it inspected by your Hyundai dealer and adjusted or repaired if necessary.

G160A01A-GAT

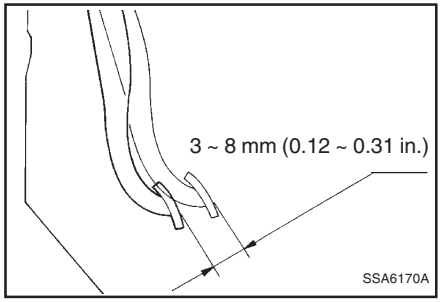
CHECKING CLUTCH PEDAL FREE-PLAY



With the engine off, press lightly on the clutch pedal until you feel a change in resistance. This is the clutch pedal freeplay. The freeplay should be within the limits specified in the illustration. If it is not, have it inspected by your Hyundai dealer and adjusted or repaired if necessary.

G170A01A-GAT

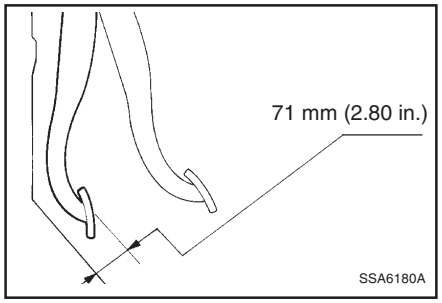
CHECKING BRAKE PEDAL FREE-PLAY



With the engine off, press down on the brake pedal several times to reduce the vacuum in the brake booster.
Then, using your hand, press down slowly on the brake pedal until you feel a change in resistance. This is the brake pedal freeplay. The freeplay should be within the limits specified in the illustration. If it is not, have it inspected by your Hyundai dealer and adjusted or repaired if necessary.

G180A01A-GAT

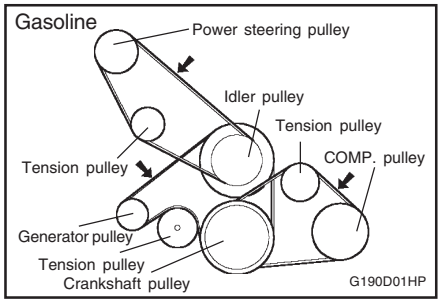
CHECKING BRAKE PEDAL CLEARANCE

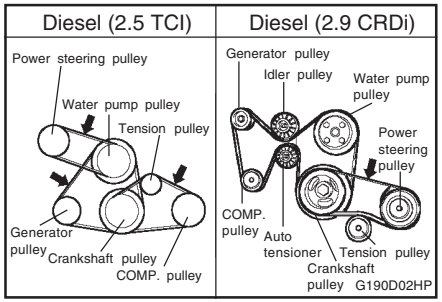


You need a helper to check the brake pedal clearance. With the engine running, have your helper press down on the brake pedal several times and then hold it down with a force of about 490N (50 kg, 110 lbs). The brake pedal clearance is the distance from the top surface of the brake pedal to the asphalt sheeting under the floor mat. If the brake pedal clearance is not within the limits specified in the illustration, have it inspected by your Hyundai dealer and adjusted or repaired if necessary.

G190A01A-GAT

CHECKING DRIVE BELTS





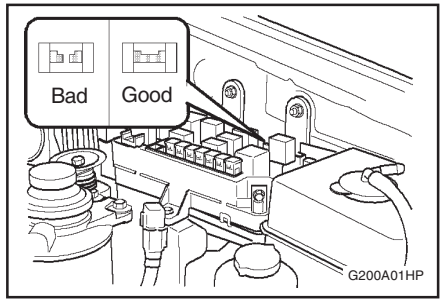
Drive belts should be checked periodically for proper tension and adjusted if necessary. At the same time, belts should be examined for cracks, wear, fraying or other evidence of deterioration and replaced if necessary.

Belt routing should also be checked to be sure there is no interference between the belts and other parts of the engine. After a belt is replaced, the new belt should be adjusted again after two or three weeks to eliminate slack resulting from initial stretching after use.

G200A01A-AAT

CHECKING AND REPLACING FUSES

Replacing a Fusible Link

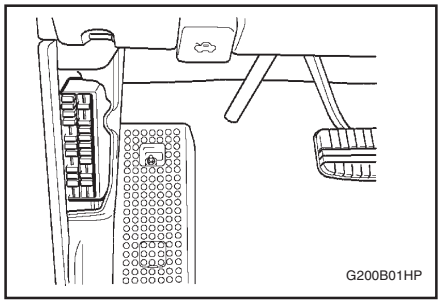


A fusible link will melt if the electrical circuits from the battery are ever overloaded, thus preventing damage to the entire wiring harness. (This could be caused by a short in the system drawing too much current.) If this ever happens, have a Hyundai dealer determine the cause, repair the system and replace the fusible link. The fusible links are located in a relay box for easy inspection.

CAUTION:
When replacing a fusible link, never use anything but a new fusible link with the same or lower amperage rating. Never use a piece of wire or a higher-rated fusible link. This could result in serious damage and create a fire hazard.

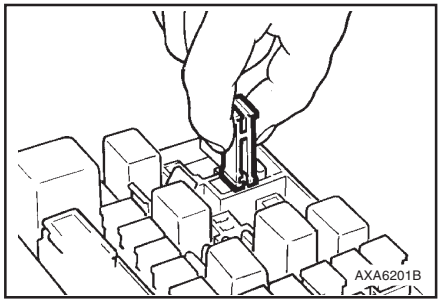
G200B01HP-GAT

Replacing Accessory Fuse

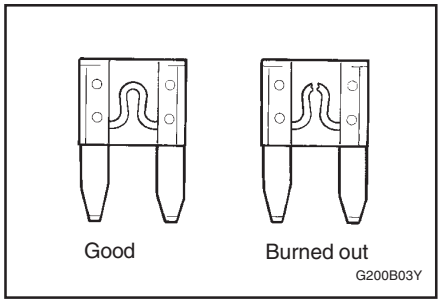


The fuse box for the lights and other electrical accessories will be found under the dashboard on the driver's side. Inside the box you will find a list showing the circuits protected by each fuse. If any of your car's lights or other electrical accessories stop working, a blown fuse could be the reason. If the fuse has burned out, you will see that the metal strip inside the fuse has burned through. If you suspect a blown fuse, follow this procedure:

1. Turn off the ignition and all other switches.
2. Open the fuse box and examine each fuse. Remove each fuse by pulling it toward you (a small "fuse puller" tool is contained in the relay box to simplify this operation).



3. Be sure to check all other fuses even if you find one that appears to have burned out.
4. Replace the blown fuse by pressing a new fuse of the same rating into place. The fuse should be a snug fit. If it is not, have the fuse clip repaired or replaced by a Hyundai dealer. If you do not have a spare fuse, you may be able to borrow a fuse of the same or lower rating from an accessory you can temporarily get along without (the radio or cigarette lighter, for example). Always remember to replace the borrowed fuse.



CAUTION:
A burned-out fuse indicates that there is a problem in the electrical circuit. If you replace a fuse and it blows as soon as the accessory is turned on, the problem is serious and should be referred to a Hyundai dealer for diagnosis and repair. Never replace a fuse with anything except a fuse with the same or a lower amperage rating. A higher capacity fuse could cause damage and create a fire hazard.

G210A01A-AAT

CHECKING THE BATTERY

WARNING:

Batteries can be dangerous! When working with batteries, carefully observe the following precautions to avoid serious injuries.

The fluid in the battery contains a strong solution of sulfuric acid, which is poisonous and highly corrosive. Be careful not to spill it on yourself or the car. If you do spill battery fluid on yourself, immediately do the following:

- o If battery fluid is on your skin, flush the affected areas with water for at least 15 minutes and then seek medical assistance.
- o If battery fluid is in your eyes, rinse out your eyes with water and get medical assistance as soon as possible. While you are being driven to get medical assistance, continue to rinse your eyes by using a sponge or soft cloth saturated with water.
- o If you swallow battery fluid, drink a large quantity of water or milk followed by milk of magnesia, eat a raw egg or drink vegetable oil. Get medical assistance as soon as possible.

While batteries are being charged (either by a battery charger or by the vehicle's alternator), they produce explosive gases. Always observe these warnings to prevent injuries from occurring:

- o Charge batteries only in a well ventilated area.
- o Do not permit flames, sparks or smoking in the area.
- o Keep children away from the area.

G210B01A-AAT

Checking the Battery

Keep the battery clean. Any evidence of corrosion around the battery posts or terminals should be removed using a solution of household baking soda and warm water. After the battery terminals are dry, cover them with a light coating of grease.

G220A01A-AAT

CHECKING ELECTRIC COOLING FANS

WARNING:

The cooling fan is controlled by engine coolant temperature and may sometimes operate even when the engine is not running. Use extreme caution when working near the blades of the coolant fan, so that you are not injured by a rotating fan blade. As the engine coolant temperature decreases the fan will automatically shut off. This is a normal condition.

G220B01A-AAT

Checking Engine Cooling Fan

The engine coolant fan should come on automatically if the engine coolant temperature is high.

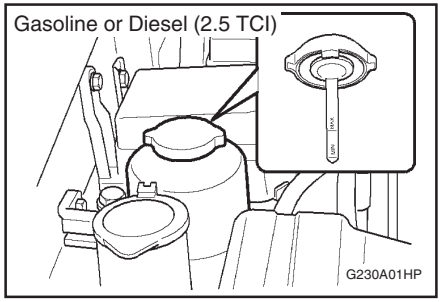
G220C01A-AAT

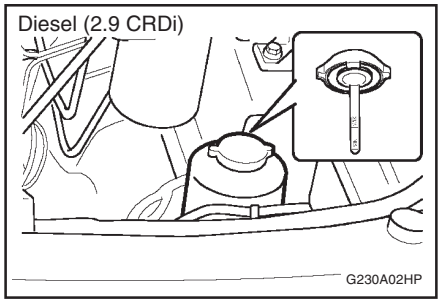
Checking Condenser Cooling Fan

The condenser coolant fan should come on automatically whenever the air conditioning is in operation.

G230A03A-AAT

POWER STEERING FLUID LEVEL





The power steering fluid level should be checked daily.
To check the power steering fluid level, be sure the ignition is "OFF", then check to make certain that the power steering fluid level is between the "MAX" and "MIN" level markings on the fluid reservoir.

NOTE:
Grinding noise from the power steering pump may be heard immediately after the engine is started in extremely cold conditions (below - 20°C). If the noise stops during warm up, there is no abnormal function in the system. If is due to a power steering fluid characteristic in extremely cold conditions.

Recommended Fluid
Use PSF-3 type fluid.

NOTE:
Do not start the engine when the power steering oil reservoir is empty.

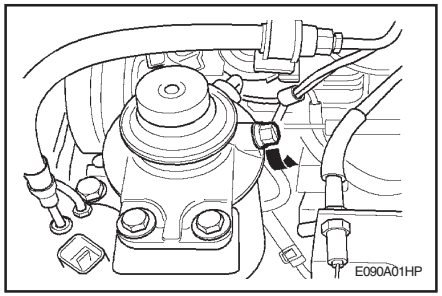
G240A01A-AAT

POWER STEERING HOSES

It is suggested that you check the power steering hose connections for fluid leakage at regular intervals. The power steering hoses should be replaced if there is severe surface cracking, pulling, scuffing or worn spots. Deterioration of the hose could cause premature failure.

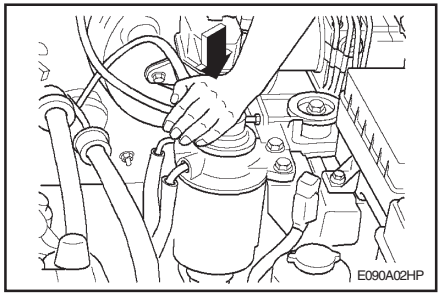
G350A01HP-GAT

BLEEDING THE FUEL SYSTEM (FOR DIESEL ENGINE (2.5 TCI))



The fuel system should be bled to remove air as described in the illustration if the fuel supply is exhausted during travel, when the fuel filter is replaced, or if the vehicle is not used for a long time.

1. Loosen the air bleed bolt at the top of the fuel filter with a flat-bladed screwdriver or equivalent.



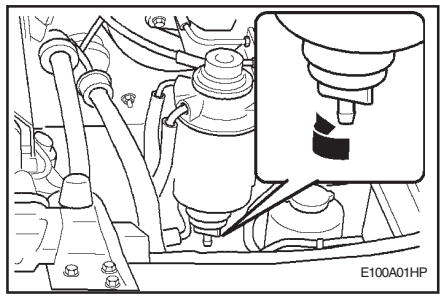
2. Pump the hand pump until there are no more bubbles in the fuel coming out of the air plug. When doing this, place a cloth around the air plug to prevent the escaping fuel from spewing about.
3. Tighten the air bleed bolt when there are no more bubbles in the fuel.
4. Continue pumping until the hand pump becomes stiff.
5. Finally, check to be sure that there is no leakage of fuel.
   If in doubt, consult your nearest authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

WARNING:
(1) Do not smoke or have any other open flame near the vehicle while bleeding the fuel system.

(2) Be sure to carefully clean away any fuel which spilled onto nearby parts coming out of the air bleed bolt, because such accumulations of fuel might ignite and cause a fire.

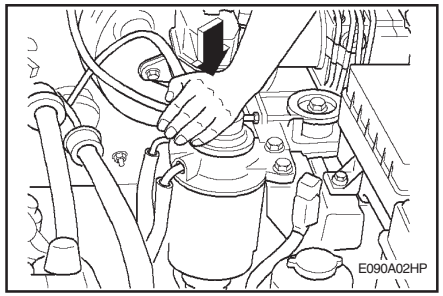
G300A01HP-GAT

REMOVAL OF WATER FROM THE FUEL FILTER (FOR DIESEL ENGINE (2.5 TCI))



If the fuel filter warning lamp illuminates during driving, it indicates that water has accumulated in the fuel filter. If this occurs, remove the water as described below.

1. Loosen the drain plug at the bottom of the fuel filter.



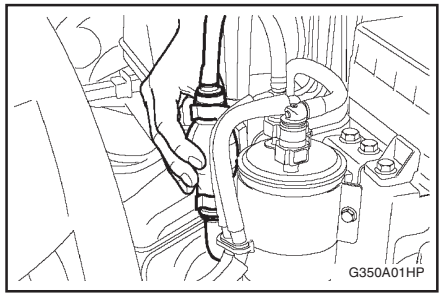
2. Operate the hand pump slowly 6 or 7 times in order to force the water out through the drain plug.
3. Tighten the drain plug when water no longer comes out.
4. Loosen the air bleed bolt and bleed the air. (Refer to "Bleeding the fuel system")
5. Check to be sure that the warning lamp illuminates when the ignition key is turned to "ON", and that it goes off when the engine is started.
   If in doubt, consult your nearest authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

WARNING:

(1) Do not smoke or have any other open flame near the vehicle while bleeding the fuel system.
(2) Be sure to carefully wipe away any water drained out in this manner, because the fuel mixed in the water might be ignited and result in a fire.

G350B01HP-GAT

BLEEDING THE FUEL SYSTEM (FOR DIESEL ENGINE (2.9 CRDi))



The fuel system should be bled to remove air as described in the illustration if the fuel supply is exhausted during travel, when the fuel filter is replaced, or if the vehicle is not used for a long time.

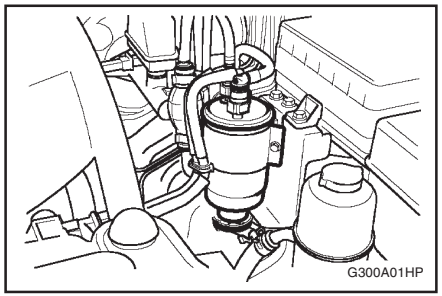
1. Pump the hand prime pump with your hand for one minute(about 20~30 times).
2. Turn the ignition key to the "START" position and release it 2~3 times shortly until the engine starts.

NOTE:

Do not hold the ignition key in the "START" position for more than 15 seconds. Doing so may cause the engine and the injection pump to damage.

G300B01HP-GAT

REMOVAL OF WATER FROM THE FUEL FILTER (FOR DIESEL ENGINE (2.9 CRDi))



If the fuel filter warning lamp illuminates during driving, it indicates that water has accumulated in the fuel filter. If this occurs, remove the water as described below.

1. Loosen the drain plug at the bottom of the fuel filter.
2. Tighten the drain plug when water no longer comes out.
3. Check to be sure that the warning lamp illuminates when the ignition key is turned to "ON", and that it goes off when the engine is started.
   If in doubt, consult your nearest authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

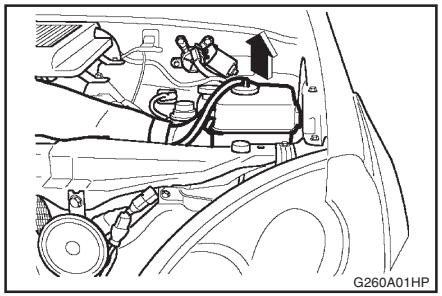
WARNING:

Be sure to carefully wipe away any water drained out in this manner, because the fuel mixed in the water might be ignited and result in a fire.

G260A01HP-GAT

REPLACING HEADLIGHT BULBS

Before attempting to replace a headlight bulb, be sure the switch is turned to the "OFF" position.
The next paragraph shows how to reach the headlight bulbs so they may be changed. Be sure to replace the burned-out bulb with one of the same number and wattage rating.



NOTE:

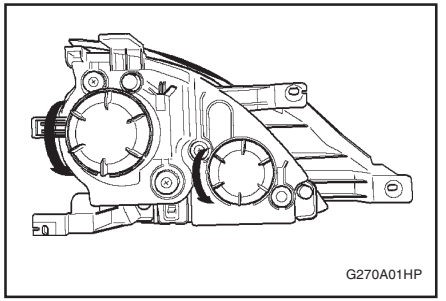
The driver's side headlight bulb can be changed after lifting the engine coolant reservoir by hand.

CAUTION:

Keep the lamps out of contact with petroleum product, such as oil, gasoline, etc.

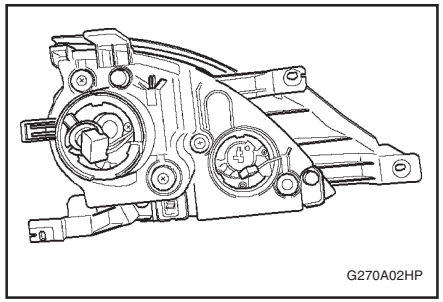
G270A02Y-AAT

HEADLIGHT BULB



Replacement instructions:

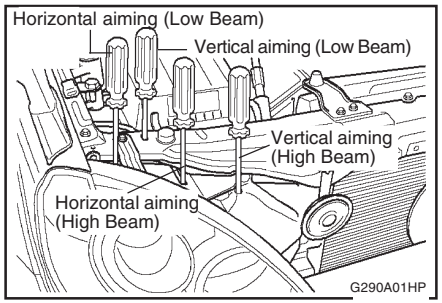
1. Allow the bulb to cool. Wear eye protection.
2. Always grasp the bulb by its plastic base, avoid touching the glass.
3. Disconnect the power cord from the bulb base in the back of the headlight.
4. Push the bulb spring for removing the headlight bulb.
5. Remove the protective cap from the replacement bulb and install the new bulb by matching the plastic base with the headlight hole. Retighten the bulb spring and reconnect the power cord.
6. Use the protective cap and carton to dispose of the old bulb.
7. Check for proper headlight aim.


G270A02HP

WARNING:
The halogen bulb contains gas under pressure and if impacted could shatter, resulting in flying fragments. Always wear eye protection when servicing the bulb. Protect the bulb against abrasions or scratches and against liquids when lighted. Turn the bulb on only when installing in a headlight. Replace the headlight if damaged or cracked. Keep the bulb out of the reach of children and dispose of the used bulb with care.

G290A01HP-GAT

HEADLIGHT AIMING ADJUSTMENT



G290A01HP

Before performing aiming adjustment, make sure of the following.

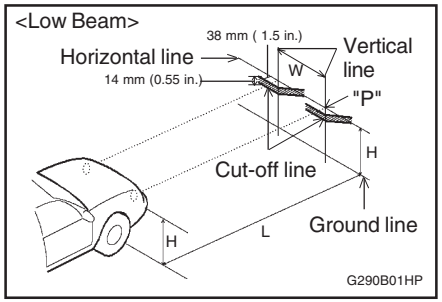
1. Keep all tires inflated to the correct pressure.
2. Place the vehicle on level ground and press the front bumper & rear bumper down several times. Place vehicle at a distance of 3m (118.1 in.) from the test wall.
3. See that the vehicle is unloaded (except for full levels of coolant, engine oil and fuel, and spare tire, jack, and tools). Have the driver or equivalent weight placed in driver's seat.
4. Clean the headlight lens and turn on the headlight.
5. Open the hood.
6. Draw the vertical line (through the center of each headlight) and the horizontal line (through the center of each headlight) on the aiming screen.
   (1) Horizontal line dimension from ground :
   Low Beam : 894 mm (35.1 in.)
   High Beam : 839 mm (33 in.)
   (2) Distance between each vertical line :
   Low Beam : 1,316 mm (51.8 in.)
   High Beam : 1,076 mm (42.4 in.)

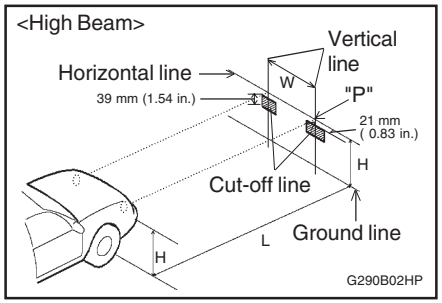
And then, draw a parallel line at 38 mm (1.50 in.) under the horizontal line in case of adjusting the low beam or at 21 mm (0.83 in.) under the horizontal line in case of adjusting the high beam.

7. Adjust each cut-off line of the low beam to the parallel line with a phillips screwdriver - VERTICAL AIMING.
8. Adjust each cut-off line of the low beam to the each vertical line with a phillips screwdriver - HORIZONTAL AIMING.

G290B01HP-GAT

Adjustment After Headlight Assembly Replacement





If the vehicle has had front body repair and the headlight assembly has been replaced, the headlight aiming should be checked using an aiming screen as shown in the illustration. Turn on the headlight switch. (Low Beam or High Beam Position).

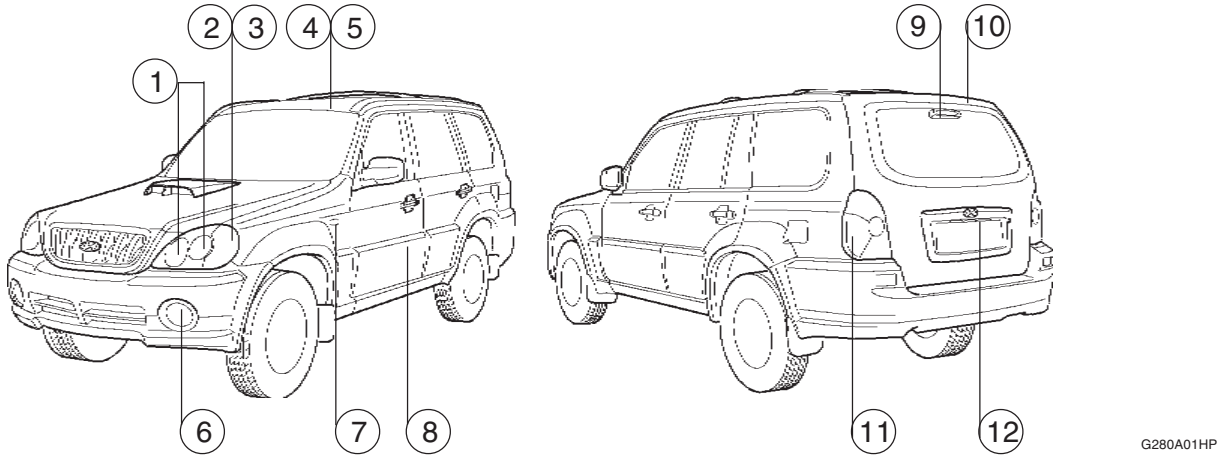
1. Adjust headlights so that main axis of light is parallel to center line of the body and is aligned with point "P" shown in the illustration.
2. Dotted lines in the illustration show the center of headlights.

"H"
Horizontal center line of headlights from ground :
Low Beam : 894 mm (35.1 in.)
High Beam : 839 mm (33 in.)

"W"
Distance between each headlight center :
Low Beam : 1,316 mm (51.8 in.)
High Beam : 1,076 mm (42.4 in.)

"L"
Distance between the headlights and the wall that the lights are tested against :
Low Beam : 3,000 mm (118.11 in.)
High Beam : 3,000 mm (118.11in.)

G280A01HP-GAT



G280A01HP

No.	Part Name	Wattage	No.	Part Name	Wattage
1	Head Light (Low/High)	55/55	9	High Mounted Rear Stop Light (If installed)	16
2	Turn Signal Light	21	10	Luggage Compartment Light	40
3	Front Position Light	5	11	Rear Combination Light	
4	Room Light	10		Stop/Tail Light	21/5
5	Map Light	8		Turn Signal Light	21
6	Front Fog Light	55		Back-up Light	21
7	Side Repeater	5		Rear Fog Light (If installed)	21
8	Front Door Edge Warning Light (If installed)	5	12	License Plate Light	5

7. EMISSION CONTROL SYSTEMS

H010A01A-GAT

EMISSION CONTROL SYSTEMS (If installed)

Your Hyundai is equipped with an emission control system to meet all requirements of the Emission prohibition rules of your province. There are three emission control systems which are as follows.

(1) Crankcase emission control system (For a Gasoline Engine)
(2) Evaporative emission control system (For a Gasoline Engine)
(3) Exhaust emission control system

In order to assure the proper function of the emission control systems, it is recommended that you have your car inspected and maintained by an authorized Hyundai dealer in accordance with the maintenance schedule in this manual.

H010B01A-AAT

1. Crankcase Emission Control System ; For a Gasoline Engine

The Positive Crankcase Ventilation System is employed to prevent air pollution caused by blow-by gases being emitted from the crankcase. This system supplies fresh filtered air to the crankcase through the air intake hose. Inside the crankcase, which the fresh air mixes with blow-by gases, which then pass through the PCV valve into the induction system.

H010C02Y-GAT

2. Evaporative Emission Control System; For a Gasoline Engine

The Evaporative Emission Control System is designed to prevent fuel vapors from escaping into the atmosphere.

Canister

While the engine is inoperative, fuel vapors generated inside the fuel tank are absorbed and stored in the canister. When the engine is running, the fuel vapors absorbed in the canister are drawn into the induction system through the purge control solenoid valve.

Purge Control Solenoid Valve

The purge control solenoid valve is controlled by the ECM; when the engine coolant temperature is low, and during idling, it closes, so that evaporated fuel is not taken into the surge tank. After engine warm-up, during ordinary driving, it opens so as to introduce evaporated fuel to the surge tank.

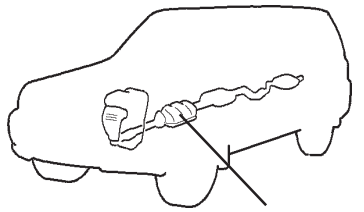
H010D01A-AAT

3. Exhaust Emission Control System

The Exhaust Emission Control System is a highly effective system which controls exhaust emissions while maintaining good vehicle performace.

H020A01A-AAT

CATALYTIC CONVERTER ; For a Gasoline Engine



H020A01HP

All Hyundai vehicles are equipped with a monolith type three-way catalytic converter to reduce the carbon monoxide, hydrocarbons and nitrogen oxides contained in the exhaust gas. Exhaust gases passing through the catalytic converter may cause it to operate at a very high temperature. The introduction of large amounts of unburned gasoline into the exhaust may cause the catalytic converter to overheat and create a fire hazard. This risk may be reduced by observing the following:

WARNING:

- **Use unleaded fuel only.**
- **Maintain the engine in good operating condition. Extremely high catalytic converter temperatures can result from improper operation of the electrical, ignition or multiport electronic fuel injection.**
- **If your engine stalls, pings, knocks, or is hard to start, have your Hyundai dealer inspect and repair the problem as soon as possible.**
- **Avoid driving with a very low fuel level. Running out of gasoline may cause the engine to misfire and result in damage to the catalytic converter.**
- **Avoid idling the engine for periods longer than 10 minutes.**
- **The vehicle should not be pushed or pulled to get started. This may cause the catalytic converter to overheat and create a fire hazard.**
- **Do not touch the catalytic converter or any other part of the exhaust system while the catalytic converter is hot. Shut off the engine, wait for at least one hour before touching the catalytic converter or any other part of the exhaust system.**
- **Remember that your Hyundai dealer is your best source of assistance.**
- **Do not stop your Hyundai over any combustible material such as grass, paper, leaves or rags. These materials might contact the hot catalytic converter and a fire might result.**

H020D01S-GAT

CATALYTIC CONVERTER

; For a Diesel Engine (If installed)

All Hyundai vehicles are equipped with oxidation type catalytic converter to reduce the carbon monoxide, hydrocarbons and particulate contained in the exhaust gas.

H020C01HP-GAT

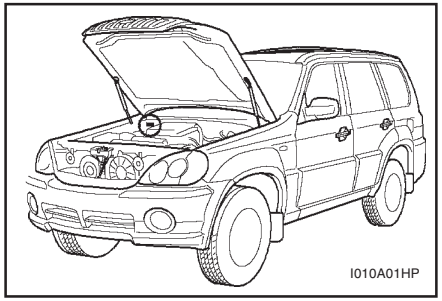
EGR SYSTEM ; For a Diesel Engine (If installed)

This system helps control oxides of nitrogen by recirculating a part of the exhaust gas into the engine, there by reducing cylinder combustion temperature.
This system can be reduced Nox of Emission used by EGR.

8. CONSUMER INFORMATION

I010A01A-GAT

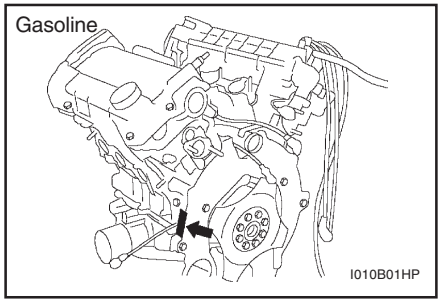
VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION NUMBER (VIN)

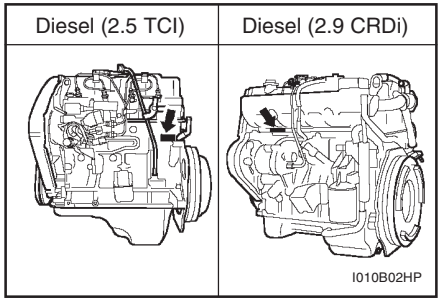


The vehicle identification number (VIN) is the number used in registering your car and in all legal matters pertaining to its ownership, etc.
It can be found on the identification plate attached to the engine side of the firewall between the engine and passenger compartment.

I010B01S-GAT

Engine Number





The engine number is stamped on the engine block as shown in the drawing.

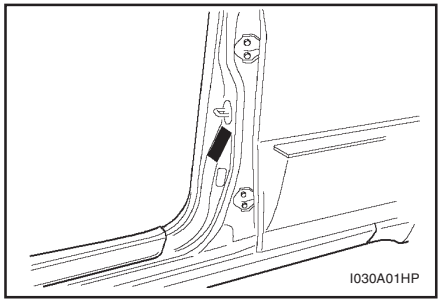
I020A01A-AAT

TIRE INFORMATION

The tires supplied on your new Hyundai are chosen to provide the best performance for normal driving.

I030A01HP-GAT

RECOMMENDED INFLATION PRESSURES



The tire label located on the driver's side of the center pillar outer panel gives the tire pressures recommended for your vehicle.

RIM SIZE	TIRE SIZE	PRESSURE, kPa (PSI)			
		NORMAL LOAD		MAXIMUM LOAD	
		FRONT	REAR	FRONT	REAR
6.0Jx15	P235/75R15	200 (29)	200 (29)	200 (29)	220(32)
7.0Jx16	P255/65R16	200 (29)	200 (29)	200 (29)	220(32)

These pressures were chosen to provide the most satisfactory combination of ride comfort, tire wear and stability under normal conditions. Tire pressures should be checked monthly at least. Proper tire inflation pressures should be maintained for these reasons:

- o Lower-than-recommended tire pressures cause uneven tread wear and poor handling.
- o Higher-than-recommended tire pressures increase the chance of damage from impacts and cause uneven tread wear.

CAUTION:

Always observe the following:

- **o Check pressures when the tires are cold. That is, after the car has been parked for at least three hours and hasn't been driven more than 1.6 km or one mile since starting up.**
- **o Check the pressure of your spare tire each time you check the pressure of other tires.**
- **o Never overload your car. Be especially careful about overloading if you equip your car with a luggage rack or car top carrier.**

I040A02S-GAT

SNOW TIRES

If you equip your car with snow tires, they should be the same size and have the same load capacity as the original tires. Snow tires should be installed on all four wheels; otherwise, poor handling may result.

Snow tires should carry 28 kPa (4 psi) more air pressure than the pressure recommended for the standard tires on the tire label on the driver's door edge, or up to the maximum pressure shown on the tire sidewall whichever is less.

Do not drive faster than 120 km/h (75 mph) when your car is equipped with snow tires.

I050A01HP-AAT

TIRE CHAINS

Tire chains should be installed on the rear wheels. Be sure that the chains are installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

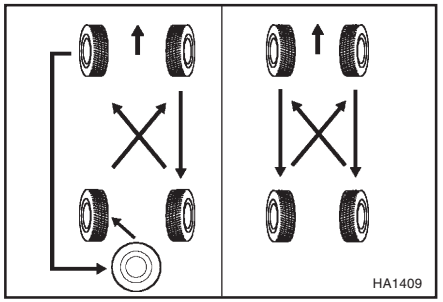
To minimize tire and chain wear, do not continue to use tire chains when they are no longer needed.

WARNING:

When driving on roads covered with snow or ice, drive at less than 30 km/h (20 mph).

I060A01HP-GAT

TIRE ROTATION



Tires should be rotated every 5,000 km (3,000 miles). If you notice that tires are wearing unevenly between rotations, have the car checked by a Hyundai dealer so the cause may be corrected.

After rotating, adjust the tire pressures and be sure to check wheel nut torque.

WARNING:

Do not mix bias-ply and radial-ply tires under any circumstances. This may cause dangerous handling characteristics that may cause death, serious injury, or property damage.

I070A01A-AAT

TIRE BALANCING

A tire that is out of balance may affect handling and tire wear. The tires on your Hyundai were balanced before the car was delivered but may need balancing again during the years you own the car.
Whenever a tire is dismounted for repair, it should be rebalanced before being reinstalled on the car.

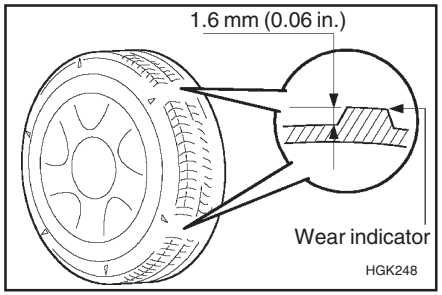
I080A01A-AAT

TIRE TRACTION

Tire traction can be reduced if you drive on worn tires, tires that are improperly inflated or on slippery road surfaces. Tires should be replaced when tread wear indicators appear. To reduce the possibility of losing control, slow down whenever there is rain, snow or ice on the road.

I090A01Y-GAT

WHEN TO REPLACE TIRES



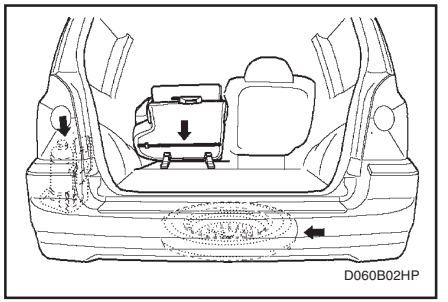
The original tires on your car have tread wear indicators. The tread wear indicators appear when the tread depth is 1.6 mm (0.06 in.). The tire should be replaced when these appear as a solid bar across two or more grooves of the tread. Always replace your tires with those of the recommended size. If you change wheels, the new wheel's rim width and offset must meet Hyundai specifications.

WARNING:

- **Driving on worn-out tires is dangerous! Worn-out tires can cause loss of braking effectiveness, steering control and traction. When replacing tires, never mix radial and bias-ply tires on the same car. If you replace radial tires with bias-ply tires, they must be installed in sets of four.**
- **Using tires and wheels of other than the recommended sizes may cause unusual handling characteristics that may cause death, serious injury, or property damage.**

I100A01HP-AAT

SPARE TIRE AND TOOLS



Your Hyundai is delivered with the following:

Spare tire and wheel
Wrench
Jack
Jack handle (Spare Wheel Rod)

9. VEHICLE SPECIFICATIONS

J010A01HP-GAT
MEASUREMENT

mm (in.)

Overall length		4710 (185.4)
Overall width		1860 (73.2)
Overall height		1795 (70.6)
Wheel base		2750 (108.2)
Wheel tread	Front	1530 (60.2)
	Rear	1530 (60.2)

J020A01HP-GAT
POWER STEERING

Type	Ball and nut, torsion bar type (Integral type)
Wheel free play	0 ~ 30 mm (0 ~ 1.18 in.)
Oil pump type	Vane type

J060A01Y-GAT
FUEL SYSTEM

Fuel tank capacity	75 liter

J030A01HP-GAT
TIRE

Standard	235/75 R15
Option	255/65 R16
Spare	Full Size

J040A02HP-GAT
ELECTRICAL

ITEM	GASOLINE	DIESEL	
		2.5 TCI	2.9 CRDi
Battery	MF 68 AH	MF 90 AH	MF 100 AH
Alternator	120 A (13.5 V)	90 A (12 V)	110 A (12 V)

J050A02HP-GAT
BRAKE

Type		Dual hydraulic with brake booster
Front brake type		Ventilated disc
Rear brake type	E.C only	Disc type
	Except E.C	Disc type (with ABS)
		Drum type (without ABS)
Parking brake		Cable operated on rear wheel

J070A02HP-GAT

ENGINE

ITEMS		GASOLINE	DIESEL	
		3.5 V6	2.5 TCI	2.9 CRDi
Engine Type		6-Cyl., V-type DOHC	4-Cyl., In-line SOHC	4-Cyl., In-line DOHC
Bore x Stroke		93.0 x 85.8	91.1 x 95	97.1 x 98
Displacement (cc)		3496	2476	2902
Firing order		1 - 2 - 3 - 4 - 5 - 6	1 - 3 - 4 - 2	←
Valve clearance (warm engine)	Cold	Auto lash	0.15	Auto lash
	Hot	Auto lash	0.25	Auto lash
Spark plug	Unleaded*	NGK: PFR5N-11 CHAMPION: RC10PYPB4	-	-
	Leaded	NGK: BKR5ES CHAMPION: RC10YC	-	-
Spark plug gap	Unleaded	1.0 ~ 1.1 mm (0.039 ~ 0.043 in.)	-	-
	Leaded	0.7 ~ 0.8 mm (0.028 ~ 0.032 in.)	-	-
Idle speed (rpm)		800	750 ± 100	800 ± 100
Injection (or Ignition) timing		BTDC 5° ± 2°	ATDC 7° ± 1°	Automatically Adjusted

*: Platinum coated

J080A05HP-GAT

LUBRICATION CHART

Item	Oil & Grease Standard			Q'ty (liter)
Engine oil (Gasoline)	E.C only	API SG, SG/CD, SH or SH/CD	SAE 20W-40, 20W-50 [ABOVE -10°C (14°F)] SAE 15W-40, 15W-50 [ABOVE -15°C (5°F)] SAE 10W-30 [-25°C ~ 40°C(-13°F ~ 104°F)] SAE 10W-40, 10W-50 [ABOVE -25°C(-13°F)]	Drain and refill (With oil filter):4.3
	Except E.C	API SE or ABOVE	SAE 5W-20 [BELOW -10°C(14°F)] *1, *2 SAE 5W-30 [BELOW 10°C(50°F)] *1 SAE 5W-40 [BELOW 20°C(68°F)] *1	
Engine oil (Diesel (2.5 TCI))	API CF-4 or ABOVE, ACEA B2 or B3		SAE #30 [ABOVE 0°C(32°F)] SAE 20W-40 [ABOVE -10°C(14°F)] SAE 15W-40 [ABOVE -15°C(5°F)] SAE 10W-30 [-20°C ~ 40°C (-4°F ~ 104°F)] SAE 5W-30 [-25°C ~10°C (-13°F ~ 50°F)] SAE 0W-30 [BELOW 10°C(50°F)] *1	Drain and refill (With oil filter) : 6.5
Engine oil (Diesel (2.9 CRDi))	API CF-4 or ABOVE, ACEA B4 or ABOVE		SAE 40 [0°C ~ 40°C(32°F ~ 104°F)] SAE 30 [0°C ~ 30°C(32°F ~ 86°F)] SAE 20W-20 [-10°C ~ 20°C(14°F ~ 68°F)] SAE 10W-30 [-20°C ~ 30°C(-4°F ~ 86°F)] SAE 5W-30 [-25°C ~ 30°C(-13°F ~ 86°F)]	Drain and refill (With oil filter) : 7.1
	*1. Restricted by driving condition and dealing area			
	*2. Not recommended for sustained high speed vehicle operation			
Engine oil consumption	Normal driving condition			MAX. 1L /1500 Km
	Severe driving condition			MAX. 1L /1000 Km

J080A05HP-GAT

LUBRICATION CHART

Item		Oil & Grease Standard	Q'ty (liter)
Transmission fluid	Manual	HYUNDAI GENUINE PARTS MTF 75W/90 (API GL-4)	2.5 (2.5 TCI), 3.2 (2.9 CRDi or 3.5 V6)
	Auto	DEXRON-II, DEXRON-III	8.2 (2.5 TCI), 11.8 (2.9 CRDi), 10.5 (3.5 V6)
Transfer case oil		ATF DEXRON-III	1.42
Front axle gear oil		HYPOID GEAR OIL API GL-5 or HIGHER,	Part-time 4WD:1.8
		SAE 80W[BELOW -30°C(-22°F)]/90W[ABOVE -30°C(-22°F)]	Full-time 4WD: 1.3
Rear axle gear oil	With LSD	MITSUBISHI GENUINE GEAR OIL PART NO. 8149630EX or CASTROL HYPOY LS(2.5 TCI)	NO.7:2.6, NO.7.5:2.8
		MOBIL INFILREX 33 (2.9 CRDi or 3.5 V6)	
	Without LSD	HYPOID GEAR OIL API GL-5 or HIGHER, SAE 80W[BELOW -30°C(-22°F)]/90W[ABOVE -30°C(-22°F)]	
Coolant		Ethylene glycol base for aluminum radiator	8(2.5 TCI), 9(2.9 CRDi), 11(3.5 V6)
Power steering gear oil		PSF-3 TYPE FLUID	1.3
Brakes and clutch fluid		DOT 3, DOT 4 or Equivalent	As required

10. INDEX

A

Air bag ..... 1-29 ~ 1-32
Air Cleaner Filter 6-10
Air Conditioning
  Care 6-14
  Operation 1-72, 6-15
  Switch 1-71
Air Filter (For Evaporator and Blower Unit) 1-78, 6-15
Antenna 1-98
Ashtray 1-52
Audio Fault Code 1-95
Automatic Heating and Cooling Control System ..... 1-73 ~ 1-77

B

Battery 2-14, 6-18
Bi-Level Heating 1-69
Brake
  Anti-lock system 2-8
  Checking the brakes 6-13
  Fluid 6-13
  Pedal clearance 6-17
  Pedal free-play 6-17
  Practices 2-12
Breaking-In your New Hyundai 1-2

C

Care of Cassette Tapes 1-96
Care of Disc 1-96
Cassette Tape Player Operation (H240) ..... 1-84 ~ 1-85
Cassette Tape Player Operation (H280) ..... 1-89 ~ 1-90
Catalytic Converte 7-1
CD Auto changer (H280) ..... 1-59, 1-93 ~ 1-94
Child Restraint System ..... 1-23 ~ 1-27
Child-Protector Rear Door Lock 1-7
Cigarette Lighter 1-51
Clock 1-50
Clutch
  Checking fluid 6-14
  Pedal free-play 6-17
Combination Light
  Headlight flasher 1-48
  Headlight switch 1-48
  High-beam switch 1-48
  Lane change signal 1-47
  Parking light auto cut 1-48
  Turn signal operation 1-47
Compact Disc Player Operation (H280) ..... 1-91 ~ 1-92
Cooling Fans 6-20
Corrosion protection
  Cleaning the interior 4-3
  Protecting your Hyundai from corrosion 4-1
  Washing and waxing 4-2
Cruise Control ..... 1-64 ~ 1-66

INDEX

D

Defrosting/Defogging 1-70
Door
  Locking, unlocking front door with a key 1-6
Drink Holder 1-52
Drive Belts 6-15, 6-18
Driving
  Driving for economy 2-13
  Smooth cornering 2-14
  Winter driving 2-14

E

Emission Control System 7-1
Engine
  Before starting the engine 2-2
  Compartment (3.5 V6) 6-1
  Compartment (2.5 TCI) 6-2
  Compartment (2.9 CRDi) 6-3
  Coolant 6-7
  Coolant temperature gauge 1-42
  If the engine overheats 3-2
  Number 8-1
  Oil 6-4
  Starting 2-3
Engine Exhaust Can Be Dangerous 2-1

F

Fan Speed Control 1-66, 1-75
Fog Light
  Front 1-47
  Rear 1-47
Front Seats
  Adjustable front seats 1-11
  Adjustable headrests 1-12
  Adjusting seat forward and rearward 1-11
  Adjusting seatback angle 1-11
Fuel
  Capacity 9-1
  Gauge 1-42
  Unleaded gasoline 1-1
Fuel Filler Lid
  Remote release 1-61
Full-time 4WD Operation ..... 2-10 ~ 2-12
Fuses 6-18

G

General Checks 6-4
Glove Box 1-55

H

Hazard Warning System 1-50
Headlight Aiming Adjustment 6-24
Headlight Leveling Device System 1-64
Heating and Ventilation
  Air flow control ..... 1-67 ~ 1-68, 1-76
  Temperature control 1-68

INDEX

High-Mounted Rear Stoplight 1-61
Hood Release 1-62
Horn 1-63

I

Ignition Switch 2-2
Immobilizer System ..... 1-3 ~ 1-6
  Limp Home Procedures ..... 1-3 ~ 1-4, 1-5 ~ 1-6
  Key 1-3, 1-4
Instrument Cluster and Indicator ..... 1-34 ~ 1-37
Instrument Panel Light Control (Rheostat) 1-51
Instruments and Controls 1-33
Intermittent Wiper 1-49

J

Jump Starting 3-1

K

Key 1-2
  If you lose your keys 3-10
  Positions 2-2

L

Light Bulbs Replacement 6-23
Limited-Slip Differential 2-12
Luggage Compartment
  Cargo Security Screen 1-60
  Light 1-59
  Net 1-59

M

Maintenance Intervals
  Explanation of scheduled maintenance items ..... 5-7 ~ 5-8
  Maintenance under severe usage conditions 5-6
  Scheduled maintenance ..... 5-2 ~ 5-5
  Service requirements 5-1
Mirrors
  Day-night inside rearview ..... 1-57 ~ 1-58
  Outside rear view 1-55
Multimeter ..... 1-44 ~ 1-46
  Altimeter 1-45
  Azimuth compass 1-44
  Barometer 1-46
  Digital Clock 1-46
  Relative altimeter 1-45

O

Odometer 1-43

P

Parking Brake 1-58
Part-time 4WD Operation ..... 2-9 ~ 2-10
Power Driver's Seat 1-13

INDEX

Power Outlet 1-51
Power Steering Fluid Level 6-20

R

Rear Seat Warning 1-18
Rear Window Defroster Switch 1-50
Roof Rack 1-60

S

Seat Belts
- 3-Point system ..... 1-20 ~ 1-21
- 2-Point Static Type 1-22
- Adjusting your seat belt 1-21
- Care of seat belts 1-19
- Precautions 1-18
- Pretensioner Seat Belt 1-27

Seat Warmer 1-14
Second Seat
- Adjustable Headrests 1-15
- Folding Rear Seatback and Seat Cushion ..... 1-15 ~ 1-16

Side Under View Mirror 1-57
Sound
- Brake Pad Wear Warning Sound 1-42

Spark Plugs 6-10
Speedometer 1-42
Starting Procedure 2-3
Steering Wheel
- Free play 6-17

Steering Wheel Tilt Lever 1-63
Stereo Radio Operation (H240, H280) ..... 1-81 ~ 1-83, 1-86 ~ 1-88
Stereo Sound System ..... 1-79 ~ 1-80
Sun roof ..... 1-53 ~ 1-54
Sun visor 1-62
Sunshade 1-53

T

Tachometer 1-43
Tail Gate 1-58
Theft-Alarm system ..... 1-8 ~ 1-10
Third Seat
- Adjusting Seatback Angle 1-16
- Folding Rear Seatback and seat cushion 1-18
- To get in and out of the third seat 1-17

Tires
- Balancing 8-2
- Chains 8-2
- Changing a flat tire ..... 3-4 ~ 3-8
- If you have a flat tire 3-4
- Information 8-1
- Pressure 8-1
- Replacement 8-3
- Rotation 8-2
- Snow tires 8-2
- Spare tire 3-3
- Traction 8-2

Towing
A trailer (or vehicle) ..... 2-16 ~ 2-18
Emergency 3-10
If your car must be towed 3-9
Transmission
Automatic ..... 2-6 ~ 2-8
Automatic transmission fluid checking 6-12
Manual ..... 2-4 ~ 2-5
Manual transmission oil checking 6-11
Trip Odometer 1-41

U
Under Tray 1-14

V
Vehicle Identification Number 8-1
Vehicle Specifications ..... 9-1 ~ 9-3

W
Warning Lights ..... 1-38 ~ 1-42
Windows
Power 1-10
Windshield Wiper and Washer 1-48
Rear Wiper and Washer Switch 1-49
Windshield Wiper Blades 6-11

A000A01A-EAT

This Owner's Manual should be considered as a part of the car and remain with it when it is sold for the use of the next owner.

OWNER I.D.

ORIGINAL:
ADDRESS:
NAME:
STREET:
TOWN:
COUNTRY:
P.CODE:

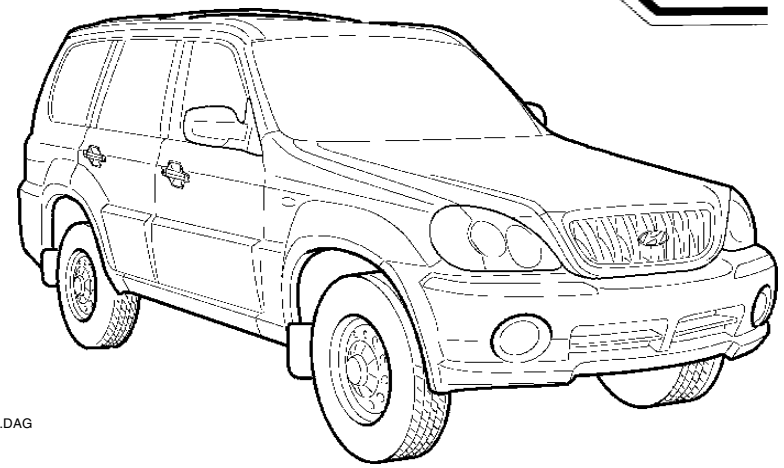
DATE OF SALE: _____

SUBSEQUENT:
ADDRESS:
NAME:
STREET:
TOWN:
COUNTRY:
P.CODE:

TRANSFER DATE: _____

HYUNDAI

Terracan



A030A01HP.DAG

YA020A1-E

OWNER'S MANUAL

Operation

Maintenance

Specifications

The information in this Owner's Manual is current at the time of publication. However, the right to amend specifications without notice or obligation to incorporate such amendments into vehicles already produced is reserved.

This manual applies to all models and includes descriptions and explanations of optional as well as standard equipment. As a result, some of the equipment operating descriptions referred to may not apply to the particular vehicle with which this manual is supplied.

Please refer to the nearest franchised Hyundai dealer for information regarding current standard and optional equipment levels.

DA030A1-E

Responsibilty For Maintenance

It is the responsibility of the vehicle owner/driver to ensure that all routine maintenance services are undertaken in line with the recommendations specified in Section 5 of this manual. In addition, in order to ensure continued validity of the new vehicle warranty and safe operation of the vehicle, non scheduled maintenance/running repairs should be undertaken at the earliest available opportunity.

Under severe operating conditions, more frequent maintenance is required. Details of the maintenance schedule for such conditions are also given in section 5.

It is recommended that all maintenance operations and repairs are entrusted to a franchised Hyundai dealer to ensure that the latest repair methods, specialized tooling and genuine Hyundai parts are used to ensure the continued reliability and safety of the vehicle.

A040A02P-EAT

FOREWORD

Hyundai Motor Company wish to take this opportunity to thank you for purchasing a Hyundai product and to welcome you to the ever increasing number of discriminating motorists who drive Hyundai vehicles. The advanced engineering and construction methods employed during both design and production of the Hyundai marque are something of which we are proud, and this commitment to providing a high quality product is supported by a comprehensive after sales and warranty service of which we are equally proud.

This owner's manual will introduce the operating and maintenance requirements for the vehicle and it is recommended that it is carefully read to ensure that the maximum performance and durability along with safe and satisfactory operation are obtained. The recommended routine maintenance servicing along with any running repairs that may be required should be entrusted to a franchised Hyundai dealer to ensure that only the latest methods and genuine Hyundai replacement parts are used for the continued reliability, safety and performance of the vehicle.

Should any question or query exist regarding any aspect of your Hyundai please contact the nearest Hyundai dealer who will be only too pleased to assist wherever possible.

Note: This owners manual should be considered as part of the vehicle and should be kept in the vehicle at all times for ease of reference.

In the event of the vehicle being sold please ensure that this manual is left in the vehicle for the reference of the new owner.

CAUTION: Severe engine and transmission damage may result from the use of poor quality fuels and lubricants that do not meet Hyundai specifications. You must always use high quality fuels and lubricants that meet the specifications listed on Page 9-3 in the Vehicle Specifications section of the Owner's Manual.

Copyright 2003 Hyundai Motor Company. All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in any retrieval system or transmitted in any form or by any means without the prior written permission of Hyundai Motor Company.

YA050A1-E

TABLE OF CONTENTS

SECTION		PAGE
1.	CONTROLS AND EQUIPMENT	1-1
2.	DRIVING THE HYUNDAI	2-1
3.	IN CASE OF EMERGENCY	3-1
4.	APPEARANCE CARE	4-1
5.	VEHICLE MAINTENANCE REQUIREMENTS	5-1
6.	OWNER MAINTENANCE	6-1
7.	EMISSION CONTROL SYSTEMS	7-1
8.	CONSUMER INFORMATION	8-1
9.	VEHICLE SPECIFICATIONS	9-1
10.	INDEX	10-1

SA040A1-E

CAUTION: MODIFICATIONS TO ORIGINAL VEHICLE SPECIFICATION

Modification to the original vehicle specification may invalidate the manufacturers warranty and may adversely affect the safety and durability of the vehicle.
Components which are subject to modification or are added to the original vehicle specification without the express approval of the manufacturer and result in consequential loss or damage are not covered by the vehicle manufacturers warranty.

SA050A1-E

TWO WAY RADIO INSTALLATION

This vehicle is fitted with electronically controlled fuel injection or other micro processor controlled equipment.
It is possible for incorrectly installed two way radio equipment including mobile telephones to adversely affect these systems.
Before radio equipment of this kind is installed, please contact your Hyundai dealer for recommendation regarding the suitability of the particular radio equipment concerned and the recommended method of installation and equipment location. Incorrectly installed or unsuitable equipment which gives rise to incorrect functioning of or damage to electronic vehicle components will not fall within the scope of the vehicle manufacturers warranty.

A090A01A-AAT

SAFETY AND VEHICLE DAMAGE WARNING

This manual includes information titled as WARNING, CAUTION and NOTE.
These titles indicate the following:

WARNING:
This indicates that a condition may result in harm, serious injury or death to you or other persons if the warning is not heeded. Follow the advice provided with the warning.

CAUTION:
This indicates that a condition may result in damage to your vehicle or its equipment if the caution is not heeded. Follow the advice provided with the caution.

NOTE:
This indicates that interesting or helpful information is being provided.

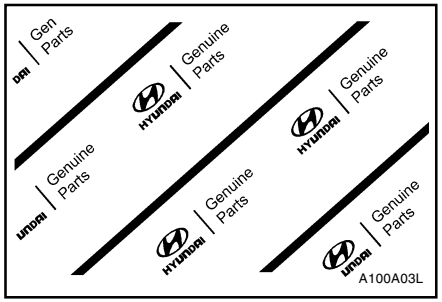
A100A01L-GAT

GUIDE TO HYUNDAI GENUINE PARTS

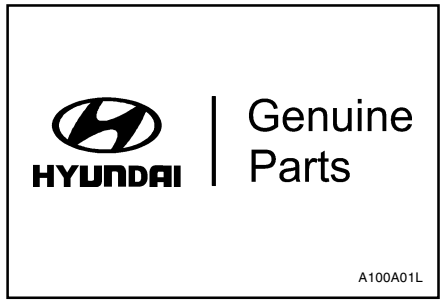
1. **What are Hyundai Genuine Parts?**
   Hyundai Genuine Parts are the same parts used by Hyundai Motor Company to manufacture vehicles. They are designed and tested for the optimum safety, performance, and reliability to our customers.
2. **Why should you use genuine parts?**
   Hyundai Genuine Parts are engineered and built to meet rigid original manufacturing requirements. Using imitation, counterfeit or used salvage parts are not covered under the Hyundai New Vehicle Limited Warranty or any other Hyundai warranty. In addition, any damage to or failure of Genuine Hyundai Parts caused by the installation or failure of an imitation, counterfeit or used salvage part is not covered by Hyundai Motor Company.
3. **How can you tell if you purchasing Hyundai Genuine Parts?**
   Look for the Hyundai Genuine Parts Logo on the package (see below).

   The export specifications are written in English only.

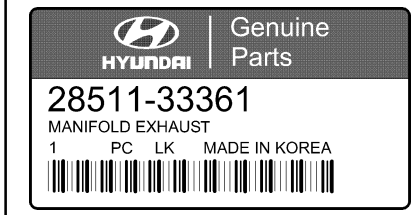
   Hyundai Genuine Parts are only sold through authorized Hyundai Dealership and Service Center.



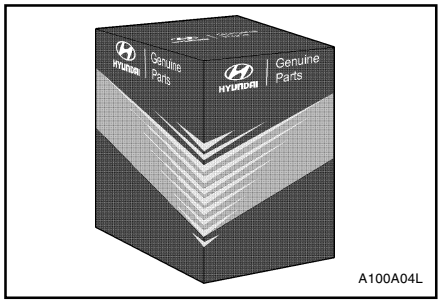
A100A03L



A100A01L



A100A02L



A100A04L

ZB000A1-A

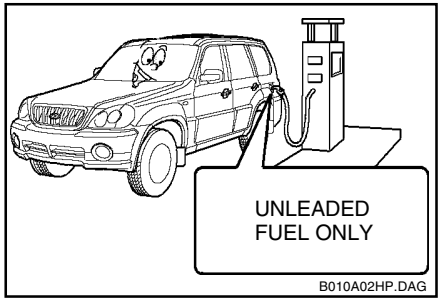
1. CONTROLS AND EQUIPMENT

B010A01HP-EAT

FUEL RECOMMENDATIONS

PETROL ENGINES

THIS VEHICLE MUST ONLY BE OPERATED WITH UNLEADED FUEL.
SERIOUS DAMAGE WILL RESULT FROM THE USE OF LEADED FUEL.



Unleaded fuel with a Research Octane Number (RON) of 91 or higher must be used in this vehicle.
To prevent accidental filling of the fuel tank with leaded fuel, a small diameter filler neck along with a restrictor flap are fitted to ensure that only unleaded fuel pump nozzles may enter the filler neck. However, care must be exercised when refuelling the vehicle tank from jerry cans or by means of a funnel that the fuel being used is unleaded.
The use of leaded fuel in this vehicle will result in irreversible pollution of the catalyst element. Such pollution will prevent correct operation of the catalyst and give rise to increased operating temperatures leading to the catalyst element melting and restricting the exhaust flow along with an increase in exhaust emission levels.

CAUTION:
The vehicle warranty will not extend to damage arising from the use of incorrect fuels.

DIESEL ENGINES

Diesel fuel of 52 to 54 cetane is the correct rating to use in your Hyundai Terracan. If two types of diesel fuel are available, use summer or winter fuel properly according to the following temperature conditions.

- o Above 23°F (-5°C) ... Summer type diesel fuel.
- o Below 23°F (-5°C) ... Winter type diesel fuel.

Watch the fuel level in the tank very carefully : If the engine stops due to fuel failure, the circuits must be completely purged to permit restarting.

CAUTION:
Do not let any petrol or water enter the tank. If this happens, the tank should be completely drained and the fuel lines should all be cleaned out. This will stop the fuel pump from becoming contaminated.

ZB010C1-E

"Alternative fuels"

Fuels which contain methanol or ethanol must not be used.

ZB010D1-E

Operation in Foreign Countries

Drivers of vehicles which are to be operated in foreign countries must satisfy themselves that:

- o The vehicle meets all local regulations with respect to insurance, specifications etc..
- o The correct types and grades of fuel are available for satisfactory operation of the vehicle.

ZB010F2-A

FUELS FOR CLEANER AIR

To help contribute to cleaner air, Hyundai recommends that you use fuels treated with detergent additives, which help to prevent deposit formation in the engine. These fuels will help the engines run cleaner and the Emission Control System performance.

YB020A1-E

BEFORE ENTERING THE VEHICLE

- o Ensure that all windows, mirrors and lamps are clean.
- o Check condition of all tyres.
- o Ensure that no fluid leaks are evident.
- o Ensure that the area around the vehicle is clear before driving off.

YB020B1-E

AFTER ENTERING THE VEHICLE

- o Ensure that all occupants fasten and correctly adjust seat belts.
- o Ensure that seat and headrestraint positions are adjusted for optimum safety, control and comfort.
- o Adjust interior and exterior rear view mirrors.
- o Verify correct operation of lamps, horn and other electrical equipment.
- o Ensure that warning lamps illuminate when ignition is turned on.

NOTE:

Fluid levels such as engine oil, engine coolant, brake and windscreen washer fluid should be checked daily or at each refuelling, whichever occurs sooner.

B020A01FC-EAT

RUNNING IN YOUR NEW HYUNDAI

The longevity and performance of the vehicle are greatly affected by the care exercised during the first 1000 miles of motoring. Because of modern manufacturing techniques, rigid guidelines regarding maximum road speeds have become unnecessary. However, certain precautions should be observed in order to obtain the best possible performance and useful life from the vehicle.

1) Do not race the engine without a load (i.e revving the engine in neutral).
2) During the first 500 miles the maximum engine speed should be restricted to 3000 rpm and gradually increased thereafter.
3) Avoid prolonged constant speed operation. The internal components of the engine will become run-in more quickly if the operation speed is varied during the running in period.
4) Never allow the engine to labour. Use the gearbox freely and avoid large throttle openings when the engine speed is below 1500 rpm.
5) Avoid rapid acceleration and maximum throttle openings.
6) Avoid harsh braking during the first 100 miles of urban motoring or 1000 miles of motorway driving to allow the friction facings of the brake pads and shoes to bed against the discs and drums properly.
7) No trailer towing should be undertaken during the running-in period.

B880A01HP-EAT

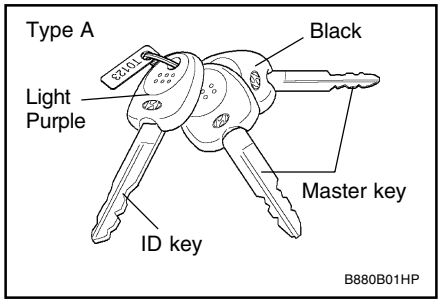
IMMOBILISER SYSTEM

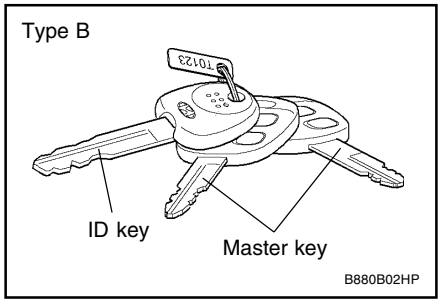
- For Petrol Engine

The immobiliser system is an anti-theft device, designed to deter automobile theft.

B880B01HP-EAT

Keys





For greater convenience, your Hyundai has two types of keys as shown in the illustration.

1) ID key
   This key must be used first in order to register the unique code in the ICM - this will have been carried out prior to you receiving your new vehicle. This ID code will then have been recorded onto the master keys. Both sides of the key have a Hyundai logo.
2) Master key
   This key is for general use. It will open all locks on your vehicle.
   One side of the key has the Hyundai logo and the other side has the "M" symbol.
   If your vehicle is equipped with Theft-alarm system, the master keys with the function of transmitter will be provided. (Type B)

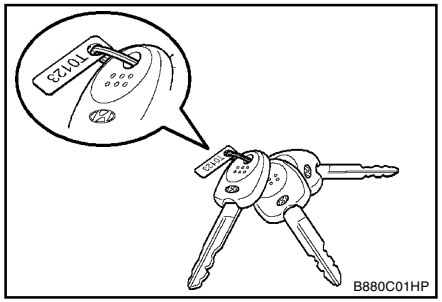
CAUTION:
Don't lose your ID key. Always keep your ID key in a place where you remember. If you don't have ID key, consult your authorized Hyundai dealer.

(3) If you need additional keys or if you should lose your keys, your authorized Hyundai dealer can make new keys if you can supply the key number and ID key.

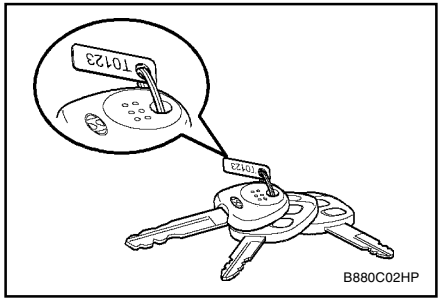
NOTE:
If you make your own duplicate key, you will not be able to cancel the system or start the engine.

B880C01A-GAT

Key Numbers



B880C01HP



B880C02HP

The vehicle key number is recorded upon a metal tag attached to the keys when the vehicle is first delivered to you.

The key number should be recorded and kept in a safe place in case the need to order further keys arises. New keys are available from any Hyundai dealer by quoting the relevant key number.
In the interest of security, the metal tag attached to the keys which bears the key number should be removed from the key ring after you receive your new vehicle. In addition, key numbers cannot be provided by Hyundai for security reasons.
If you need additional keys or if you should lose your keys, your authorized Hyundai dealer can make new keys if you can supply the key number and ID key.

B885A01HP-EAT

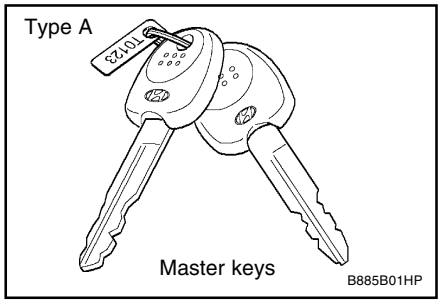
IMMOBILISER SYSTEM

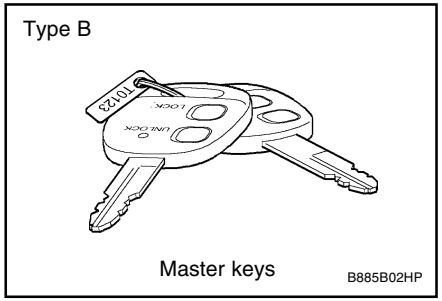
- For Diesel Engine

The immobiliser system is an anti-theft device, designed to deter automobile theft.

B885B01HP-EAT

Keys





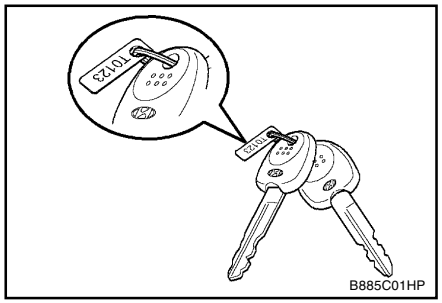
All of the locks fitted to the vehicle are operated by the same key. However, since it is possible to lock the doors without the use of the key, care should be exercised to ensure that the key does not become locked inside the vehicle by mistake. If your vehicle is equipped with Theft-alarm system, the master keys with the function of transmitter will be provided (Type B).

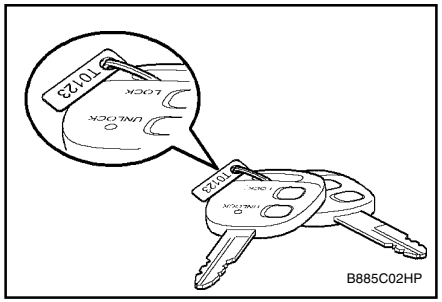
NOTE:

If you make your own duplicate key, you will not be able to cancel the system or start the engine.

B885C01O-GAT

Key Numbers





The vehicle key number is recorded upon a metal tag attached to the keys when the vehicle is first delivered to you.

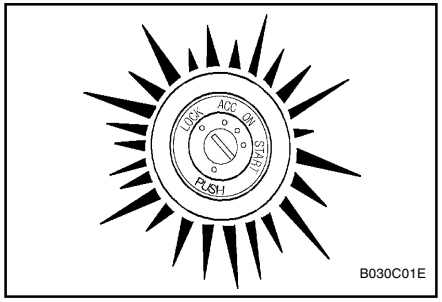
The key number should be recorded and kept in a safe place in case the need to order further keys arises. New keys are available from any Hyundai dealer by quoting the relevant key number.

In the interest of security, the metal tag attached to the keys which bears the key number should be removed from the key ring after you receive your new vehicle. In addition, key numbers cannot be provided by Hyundai for security reasons.

If you need additional keys or if you should lose your keys, your authorized Hyundai dealer can make new keys.

B030C01Y-EAT

ILLUMINATED IGNITION SWITCH (Not all models)



Whenever a door is opened, the ignition switch will be illuminated for your convenience, provided the ignition switch is not in the "ON" position. The light will go off approximately 10 seconds after closing the door or when the ignition switch is turned on.

B040A01A-EAT

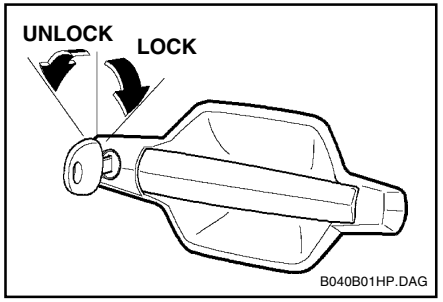
DOOR LOCKS

WARNING:

- **Before you drive away, be sure that all the doors are securely closed. It is also recommended that the child-protector rear door locks are in the 'lock' position so that children cannot open the rear doors from inside the vehicle accidentally.**
- **Before opening the door, always look for and avoid oncoming traffic.**

B040B01A-AAT

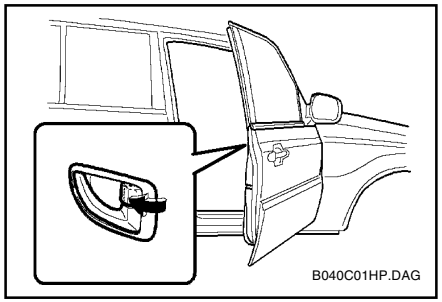
Locking, Unlocking Front Doors With a Key



- The door can be locked or unlocked with a key.
- Lock the door by turning the key toward the front of the vehicle and unlock it by turning the key toward the rear.

B040C02Y-DAT

Locking From the Outside



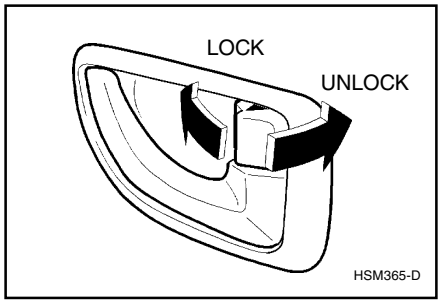
The doors can be locked without a key. To lock the doors, first push the inside lock switch to the "LOCK" position so that the red mark on the switch is not visible, then close the door.
The door will not lock if the key is left in the ignition switch when the front doors are closed. This is normal.

NOTE:

- **When locking the door this way, be careful not to lock the door with the ignition key left in the vehicle.**
- **To help prevent theft, always remove the ignition key, close all windows, and lock all doors when leaving your vehicle unattended.**

B040D01S-AAT

Locking from the Inside



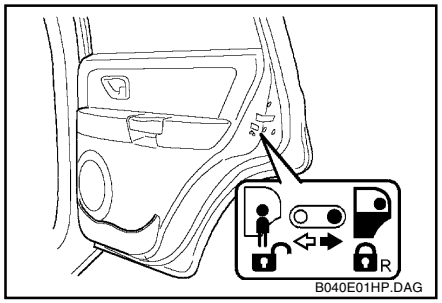
To lock the doors from the inside, simply close the door and push the lock switch to the "LOCK" position. When this is done, neither the outside nor the inside door handles can be used.

NOTE:

When the door is locked, the red mark on the switch is not visible.

SB040F1-E

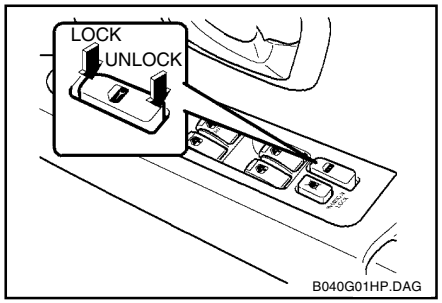
CHILD-PROOF REAR DOOR LOCK



The rear doors are fitted with child proof locks to prevent accidental opening of the doors using the inside door handle, whilst allowing access by means of the outside handle (such as is required in the event of an acccident for example) provided that the door lock button is at the unlocked position. Use of the child proof lock mechanism is recommended when children are carried in the vehicle.
The child proof lock mechanism may be activated by opening the door and moving the lever located by the door latch to the "🔒" position. Move the lever to the opposite direction of "🔓" position when normal door operation is desired.

B040G01HP-AAT

Central Door Locks (Not all models)



The central door locking switch is located on the driver's arm rest. It is operated by depressing the door lock switch. If any door is open when the switch is depressed, the door will remain locked when closed.

NOTE:

- **When pushing the front portion of the driver's door lock switch, all vehicle doors will lock.**
- **When pushing the rear portion of the switch, all vehicle doors will unlock.**
- **The central door locking is operated by turning the key toward the front or rear of the vehicle.**

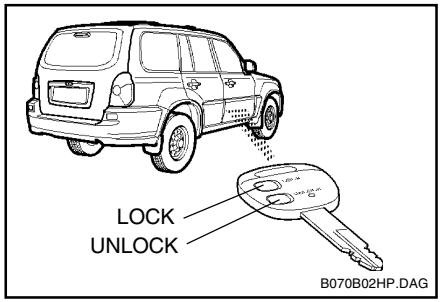
B070A01A-EAT

THEFT-ALARM SYSTEM (Not all models)

This system is designed to provide protection from unauthorized entry into the car. This system is operated in three stages: the first is the "Armed" stage, the second is the "Alarm" stage, and the third is the "Disarmed" stage. If triggered, the system provides an audible alarm with blinking of turn signal lights.

B070B01O-EAT

Armed Stage



Park the car and stop the engine. Arm the system as described below.

1) Remove the ignition key from the ignition switch.
2) Make sure that the bonnet and hatchback door are closed.
3) Lock the doors using the transmitter of the keyless entry system.

After completion of the steps above, the turn signal lights will blink once to indicate that the system is armed

NOTE:

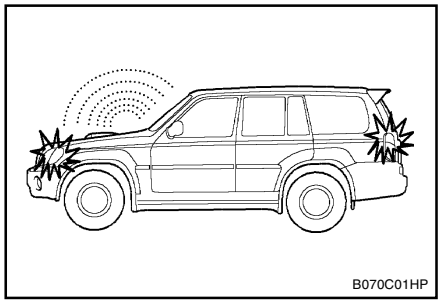
1) If any door, hatchback door or engine bonnet remains open, the system will not be armed.
2) If this happens, rearm the system as described above.

CAUTION:

Do not arm the system until all passengers have left the car. If the system is armed whilst a passenger(s) remains in the car, the alarm may be activated when the remaining passenger(s) leaves the car.

B070C01HP-EAT

Alarm Stage



The alarm will be activated if any of the following occurs whilst the car is parked and the system is armed.

1) A front or rear door is opened without using the transmitter.
2) The hatchback door is opened without using the transmitter.
3) The engine bonnet is opened.

The siren will sound and the turn signal lights will blink continuouly for 27 seconds. To turn off the system, unlock the door or hatchback door with the transmitter.

CAUTION:
Avoid trying to start the engine whilst the system is armed.

B070D01HP-EAT

Disarmed Stage

The system will be disarmed when the driver's or passenger's door is unlocked by depressing the "UNLOCK" button on the transmitter.

After completion of the step above, the turn signal lights will blink twice to indicate that the system is disarmed.

If any door, hatchback door or engine bonnet is not opened within 30 seconds, the system will be rearmed.

CAUTION:
Only the transmitter can disarm the armed stage. If the transmitter does not disarm the system, it is necessary to take the following steps;

1. **Unlock the door with the key, which will cause, the alarm to be activated.**
2. **Insert the key in the ignition key cylinder and turn the ignition key to "ON" position.**
3. **Wait for 30 seconds.**

After completion of the steps above, the system will be disarmed.

B070F01A-EAT

Keyless Entry System (Not all models)

Locking doors

1. Close all doors.
2. Push the "LOCK" button on the transmitter.
3. At the same time all doors lock, the turn signal lights will blink once to indicate that the system is armed.

Unlocking doors

1. Push the "UNLOCK" button on the transmitter.
2. At the same time all doors unlock, the turn signal lights will blink twice to indicate that the system is disarmed.

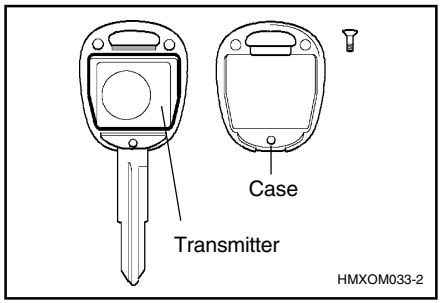
B070E02HP-GAT

Replacing the battery

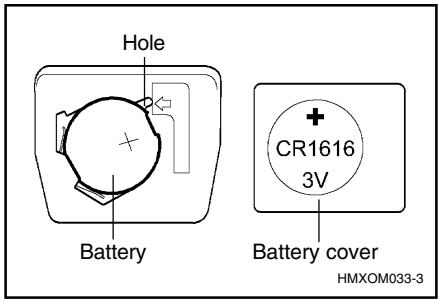
When the transmitter's battery begins to get weak, it may take several pushes on the button to lock or unlock the doors, and the LED will not light. Replace the battery as soon as possible.

Battery type : CR1616

Replacement instructions:



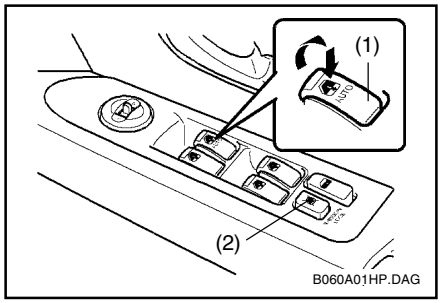
1. Carefully separate the case with a phillips screwdriver.



2. Take off the battery cover after separating the transmitter.
3. Remove the old battery from the transmitter with a blade screwdriver inserted in the hole and note the polarity. Make sure the polarity of the new battery is the same(+side facing up), then insert it in the transmitter.

B060A03L-DAT

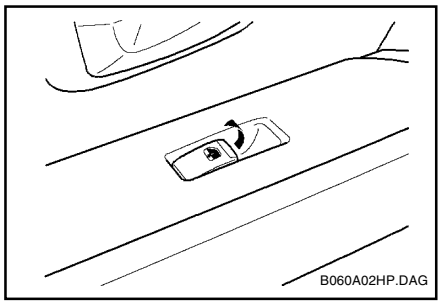
POWER WINDOWS



The power windows operate when the ignition key is in the "ON" position. The main switches are located on the driver's armrest and control the front and rear windows on both sides of the vehicle. The windows may be opened by depressing the appropriate window switch and closed by pulling up the switch. To open the window on the driver's side, press the switch(1) halfway down. The window moves as long as the switch is operated. To fully open the driver's window automatically, press the switch fully down. In automatic operation, the window will fully open even if you let go of the switch. To stop at the desired opening, pull up and release the switch. In order to prevent operation of the passanger front and rear windows, a window lock switch(2) is provided on the armrest of the driver's door. To disable the power windows, press the window lock switch. To

revert to normal operation, press the window lock switch a second time.

NOTE:
The power windows can be operated for 30 seconds after the ignition key is turned to the "ACC" or "LOCK" positions, or removed from the ignition switch.
If the front doors are opened during this 30 second period, the power windows can no longer be operated without the ignition key turned to the "ON" position.



WARNING:
(1) Be careful that someone's head, hands and body are not trapped by a closing window.
(2) Never try to operate the main switch on the driver's door and the individual door window switch in opposing directions at the same time. If this is done, the window will stop and cannot be opened or closed.
(3) Do not leave children alone in the car. Always remove the ignition key for their safety.

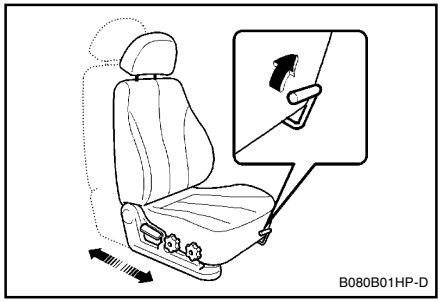
SB070A1-E

FRONT SEAT ADJUSTMENT

WARNING:
Front seat adjustments must not be undertaken whilst the vehicle is in motion. Loss of control of the vehicle may result if seat adjustments are made whilst the vehicle is in motion.

ZB060A8-E

Front Seat Fore/Aft Adjustment

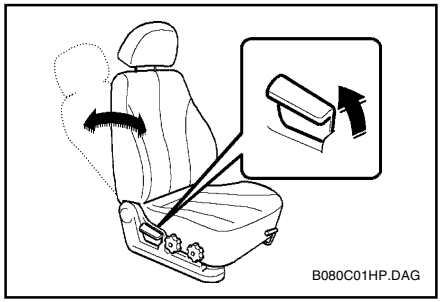


Front seat fore/aft adjustment is facilitated by turning the lever located on the front centre of the seat base and sliding the seat forwards or backwards as required.
When the seat is at the desired position, release the lever and ensure that the locking mechanism is engaged by rocking the seat to and fro.

WARNING:
- **Seat adjustment should not be made whilst the vehicle is in motion since loss of control of the vehicle may occur.**
- **To ensure the seat is locked securely, attempt to move the seat forward or rearward without using the lock release lever.**

ZB060C1-E

Adjusting Seatback Angle



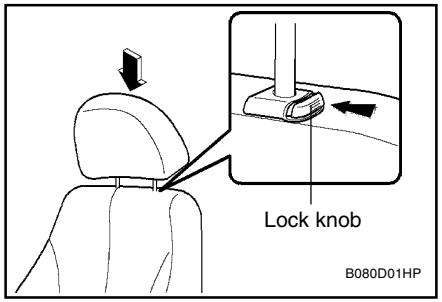
To recline the seatback, lean forward to take your weight off it, then pull up on the recliner control lever at the outside edge of the seat. Now lean back until the desired seatback angle is achieved. To lock the seatback into position, release the recliner control lever.

WARNING:

To minimize risk of personal injury in event of a collision or sudden stop, both the driver and passenger seatbacks should always be in a nearly upright position whilst the vehicle is in motion. The protection provided by the seat belts and airbags may be reduced significantly when the seatbacks are reclined. There is greater risk that the passenger will slide under the belt resulting in serious injury when the seatbacks are reclined.

B080D02L-EAT

Adjustable Headrests (Not all models)



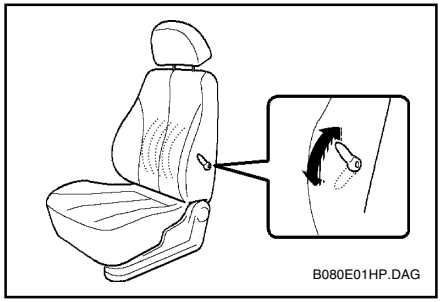
Headrests are designed to help reduce the risk of neck injuries.
To raise the headrest, pull it up. To lower it, push it down whilst pressing the lock knob.
If equipped with a horizontally adjustable type of headrest, pull on the top.

WARNING:

- **For maximum effectiveness in case of an accident, the headrest should be adjusted so the top of the headrest is at the same height as the top of the occupant's ears. The use of a cushion that holds the body away from the seatback is not recommended.**
- **Do not operate the vehicle with the headrests removed as severe injury to an occupant may occur in the event of an accident. Headrests may provide protection against severe neck injuries when properly adjusted.**

B080E01A-EAT

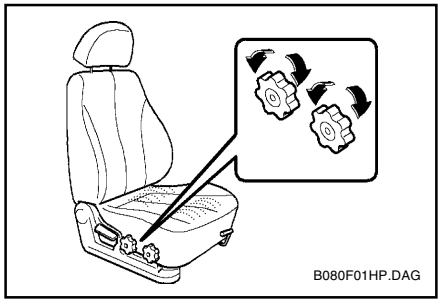
Driver's Seat Lumbar Support Control (Not all models)



To adjust the lumbar support, turn the handle on the inboard side of the seat. To increase the amount of lumbar support, pull the lever forward. To decrease it, push the lever toward the rear.

YB060F4-A

Seat Cushion Height Adjustment (Not all models) (Driver's Seat Only)



To adjust the height of the seat cushion, turn the seat cushion control knob in the appropriate direction.

B090A02Y-EAT

POWER DRIVER'S SEAT (Not all models)

The driver's seat can be adjusted appropriately by using the control knob on the right side of the seat. Before driving, adjust the seat to the proper position so as to easily control the steering wheel, pedals and switches on the instrument panel.

CAUTION:

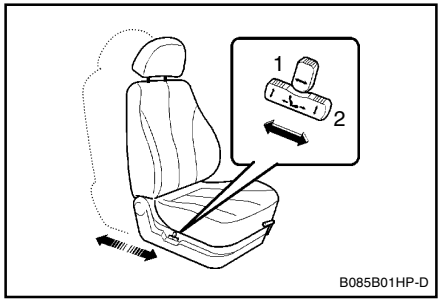
Do not operate two knobs at the same time.

WARNING:

- **Never attempt to adjust the seat whist the vehicle is moving. This could result in loss of control or an accident causing death, serious injury, or property damage.**
- **Do not sit or lean unnecessarily close to the airbag.**

B090B01L-AAT

Adjusting Seat Forward and Rearward

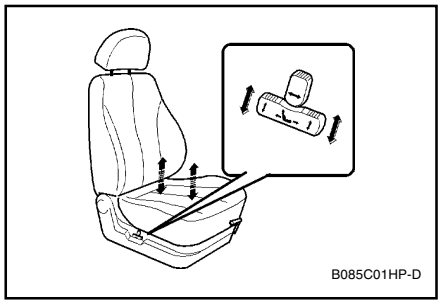


Pull the control knob forward or backward to move the seat forward or backward to the desired position. Release the knob and the seat will lock at that position.

1. Reclining Control Knob
2. Sliding and Height Adjusting Control Knob

B090C01Y-AAT

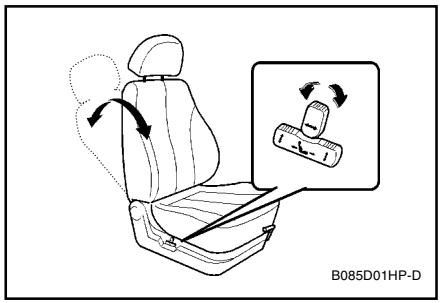
Seat Cushion Height Adjustment



Move the front portion of the control knob up or down to raise or lower the front part of the seat cushion. Move the rear portion of the control knob up or down to raise or lower the rear part of the seat cushion.

B090D01Y-AAT

Adjusting Seatback Angle



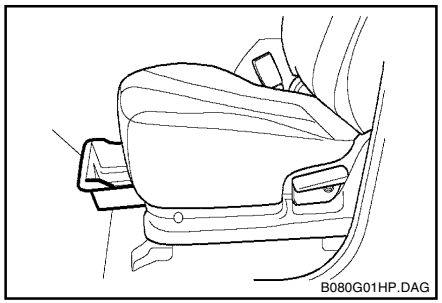
Rotate the upper portion of the control knob forward or backward to recline the seatback to the desired position. Release the control knob and then the seatback will lock in that position.

WARNING:

To minimize the risk of personal injury in the event of a collision or a sudden stop, both the driver's and passenger's seatbacks should remain in an upright position whilst the car is in motion. The protection provided by the seat belts and airbags may be reduced significantly when the seatbacks are reclined. There is a greater risk that the seat occupants will slide under the belt resulting in serious injury if a crash occurs when the seatbacks are reclined. The seat belt cannot provide full protection to an occupant if the seatback is reclined.

B080G01O-EAT

UNDER TRAY (Not all models)



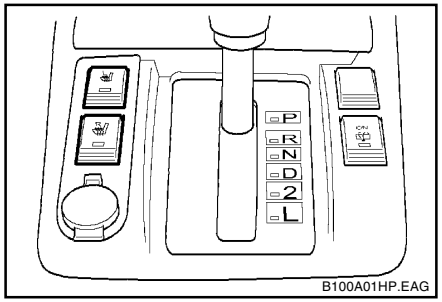
The tray is located under the front passenger seat. It is opend by pulling forward.

WARNING:

To avoid the possibility of injury in case of an accident or a sudden stop, the tray should be kept closed when the car is in motion.

B100A01HP-EAT

SEAT WARMER (Not all models)



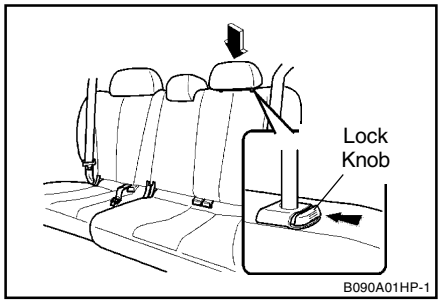
The seat warmer is provided to warm the front seats during cold weather. With the ignition key in the "ON" position, push either of the switches to warm the driver's seat or the passenger's seat.
During mild weather or under conditions where the operation of the seat warmer is not needed, keep the switches in the "OFF" position.

- o The seat warmer will not operate if ambient temperature is higher than 98.6 ± 37.4°F (37 ± 3°C).
- o If the seat warmer doesn't work when ambient temperature is lower than 82.4 ± 37.4°F (28 ± 3.5°C), it must be checked by authorized dealer.

B090A01HP-EAT

REAR SEAT

Adjustable Headrests



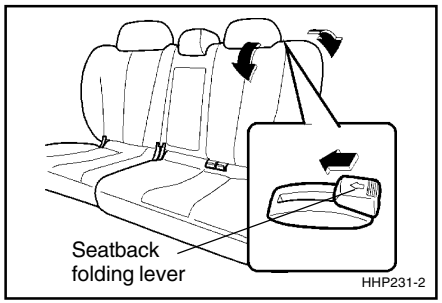
Headrests are designed to help reduce the risk of neck injuries.
To raise the headrest, pull it up. To lower it, push it down while pressing the lock knob.

WARNING:

- **o For maximum effectiveness in case of an accident, the headrest should be adjusted so the top of the headrest is at the same height as the top of the occupant's ears. The use of a cushion that holds the body away from the seatback is not recommended.**
- **o Do not operate vehicle with the headrests removed as severe injury to an occupant may occur in the event of an accident. Headrests may provide protection against severe neck injuries when properly adjusted.**

B090C01HP-GAT

Adjusting Seatback Angle



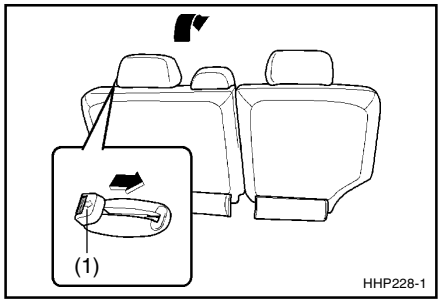
To recline the seatback, push the seatback folding lever toward the headrest, and release it after the desired seatback angle is achieved.
When you recline the seatback to desired position, always be sure it has locked into position.

B090B01HP-EAT

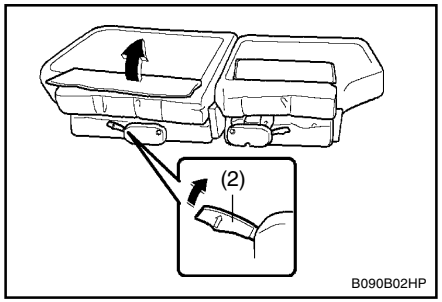
Folding Rear Seatback and Seat Cushion

For greater convenience, the entire seatback and seat cushion may be folded down and up.

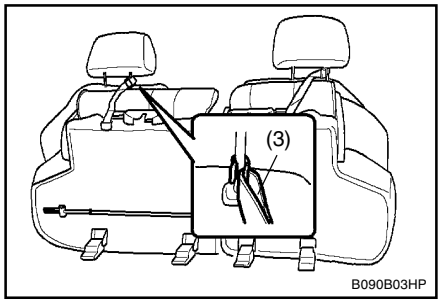
1. Lower the headrest completely whilst pressing the lock knob.



2. To fold down the seatback , first push and hold the seatback folding lever(1) inward, then push down the seatback.



3. Pull the seat cushion release lever(2) upward, then fold up the seat cushion.



4. To secure the seat, hook the securing strap(3) under the seat cushion to the headrest stay of front driver and passenger seat.
5. To return the seatback and seat cushion to its normal position, reverse the above procedure.

o When you return the seatback to its upright position, always be sure it is locked into position by pulling and pushing on the top of seatback.

WARNING:

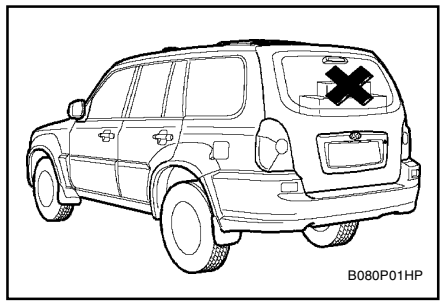
o The purpose of the fold-down rear seat back and the fold-up rear seat cushion is to allow you to carry more objects than could be accommodated. Never allow passengers to sit on the cargo area whilst the car is moving. This is not a proper seating position and no seat belts are available for use when the seat back is folded down.
This could result in serious injury or death in case of an accident or a sudden stop. Objects should not extend higher than the top of the front seatbacks.
This could allow cargo to slide forward and cause injury or damage during sudden stops.

o When you return the rear seatback to its upright position after being folded down, be careful not to damage the seatbelt webbing or buckle. In addition, do not allow the seatbelt webbing or buckle to get caught or pinched in the rear seat.

o Do not allow passengers to fold down and up the seatback and seat cushion whilst the car is moving.

B140A01B-GAT

REAR SEAT WARNING



For the safety of all passengers, luggage or other cargo should not be piled higher than the top of the seatback.

SB090A1-E

SEAT BELT PRECAUTIONS

Seat belts should be worn at all times by all occupants front and rear. The possibility of injury or the severity of injuries suffered in the event of an accident will be greatly reduced by the wearing of seat belts.
In addition the following recommendations should be observed.

SB090B1-E

Babies/Small Children

Babies and small children must be restrained using a restraint system specifically designed for this purpose. Under no circumstances should a child be carried in the vehicle without the use of a suitable restraint which meets the regulations in force in the country where the vehicle is in operation.

SB090C1-E

Larger Children

Larger children should occupy the rear seat and be restrained at all times. The restraint may take the form of a special safety belt or the original factory fitted seat belt used in conjunction with an approved booster cushion depending upon the size and weight of the child. Under no circumstances should children be allowed to travel standing, kneeling or lying on the seat.
Never allow childen to ride in the front passenger seat.

SB090O1-E

Pregnant Women

The use of a seat belt is recommended for pregnant women. The seat belt should be worn as low and snugly as possible across the hips, not across the abdomen. A qualified Medical Practitioner should be consulted for further information.

SB090E1-E

Injured Persons

A seat belt should be used when an injured person is being transported. For specific recommendations, the advice of a qualified Medical Practioner should be sought.

SB090F1-E

Seat Belt Occupancy

The seat belts are designed to be used by one seat occupant only. The use of a seat belt by more than one person increases the levels of injury which may be sustained in the event of an accident.

SE090G1-E

Do Not Lie Down

To ensure that the maximum level of protection may be afforded by the seat belt system, all passengers should be sitting in an upright position throughout the journey. The seat belt will be unable to afford maximum protection if the front seats are at or near the fully reclined position.

SB090H1-E

CARE OF SEAT BELTS

Seat belt assemblies must never be disassembled or modified in any way. In addition, care should be exercised to ensure that the belt assemblies do not become damaged by being trapped in seat mechanisms, door shuts etc.

SB090I-E

Periodic Inspection

It is recommended that all seat belts be inspected periodically for wear or damage of any kind. Parts of the system that are damaged should be replaced as soon as possible. Under no circumstances must any part of the seat belt assemblies be dismantled or repaired.

SB090J1-E

Keep Belts Clean and Dry

Seat belts should be kept clean and dry. If belts become dirty, they can be cleaned using a mild soap solution and warm water. Bleach, dye, strong detergents or abrasives should not be used since the fabric may become damaged and weakened.

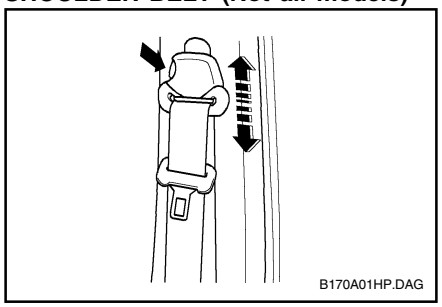
SB090K1-E

Replacement of Seat Belts

The entire seat belt assembly or assemblies should be replaced if the vehicle has been involved in an accident even if no damage is evident. Additional questions concerning seat belt operation should be directed to a Hyundai Dealer.

B170A04A-EAT

HEIGHT ADJUSTABLE FRONT SEAT SHOULDER BELT (Not all models)



You can adjust the height of the shoulder belt anchor to one of the 4 positions.
If the height of the adjusting seat belt is too near your neck, you will not be getting the most effective protection. The shoulder portion should be adjusted so that it lies across your chest and midway over your shoulder nearest the door and not your neck.
To adjust the height of the seat belt anchor, lower or raise the height adjuster into an appropriate position. To raise the height adjuster, pull it up. To lower it, push it down whilst pressing the height adjuster button.
Release the button to lock the anchor into position. Try sliding the release button to make sure that it has locked into the position.

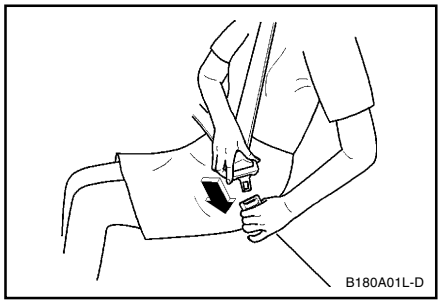
WARNING:

- **The height adjuster must be in the locked position when the vehicle is moving.**
- **The misadjustment of height of the shoulder belt could reduce the effectiveness of the seat belt in a crash.**

SB090P1-E

SEAT BELTS (3-Point Type)

To Fasten The Seat Belt

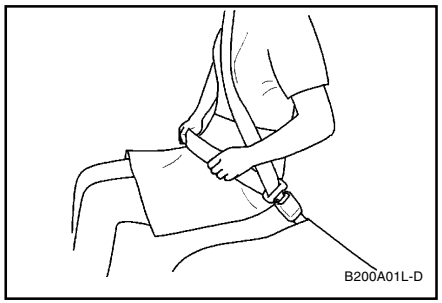


The seat belts are fastened by pulling the belt buckle towards the seat belt stalk and inserting the metal tongue of the buckle into the stalk. The buckle should be firmly pressed into the stalk until locked which will be indicated by an audible "click".
The length of the seat belt webbing will be automatically adjusted by the seat belt mechanism to allow the wearer maximum freedom of

movement whilst the belt is being worn. However, in the event of rapid deceleration or impact, the belt mechanism will automatically lock. The mechanism will also lock if the seat belt webbing is withdrawn too quickly when the belt is being fastened or if attempts are made to withdraw the webbing whilst the vehicle is not on level ground. Should the seat belt lock under these conditions, it will be possible to release the mechanism by allowing a small amount of webbing to be retracted and the belt withdrawn again.

ZB090U2-A

Adjusting Your Seat Belt



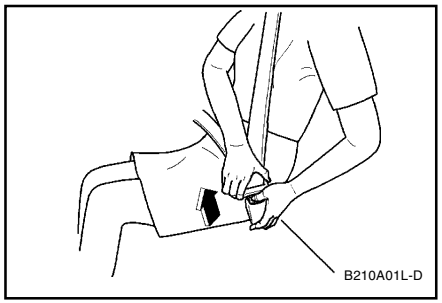
WARNING:

You should place the lap belt portion as low as possible and snugly across your hips, not on your waist. If the lap belt is located too high on your waist, it may increase the chance of injury in the event of a collision.

Both arms should not be under or over the belt. Rather, one should be over and the other under, as shown in the illustration.

B210A01A-AAT

To Release the Seat Belt

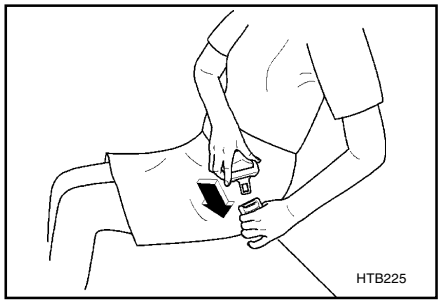


The seat belt is released by pressing the release button in the locking buckle.
When it is released, the belt should automatically draw back into the retractor.
If this does not happen, check the belt to be sure it is not twisted, then try again.

B220A01A-EAT

SEAT BELTS (2-Point Static Type) (Rear Seat Centre)

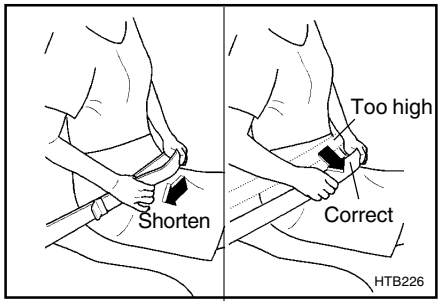
To Fasten Your Seat Belt



To fasten a 2-point static type belt, insert the metal tab into the locking buckle. There will be an audible "click" when the tab locks into the buckle. Check to make sure the belt is properly locked and that the belt is not twisted.

B220B01A-AAT

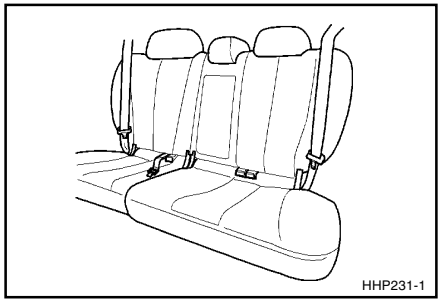
Adjusting Your Seat Belt



With a 2-point static type seat belt, the length must be adjusted manually so it fits snugly around your body. Fasten the belt and pull on the loose end to tighten. The belt should be placed as low as possible on your hips, not on your waist. If the belt is too high, it could increase the possibility of your being injured in an accident.

B220C01A-EAT

To Release the Seat Belt



When you want to release the seat belt, press the button in the locking buckle.

WARNING:

The centre lap belt latching mechanism is different from those for the rear seat shoulder belts. When fastening the rear seat shoulder belts or the centre lap belt, make sure they are inserted into the correct buckles to obtain maximum protection from the seat belt system and assure proper operation.

B230A03P-EAT

CHILD RESTRAINT SYSTEM

Children riding in the car should sit in the rear seat and must always be restrained to minimize the risk of injury in an accident, sudden stop or sudden manoeuvre. According to accident statistics, children are safer when properly restrained in the rear seats than in the front seat. Larger children should use one of the seat belts provided.

You are required by law to use safety restraints for children. If small children ride in your vehicle you must put them in a child restraint system (safety seat).

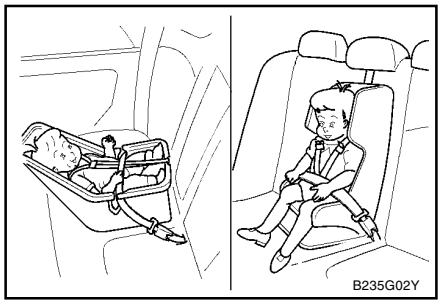
Children could be injured or killed in a crash if their restraints are not properly secured. For small children and babies, a child seat or infant seat must be used. Before buying a particular child restraint system, make sure it fits your car seat and seat belts, and fits your child. Follow all the instructions provided by the manufacturer when installing the child restraint system.

WARNING:

- **A child restraint system must be placed in the rear seat. Never install a child or infant seat on the front passenger's seat. Should an accident occur and cause the passenger side airbag to deploy, it could severely injure or kill an infant or child seated in an infant or child seat. Thus, only use a child restraint in the rear seat of your vehicle.**
- **Since a safety belt or child restraint system can become very hot if it is left in a closed vehicle, be sure to check the seat cover and buckles before placing a child there.**
- **When the child restraint system is not in use, fasten it with a safety belt so that it will not be thrown forward in the case of a sudden stop or an accident.**
- **Children who are too large to be in a child restraint should sit in the rear seat and be restrained with the available lap/shoulder belts. Never allow children to ride in the front passanger seat.**
- **Always make sure that the shoulder belt portion of the outboard lap/shoulder belt is positioned midway over the shoulder, never across the neck. Moving the child closer to the centre of the vehicle may help provide a good shoulder belt fit. The lap belt portion of the lap/shoulder belt or the centre seat lap belt must always be positioned as low as possible on the child's hips and as snug as possible.**
- **If the seat belt will not properly fit the child, we recommend the use of an approved booster seat in the rear seat in order to raise the child's seating height so that the seat belt will properly fit the child.**
- **Never allow a child to stand up or kneel on the seat.**
- **Never use an infant carrier or child safety seat that "hooks" over a seatback; it may not provide adequate security in an accident.**
- **Never allow a child to be held in a person's arms whilst they are in a moving vehicle, as this could result in serious injury to the child in the event of an accident or a sudden stop. Holding a child in a moving vehicle does not provide the child with any means of protection during an accident, even if the person holding the child is wearing a seat belt.**
- **If the child restraint seat is not anchored properly, the risk of a child being seriously injured or killed in a collision greatly increases.**

B230F01A-EAT

Installation on Rear Seat Centre Position

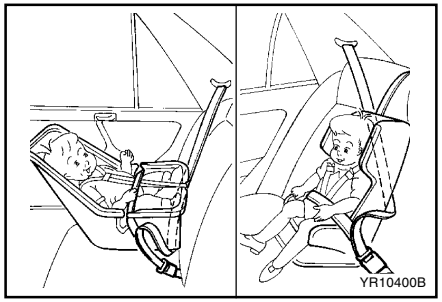


Use the centre seat belt for the rear to secure the child restraint system as illustrated. After installation of the child restraint system, rock the child seat back and forth, and side to side to ensure that it is properly secured by the seat belt.

If the child seat moves, readjust the length of the seat belt. Then, if equipped, insert the child restraint tether strap hook into the child restraint hook holder and tighten to secure the seat. Always refer to the child restraint system manufacturer's recommendation before installing the child restraint system in your vehicle.

B230G01A-GAT

Installation on Outboard Rear Seats



To install a child restraint system in the outboard rear seats, extend the shoulder/lap belt from its retractor. Install the child restraint system, buckle the seat belt and allow the seat belt to take up any slack. Make sure that the lap portion of the belt is tight around the child restraint system and the shoulder portion of the belt is positioned so that it cannot interfere with the child's head or neck. After installation of the child restraint system, try to move it in all directions to be sure the child restraint system is securely installed.

If you need to tighten the belt, pull more webbing toward the retractor. When you unbuckle the seat belt and allow it to retract, the retractor will automatically revert back to its normal seated passenger emergency locking usage condition.

NOTE:

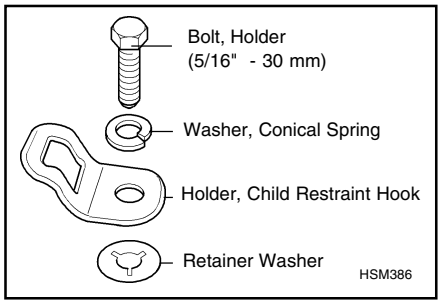
- **Before installing the child restraint system, read the instructions supplied by the child restraint system manufacturer.**
- **If the seat belt does not operate as described, have the system checked immediately by your authorized Hyundai dealer.**

WARNING:

Do not install any child restraint system in the front passenger seat. Should an accident occur and cause the passenger side airbag to deploy, it could severely injure or kill an infant or child seated in an infant or child seat. Therefore, only use a child restraint system in the rear seat of your vehicle.

B230B02A-AAT

Using a Child Restraint System with "Tether Anchorage" System

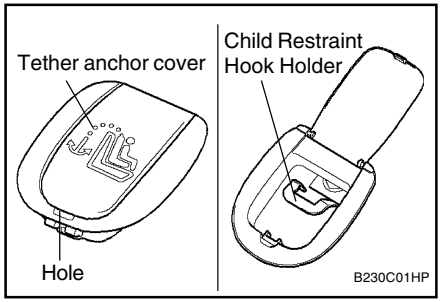


For small children and babies, the use of a child seat or infant seat is required. This child seat or infant seat should be of appropriate size for the child and should be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. It is further required that the seat be placed in the vehicle's rear seat since this can make an important contribution to safety. Your vehicle is provided with three child restraint hook holders for installing the child seat or infant seat.

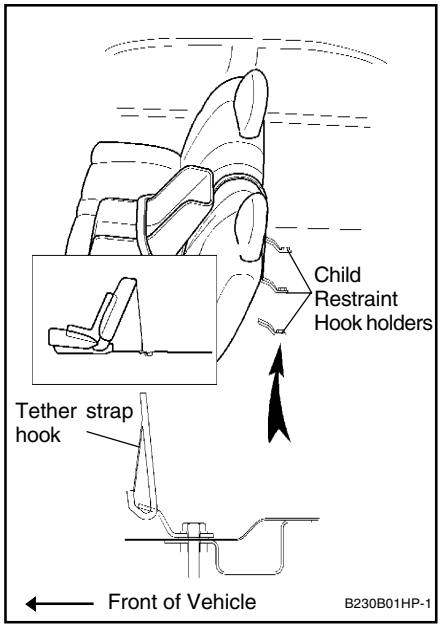
B230C02HP-EAT

Securing a Child Restraint System with "Tether Anchorage" System

Three child restraint hook holders are located on the floor behind the rear seat.
Install the child restraint seat according to the instructions provided as following.



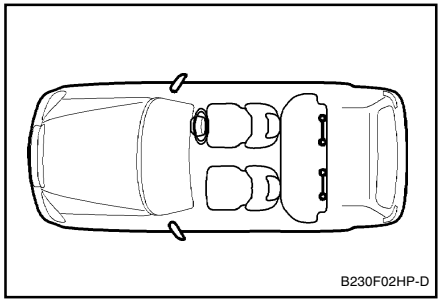
1. Open the tether anchor cover on the floor behind the rear seat with the key inserted in the hole.
2. Route the child restraint seat strap over the seatback.
   For vehicles with adjustable headrests, route the tether strap under the headrest and between the headrest posts, otherwise route the tether strap over the top of the seatback.



3. Connect the tether strap hook to the child restraint hook holder and tighten to secure the seat.

B230D03E-EAT

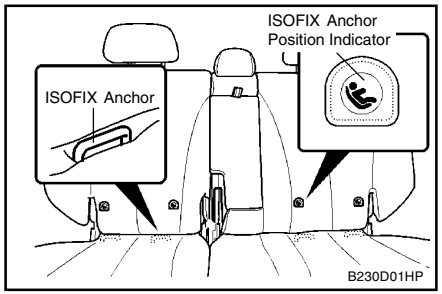
Securing a Child Restraint System with "ISOFIX" System and "Tether Anchorage" System



ISOFIX is a standardised method of fitting child seats that eliminates the need to use the standard adult seat belt to secure the seat in the vehicle. This enables a much more secure and positive location with the added benefit of easier and quicker installation.

An ISOFIX-seat can only be installed if it has vehicle-specific approval in accordance with the requirements of ECE-R44. For your Hyundai, the Hyundai ISOFIX GR1 / Hyundai Duo / Römer ISOFIX GR1 and the Römer Duo ISOFIX / Britax Duo ISOFIX is approved according to the requirement ECE-R44. This seat has been tested extensively by Hyundai and is recommended for your Hyundai.

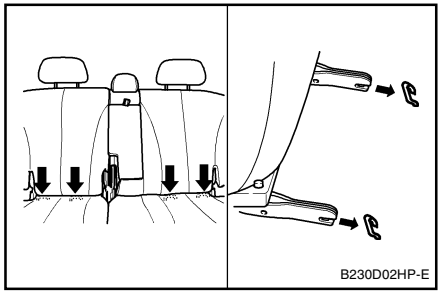
NOTE:
At present, this seat is the only one complying with that provision. In case that other manufacturers will furnish proof of a respective certification, Hyundai is going to evaluate this seat carefully and will give a recommendation provided that seat complies to the law. Please ask your Hyundai dealer in this respect.



On each side of the rear seat, between the cushion and backrest, are located a pair of ISOFIX anchorage points together with a top tether mounting on the luggage compartment. During the installing, the seat has to be engaged at the anchorage-points in a way you can hear it clicking (check by pulling!) and has to be fixed with the Top Tether-belt on the belonging point in the luggage-compartment. The installing and the use of a child-seat has to be done according to the installing-manual, which is added to the ISOFIX-seat.

NOTE:
An ISOFIX-child-seat can only be installed if the seat has a vehicle-specific approval according to ECE-R44. Before using the ISOFIX-child-seat, which was bought for another car, ask your Hyundai-dealer whether this seat-type is approved and recommended for your Hyundai.

To secure the child restraint seat



1. To engage the child restraint seat to the ISOFIX anchor, insert the child restraint seat latch into the ISOFIX anchor. Listen for the audible "click" sound.
2. Connect the tether strap hook to the child restraint hook holder and tighten to secure the seat. Refer to "Securing a Child Restraint System with the Tether Anchorage System" on page 1-22.

WARNING:
- **Do not install a child restraint seat at the centre of the rear seat using the vehicle's ISOFIX anchors. The ISOFIX anchors are only provided for the left and right outboard rear seating positions. Do not misuse the ISOFIX anchors by attempting to attach a child restraint seat in the middle of the rear seat to the ISOFIX anchors. In a crash, the child restraint seat ISOFIX attachments may not be strong enough to secure the child restraint seat properly in the centre of the rear seat and may break, causing serious injury or death.**
- **Do not mount more than one child restraint to a child restraint lower anchorage point. The improper increased load may cause the anchorage points or tether anchor to break, causing serious injury or death.**
- **Attach the ISOFIX or ISOFIX-compatible child restraint seat only to the appropriate locations shown in the illustration.**
- **Always follow the installation and use instructions provided by the manufacturer of the child restraint.**

B230H02HP-EAT

Child Seat Restraint Suitability For Seat Position

Use child safety seats that have been officially approved and are appropriate for your children. When using the child safety seats, refer to the following table .

Age Group	Seating Position		
	Front Passenger	Rear Outboard	Rear Centre
0 : Up to 10 kg (0 ~ 9 months)	X	U	U
0+ : Up to 13 kg (0 ~ 2 years)	X	U	U
I : 9kg to 18kg (9 months ~ 4 years)	X	U, L1	U
II & III : 15kg to 36kg (4 ~ 12 years)	X	UF	UF

U : Suitable for "universal" category restraints approved for use in this mass group

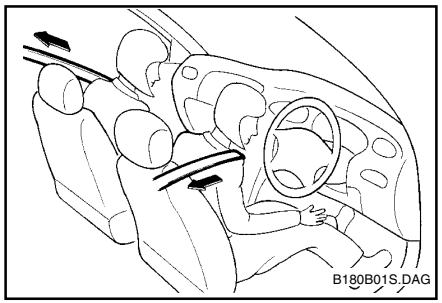
UF : Suitable for forward-facing "universal" category restraints approved for use in this mass group

L1: Suitable for "Römer ISOFIX GR1" approved for use in this mass group (Approval No: E1 R44-03301133)

X : Seat position not suitable for children in this mass group

B180B02HP-EAT

Pre-tensioner Seat Belt (Not all models)



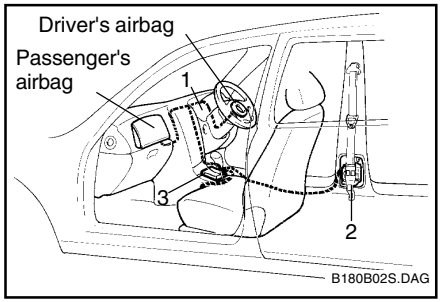
Your Hyundai vehicle is equipped with driver's and front passenger's pre-tensioner seat belts. The purpose of the pre-tensioner is to make sure that the seat belts fit tightly against the occupant's body in certain frontal collisions. The pre-tensioner seat belts can be activated alone or, where the frontal collision is severe enough, together with the airbags.

When the vehicle stops suddenly, or if the occupant tries to lean forward too quickly, the seat belt retractor will lock into position. In certain frontal collisions, the pre-tensioner will activate and pull the seat belt into tighter contact against the occupant's body.

The seat belt pre-tensioner system consists mainly of the following components.

Their locations are shown in the illustration.

1. SRS airbag warning light
2. Seat belt pre-tensioner assembly
3. SRS control module



WARNING:

To obtain maximum benefit from a pre-tensioner seat belt:

1. **The seat belt must be worn correctly.**
2. **The seat belt must be adjusted to the correct position.**

NOTE:
- **Both the driver's and front passenger's pre-tensioner seat belts will be activated in certain frontal collisions. The pre-tensioner seat belts can be activated alone or, where the frontal collision is severe enough, together with the airbags.**
- **When the pre-tensioner seat belts are activated, a loud noise may be heard and fine dust, which may appear to be smoke, may be visible in the passenger compartment. These are normal operating conditions and are not hazardous.**
- **Although it is harmless, the fine dust may cause skin irritation and should not be breathed for prolonged periods. Wash your hands and face thoroughly after an accident in which the pre-tensioner seat belts were activated.**

CAUTION:
- **Because the sensor that activates the SRS airbag is connected with pre-tensioner seat belt, the SRS airbag warning light AIR BAG on the instrument panel will blink for approximately 6 seconds after the ignition key has been turned to the "ON" position, and then it should turn off.**
- **If pre-tensioner seat belt is not working properly, this warning light will illuminate even if there is no malfunction of the SRS airbag. If the SRS airbag warning light does not illuminate when the ignition key is turned to "ON" or if it remains illuminated after blinking for approximately 6 seconds, or if it illuminates whilst the vehicle is being driven, please have an authorized Hyundai dealer inspect the pre-tensioner seat belts and SRS airbag system as soon as possible.**

WARNING:
- **Pre-tensioners are designed to operate only one time. After activation, pre-tensioner seat belts must be replaced. All seat belts, of any type, should always be replaced after they have been worn during a collision.**
- **The pre-tensioner seat belt assembly mechanisms become hot during activation. Do not touch the pre-tensioner seat belt assemblies for several minutes after they have been activated.**
- **Do not attempt to inspect or replace the pre-tensioner seat belts yourself. This must be done by an authorized Hyundai dealer.**
- **Do not strike the pre-tensioner seat belt assemblies.**
- **Do not attempt to service or repair the pre-tensioner seat belt system in any manner.**
- **Improper handling of the pre-tensioner seat belt assemblies, and failure to heed the warnings to not strike, modify, inspect, replace, service or repair the pre-tensioner seat belt assemblies may lead to improper operation or inadvertent activation and serious injury.**
- **Always wear seat belts when driving or riding in a motor vehicle.**

B240A02Y-EAT

SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT (AIRBAG) SYSTEM

Driver's Airbag



B240A01HP

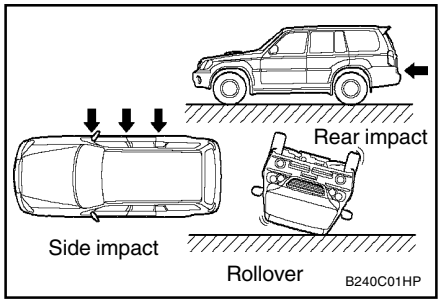
Your Hyundai is equipped with a Supplemental Restraint (Airbag) System. The indications of the system's presence are the letters "SRS AIR BAG" embossed on the airbag pad cover in the steering wheel and the passenger's side front panel pad above the glove box.

The Hyundai SRS consists of airbags installed under the pad covers in the centre of the steering wheel and the passenger's side front panel above the glove box. The purpose of the SRS is to provide the vehicle's driver and/or the

front passenger with additional protection than that offered by the seat belt system alone, in case of a frontal impact of sufficient severity.

NOTE:
Be sure to read information about the SRS on the labels provided on the reverse of the sun visor and in the glove box.

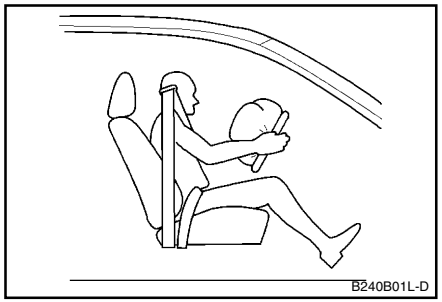
WARNING:
- **As its name implies, the SRS is designed to work with, and be supplemental to, the driver's and the passenger's three point seat belt systems and is not a substitute for them. Therefore your seat belts must be worn at all times whilst the vehicle is in motion. The airbags deploy only in certain frontal impact conditions severe enough to likely cause significant injury to the vehicle occupants.**
- **The SRS is designed to deploy the airbags only when an impact is sufficiently severe and when the impact angle is less than 30° from the forward longitudinal axis of the vehicle and will not deploy in side, rear or rollover impacts. Additionally, the airbags will only deploy once. Thus, seat belts must be worn at all times.**
- **Front airbags are not intended to deploy in light collisions in which protection can be provided by the seat belt alone.**



- **Front airbags are not intended to deploy in side-impact, rear-impact or rollover crashes. In addition, airbags will not normally deploy in frontal crashes below the deployment threshold speed.**
- **For maximum safety protection in all types of crashes, all occupants including the driver should always wear their seat belts whether or not an airbag is also provided at their seating position to minimize the risk of severe injury or death in the event of a crash. Do not sit or lean unnecessarily close to the airbag whilst the vehicle is in motion.**
- **The SRS airbag system must deploy very rapidly to provide protection in a crash. If an occupant is out of position because of not wearing a seat belt, the airbag may forcefully contact the occupant causing serious or fatal injuries.**

B240B02A-EAT

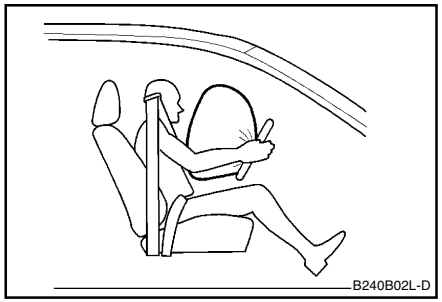
SRS Components and Functions



The SRS consists of the following components:

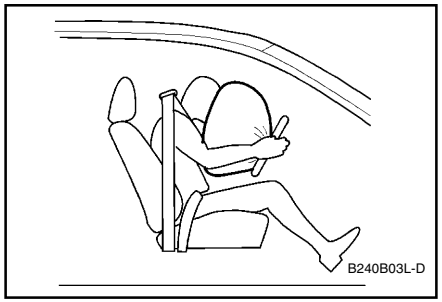
- Driver's Airbag Module
- Passenger's Airbag Module
- Knee Bolster
- SRS Service Reminder Indicator (SRI)
- SRS Control Module (SRSCM)

The SRSCM continually monitors all elements whilst the ignition is "ON" to determine if a frontal or near-frontal impact is severe enough to require airbag deployment.



The SRS service reminder indicator (SRI) on the instrument panel will blink for about 6 seconds after the ignition key is turned to the "ON" position or after the engine is started, after which the SRI should go out.

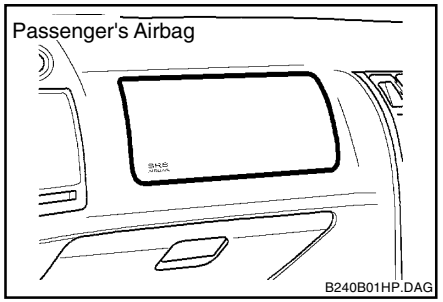
The airbag modules are located both in the centre of the steering wheel and in the front passenger's panel above the glove box. When the SRSCM detects a considerable impact to the front of the vehicle, it will automatically deploy the airbags.



Upon deployment, tear seams molded directly into the pad covers will separate under pressure from the expansion of the airbags. Further opening of the covers then allows full inflation of the airbags.

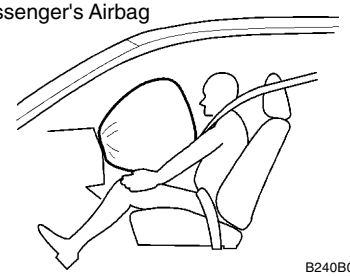
A fully inflated airbag in combination with a properly worn seat belt slows the driver's or the passenger's forward motion, thus reducing the risk of head or chest injury.

After complete inflation, the airbag immediately starts deflating, enabling the driver to maintain forward visibility.



CAUTION:
When installing a container of liquid air freshener inside a vehicle, do not place it near the instrument cluster nor on the instrument panel pad surface. If there is any leakage from the air freshener onto these areas (instrument cluster, instrument panel pad or air ventilator), it may damage these parts. If the liquid from the air freshener does leak onto these areas, wash them with water immediately.

Passenger's Airbag



B240B05L-D

WARNING:

- **When the SRS is activated, there may be a loud noise and fine dust will be released throughout the vehicle. These conditions are normal and are not hazardous. However, the fine dust generated during airbag deployment may cause skin irritation. Be sure to wash your hands and face thoroughly with lukewarm water and a mild soap after an accident in which the airbags were deployed.**
- **The SRS can function only when the ignition key is in the "ON" position. If the SRS SRI does not come on, or continuously remains on, after flashing for about 6 seconds when the ignition key is turned to the "ON" position, or after the engine is started, or comes on whilst driving, the SRS is not working properly. If this occurs, have your vehicle immediately inspected by your Hyundai dealer.**
- **Before you replace a fuse or disconnect a battery terminal, turn the ignition key to the "LOCK" position or remove the ignition key. Never remove or replace the air bag related fuse(s) when the ignition key is in the "ON" position. Failure to heed this warning will cause the SRS SRI to illuminate.**

B240C01HP-GAT

SRS Care

The SRS is virtually maintenance-free and so there are no parts you can safely service by yourself. The entire SRS system must be inspected by an authorized Hyundai dealer 10 years after the date that the vehicle was manufactured.

Any work on the SRS system, such as removing, installing, repairing, or any work on the steering wheel must be performed by a qualified Hyundai technician. Improper handling of the SRS system may result in serious personal injury.



YT10355A

WARNING:

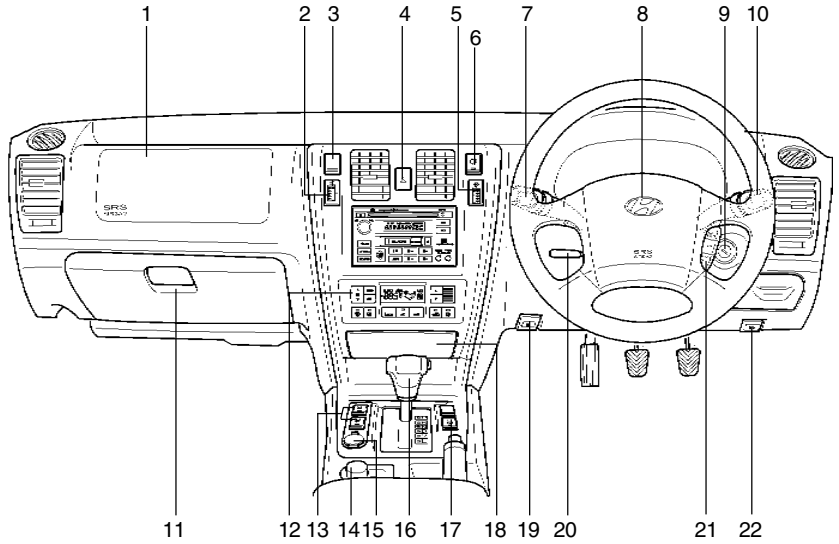
- **Extreme Hazard! Do not use a rearward facing restraint on a seat protected by an airbag in front of it!**
- **Modification to SRS components or wiring, including the addition of any kind of badges to the pad covers or modifications to the body structure, can adversely affect SRS performance and lead to possible injury.**
- **For cleaning the airbag pad covers, use only a soft, dry cloth or one which has been moistened with plain water. Solvents or cleaners could adversely affect the airbag covers and proper deployment of the system.**
- **No objects should be placed over or near the airbag modules on the steering wheel, instrument panel, and the front passenger's panel above the glove box, because any such object could cause harm if the**

vehicle is in a crash severe enough to cause the airbags to inflate.

- **If the airbags inflate, they must be replaced by an authorized Hyundai dealer.**
- **Do not tamper with or disconnect SRS wiring, or other components of the SRS system. Doing so could result in injury, due to accidental firing of the airbags or by rendering the SRS inoperative.**
- **A child restraint system must never be placed in the front seat. The infant or child could be severely injured by an airbag deployment in case of an accident.**
- **If components of the airbag system must be discarded, or if the vehicle must be scrapped, certain safety precautions must be observed. Your Hyundai dealer knows these precautions and can give you the necessary information. Failure to follow these precautions and procedures could increase the risk of personal injury.**
- **If you sell your vehicle, be sure to inform the new owner of these important points and make certain that this manual is transferred to the new owner.**
- **If your car was flooded and has soaked carpeting or water on flooring, you shouldn't try to start engine; have the car towed to authorized Hyundai dealer.**
- **Do not replace the bumper or the bumper guard with the one other than the Hyundai genuine parts. Otherwise, it can adversely affect SRS performance and lead to unexpected injury.**

B250A01HP-EAT

INSTRUMENTS AND CONTROLS



1. Passenger's Airbag (Not all models)
2. Headlight Leveling Switch
3. Cruise Control Main Switch (Not all models)
4. Hazard Warning Switch
5. Panel Brightness Control Knob (Rheostat Switch)
6. Rear Fog Light Switch
7. Windscreen Wiper/Washer Switch
8. Horn and Driver's Airbag
9. Ignition Switch
10. Multi-Function Light Switch /Front Fog Light Switch
11. Glove Box
12. Heating/Air Conditioning Control Panel
13. Seat Warmer Switch (Not all models)
14. Transfer Shift Knob
15. Power Outlet
16. Shift Lever
17. Rear Window Wiper/Washer Switch (Not all models)
18. Ashtray
19. Remote Fuel-Filler Lid Release Lever
20. Steering Wheel Tilt Lever
21. Cruise Control Switch (Not all models)
22. Bonnet Release Lever

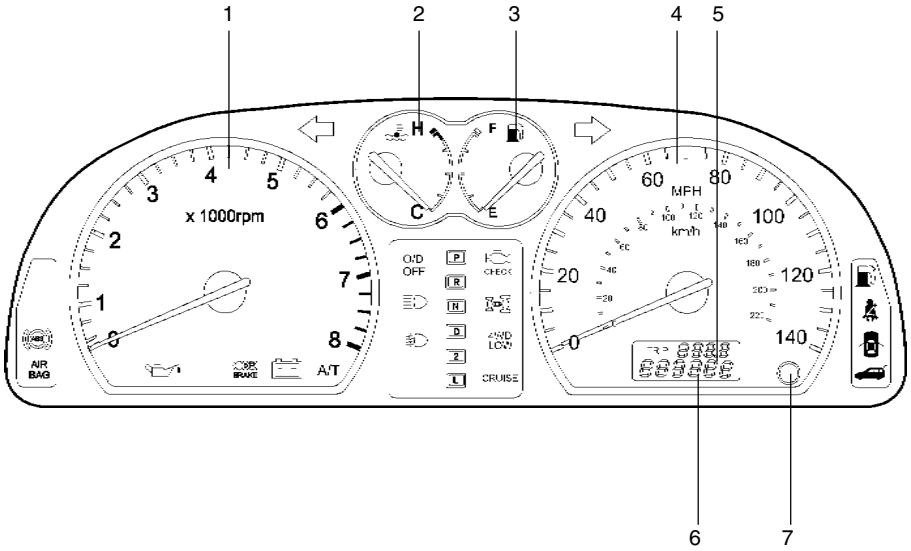
CAUTION:

When installing the container of liquid air freshener inside a vehicle, do not place it near the instrument cluster nor on the instrument panel pad surface. If there is any leakage from the air freshener onto these areas (Instrument cluster, instrument panel pad or air ventilator), it may damage these parts. If the liquid from the air freshener does leak onto these areas, wash them with water immediately.

B250A01HP-E

B260A02HP-EAT

INSTRUMENT CLUSTER (PETROL ENGINE)

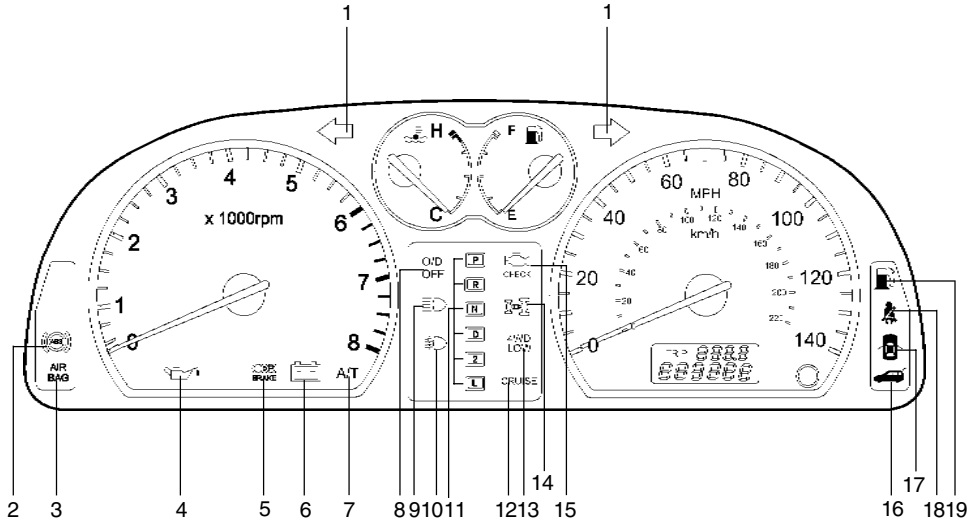


B260A01HP-E

1. Tachometer
2. Coolant Temperature Gauge
3. Fuel Gauge
4. Speedometer
5. Trip Odometer
6. Odometer
7. Trip odometer Reset Knob

B261A02HP-EAT

INDICATOR AND WARNING LIGHTS (PETROL ENGINE)

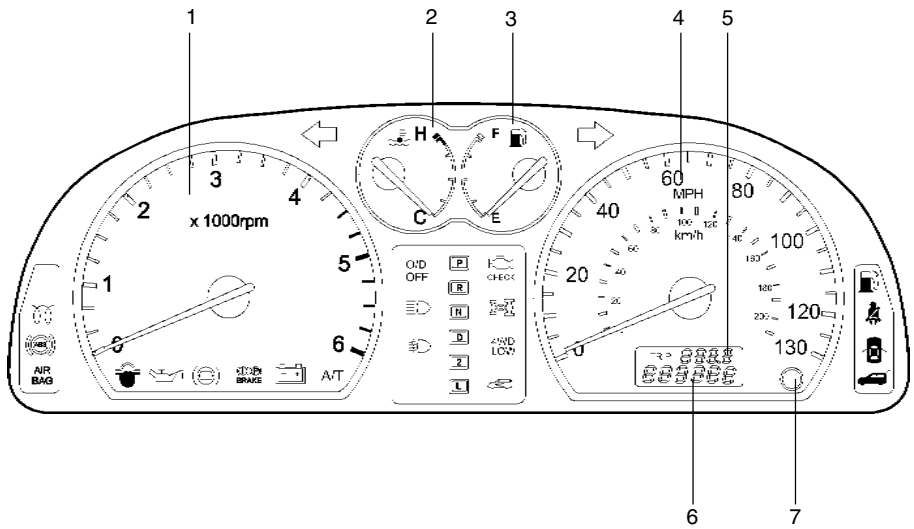


B260A01HP-E

1. Turn Signal Indicator Light
2. ABS Service Reminder Indicator Light (Not all models)
3. Supplemental Restraint (AirBag) System Service Reminder Indicator (SRI) Light
4. Low Oil Pressure Warning Light
5. Parking Brake/Low Brake Fluid Level Warning Light
6. Charging System Warning Light
7. A/T Oil Temperature Warning Light (Not all models)
8. Overdrive Off Indicator Light (Not all models)
9. High Beam Indicator Light
10. Front Fog Indicator Light
11. Automatic Transmission Position Indicator Light (Not all models)
12. Cruise Indicator Light (Not all models)
13. 4WD Low Indicator Light
14. 4WD Engaged Indicator Light
15. Malfunction Indicator Light (MIL)
16. Hatchback Door Open Warning Light
17. Door Ajar Warning Light
18. Seat Belt Warning Light
19. Low Fuel Warning Light

B262A02HP-GAT

INSTRUMENT CLUSTER (DIESEL ENGINE)

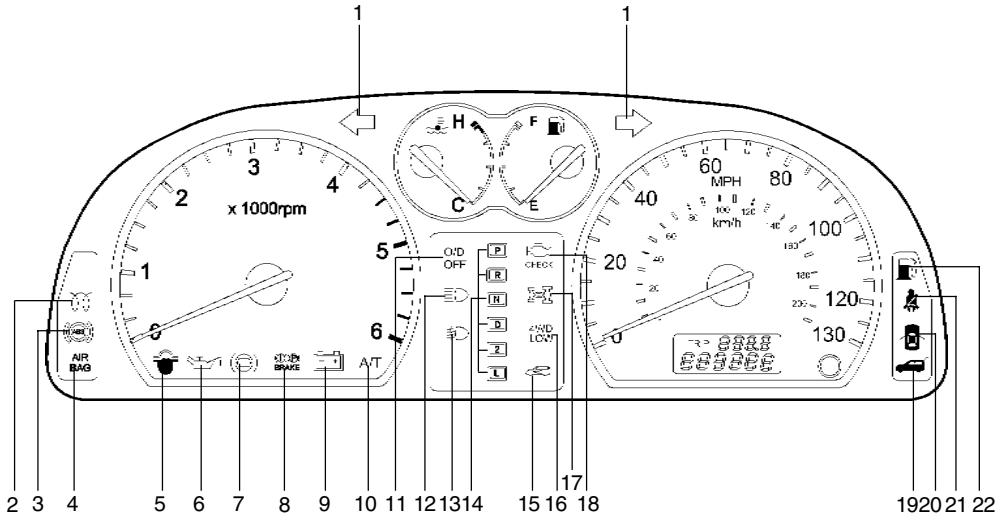


B260A03HP-E

1. Tachometer
2. Coolant Temperature Gauge
3. Fuel Gauge
4. Speedometer
5. Trip Odometer
6. Odometer
7. Trip Odometer Reset Knob

B264A02HP-EAT

INDICATOR AND WARNING LIGHTS (DIESEL ENGINE)



B260A03HP-E

1. Turn Signal Indicator Light
2. Diesel Preheat Indicator Light
3. ABS Service Reminder Indicator Light (Not all models)
4. Supplemental Restraint (AirBag) System Service Reminder Indicator (SRI) Light
5. Fuel Filter Warning Light
6. Low Oil Pressure Warning Light
7. Brake Vacuum Warning Light
8. Parking Brake/Low Brake Fluid Level Warning Light
9. Charging System Warning Light
10. A/T Oil Temperature Warning Light (Not all models)
11. Overdrive Off Indicator Light (Not all models)
12. High Beam Indicator Light
13. Front Fog Indicator Light
14. Automatic Transmission Position Indicator Light (Not all models)
15. Immobiliser Warning Light
16. 4WD Low Indicator Light
17. 4WD Engaged Indicator Light
18. Malfunction Indicator Light (MIL)
19. Hatchback Door Open Warning Light
20. Door Ajar Warning Light
21. Seat Belt Warning Light
22. Low Fuel Warning Light

B260D01A-AAT

Turn Signal Indicator Lights

The blinking green arrows on the instrument panel show the direction indicated by the turn signals. If the arrow comes on but does not blink, blinks more rapidly than normal, or does not illuminate at all, a malfunction in the turn signal system is indicated. Your dealer should be consulted for repairs.

B260P02Y-EAT

ABS Service Reminder Indicator Light (Not all models)

When the key is turned to the "ON" position, the Anti-Lock Brake System SRI will come on and then go off in a few seconds. If the ABS SRI remains on, comes on while driving, or does not come on when the key is turned to the "ON" position, this indicates that there may be a problem with the ABS.
If this occurs, have your vehicle checked by your Hyundai dealer as soon as possible. The normal braking system will still be operational, but without the assistance of the anti-lock brake system.

WARNING:

If both ABS SRI and Parking Brake/Brake fluid level warning lights remain "ON" or come on whilst driving, there may be a problem with E.B.D. (Electronic Brake Force Distribution).
If this occurs, avoid sudden stops and have your vehicle checked by your Hyundai dealer as soon as possible.

B260F01A-AAT

High Beam Indicator Light

The high beam indicator light comes on whenever the headlights are switched to the high beam or flash position.

B260G01A-EAT

Low Oil Pressure Warning Light

CAUTION:

If the oil pressure warning light stays on whilst the engine is running, serious engine damage may result. The oil pressure warning light comes on whenever there is insufficient oil pressure. In normal operation, it should come on when the ignition switch is turned on, then go out when the engine is started.
If the oil pressure warning light stays on whilst the engine is running, there is a serious malfunction.

If this happens, stop the car as soon as it is safe to do so, turn off the engine and check the oil level. If the oil level is low, fill engine oil to the proper level and start the engine again. If the light stays on with the engine running, turn the engine off immediately. In any instance where the oil light stays on when the engine is running, the engine should be checked by an authorized Hyundai dealer before the car is driven again.

B260C01A-EAT

O/D OFF Indicator (Not all models)

When the overdrive switch is turned on, the overdrive off indicator will go out. This amber indicator will be illuminated when the overdrive switch is turned off.

B260H02A-EAT

Parking Brake/Low Brake Fluid Level Warning Light

WARNING:

If you suspect brake trouble, have your brakes checked by a Hyundai dealer as soon as possible. Driving your car with a problem in either the brake electrical system or brake hydraulic system is dangerous, and could result in a serious injury or death.

Warning Light Operation

The parking brake/brake fluid level warning light should come on when the parking brake is applied and the ignition switch is turned to "ON" or "START". After the engine is started, the light should go out when the parking brake is released.
If the parking brake is not applied, the warning light should come on when the ignition switch is turned to "ON" or "START", then go out when the engine starts. If the light comes on at any other time, you should slow the vehicle and bring it to a complete stop in a safe location off the roadway.

The brake fluid level warning light indicates that the brake fluid level in the brake master cylinder is low and hydraulic brake fluid conforming to DOT 3 or DOT 4 specifications should be added. After adding fluid, if no other trouble is found, the car should be immediately and carefully driven to a Hyundai dealer for inspection. If further trouble is experienced, the vehicle should not be driven at all but taken to a dealer by a professional towing service or some other safe method.
Your Hyundai is equipped with dual-diagonal braking systems. This means you still have braking on two wheels even if one of the dual systems should fail. With only one of the dual systems working, more than normal pedal travel and greater pedal pressure are required to stop the car. Also, the car will not stop in as short a distance with only half of the brake system working. If the brakes fail whilst you are driving, shift to a lower gear for additional engine braking and stop the car as soon as it is safe to do so.

B260E01HP-GAT



Seat Belt Warning Light

The seat belt warning light blinks for about 6 seconds when the ignition key is turned from the "OFF" position to "ON" or "START".

B260Q01HP-EAT



Cruise Indicator Light (Not all models)

The cruise indicator light in the instrument cluster is illuminated only when the vehicle cruising speed has been set using the control switch on the steering wheel.
The indicator light does not illuminate when the main cruise control switch is activated.
Information on the use of cruise control may be found on page 1-60.

B260J01S-EAT



Charging System Warning Light

The charging system warning light should come on when the ignition is turned on, then go out when the engine is running. If the light stays on whilst the engine is running, there is a malfunction in the electrical charging system. If the light comes on whilst you are driving, stop, turn off the engine and check under the bonnet. First, make certain the generator drive belt is in place. If it is, check the tension of the belt.
And then, have the system checked by your Hyundai dealer.

CAUTION:

If the drive belt (generator belt) is loose, broken, or missing whilst the vehicle is driving, there may be a serious malfunction, engine could overheat because this belt also drives the water pump.

B260L01A-GAT



Door Ajar Warning Light

The door ajar warning light warns you that a door is not completely closed.

B260M01A-AAT



Low Fuel Level Warning Light

The low fuel level warning light comes on when the fuel tank is approaching empty. When it comes on, you should add fuel as soon as possible. Driving with the fuel level warning light on or with the fuel level below "E" can cause the engine to misfire and damage the catalytic converter.

B260A01B-GAT



Front Fog Indicator Light

Front fog indicator light comes on whenever the fog light switch is on.

B260K01B-EAT



Hatchback Door Open Warning Light

This light remains on unless the tail gate is completely closed.

B260B01A-EAT

SRS (Airbag) Service Reminder Indicator (SRI) Light

The SRS service reminder indicator (SRI) comes on and flashes for about 6 seconds after the ignition key is turned to the "ON" position or after the engine is started, after which it will go out.

This light also comes on when the SRS is not working properly. If the SRI does not come on, or continuously remains on after flashing for about 6 seconds when you turned the ignition key to the "ON" position or started the engine, or if it comes on whilst driving, have the SRS inspected by an authorized Hyundai Dealer.

B260N01A-EAT

Malfunction Indicator Light

This light illuminates when there is a malfunction of an exhaust gas related component, and the system is not functioning properly so that the exhaust gas regulation values are not satisfied. This light will also illuminate when the ignition key is turned to the "ON" position, and will go out in a few seconds. If it illuminates whilst driving, or does not illuminate when the ignition key is turned to the "ON" position, take your car to your nearest authorized Hyundai dealer and have the system checked.

B260R01HP-GAT

4WD LOW Indicator Light

When the key is turned to the "ON" position, the 4WD(Four Wheel Drive) LOW indicator light will come on and then go off in a few seconds.
The 4WD LOW indicator light comes on when the transfer shift knob is set to low position (Part-time 4WD type : 4L position, Full-time 4WD type : LOW position).

B260T01HP-EAT

4WD Engaged Indicator Light (Part-time 4WD only)

When the key is turned to the "ON" position, the 4WD(Four Wheel Drive) engaged indicator light will come on and then go off in a few seconds.
The 4WD engaged indicator light will illuminate when the transfer shift knob is set to 4H position(Part-time 4WD only).

CAUTION:

If the 4WD engaged indicator light ( ) blinks (Full-time 4WD type) or illuminates with the 4WD LOW indicator light ( ) (Part-time 4WD type) whilst driving, this indicates that there is a malfunction in the 4WD system. If this occurs, have your vehicle checked by an authorized Hyundai dealer as soon as possible.

B260U01HP-EAT

A/T(Automatic Transmission) Oil Temperature Warning Light (Not all models)

The A/T oil temperature warning light comes on when the automatic transmission oil temperature goes up to the temperature that may result in serious damage of automatic transmission.
If the A/T oil temperature warning light comes on whilst driving, park your vehicle in at a safe place as soon as possible. With the selector lever shifted into "P" position, allow the engine to idle until the warning light goes off. When the warning light goes off, the vehicle can be driven normally.

CAUTION:

If the warning light doesn't go off or blinks, this indicates that there is a malfunction in the automatic transmission or T.C.U (Transmission Control Unit). If this occurs, have your vehicle checked by an authorized Hyundai dealer.

B265A01B-EAT

Fuel Filter Warning Light(Diesel Engine)

This light illuminates when the ignition switch is set to the "ON" position and goes off after the engine has started. If it lights up whilst the engine is running, it indicates that water has accumulated inside the fuel filter. If this happens, remove the water from the fuel filter. (Refer to "Owner Maintenance")

B265B01HP-GAT

Brake Vacuum Warning Light(Diesel Engine)

WARNING:

If you suspect brake trouble, have your brakes checked by a Hyundai dealer as soon as possible. Driving your car with a problem in either the brake electrical system or brake hydraulic system is dangerous, and could result in serious injury or death.

The brake vacuum warning light should come on when the vacuum level in brake booster descends to about 275 mmHg or below. The brake system is designed to stop the vehicle with reserve assist if brake pedal is held down. This reserve is greatly reduced each time you release the brake. Without vacuum assist your vehicle can still be stopped by pushing much harder on brake pedal, however the stopping distance may be much longer. If the light comes on at any other time, you should slow the vehicle and bring it to a complete stop in a safe location off the roadway.

After starting the engine, do not drive the vehicle until the vacuum level is above 275 mmHg below atmosphere and warning light has turned off. If further trouble is experienced, the vehicle should not be driven at all but taken to a dealer by a professional towing service.

B265C02HP-EAT

Diesel Preheat Indication Light-amber

The indication light illuminates amber when the ignition switch is placed at the "ON" position. The engine can be started after the preheat indication light goes off. The illuminating time varies with the water temperature.

Water temperature (°F)(°C)	Illuminating time (sec.)
Below -22(-30)	26
-13(-25)	20
-4(-20)	15
5(-15)	10
14(-10)	5.5
23(-5)	3.5
32(0)	2
68(20)	0

NOTE:

If the engine were not started within 2 seconds after the preheating is completed, turn the ignition key once more to the "LOCK" position during 10 seconds, and then to the "ON" position, in order to preheat again.

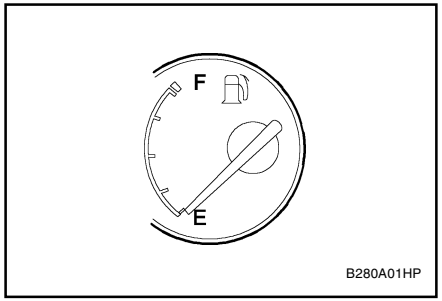
B270A01A-EAT

BRAKE PAD WEAR WARNING SOUND (Not all models)

The front disc brake pads have wear indicators that should make a high-pitched squealing or scraping noise when new pads are needed. The sound may come and go or be heard all the time when the vehicle is moving. It may also be heard when the brake pedal is pushed down firmly. Excessive rotor damage will result if the worn pads are not replaced. See your Hyundai dealer immediately.

B280A01A-AAT

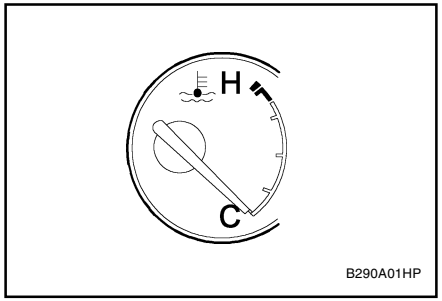
FUEL GAUGE



The needle on the gauge indicates the approximate fuel level in the fuel tank. The fuel capacity is given in Section 9.

B290A02A-EAT

COOLANT TEMPERATURE GAUGE



WARNING:

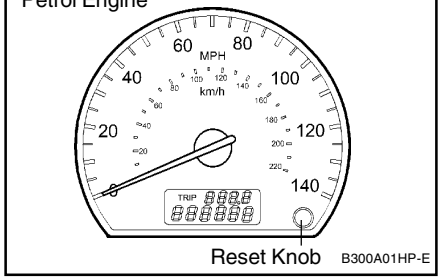
Never remove the radiator cap when the engine is hot. The coolant is under pressure and could erupt and cause severe burns. Wait until the engine is cool before removing the radiator cap.

The needle on the coolant temperature gauge should stay in the normal range. If it moves across the dial to "H" (Hot), pull over and stop as soon as possible and turn off the engine. Then open the bonnet and check the coolant level and the water pump drive belt. If you suspect cooling system trouble, have your cooling system checked by Hyundai dealer as soon as possible.

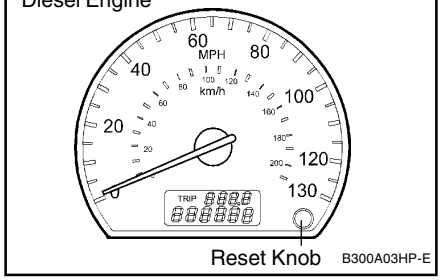
B300A01Y-EAT

SPEEDOMETER

Petrol Engine



Diesel Engine



Your Hyundai's speedometer is calibrated in miles per hour or kilometers per hour.

B310A01HP-EAT

ODOMETER

The digital odometer records the total driving distance in miles, and is useful for keeping a record for maintenance intervals.

NOTE:

Any alteration of the odometer may void your warranty coverage.

B320A01HP-GAT

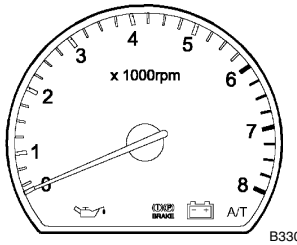
TRIP ODOMETER

The digital trip odometer may be used to conveniently record trip distances when the ignition key is in the "ON" position. Push the reset knob to set the counter to zero.

B330A01L-AAT

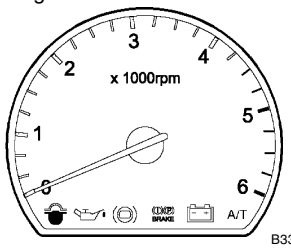
TACHOMETER

Petrol Engine



B330A01HP

Diesel Engine



B330A02HP

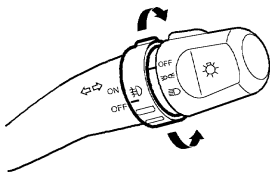
The tachometer registers the speed of your engine in revolutions per minute (rpm).

CAUTION:

The engine should not be raced to such a speed that the needle enters the red zone on the tachometer face. This can cause severe engine damage and may void your warranty.

B360B01Y-AAT

FRONT FOG LIGHT SWITCH

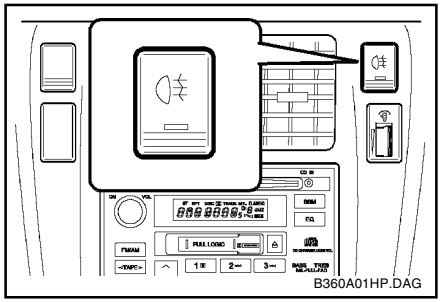


B360B01HP.DAG

To turn on the front fog lights, place the switch in the "ON" position. They will light when the headlight switch is in the first or second position.

B360A01HP-GAT

REAR FOG LIGHT SWITCH



To turn on the rear fog lights, push the switch. They will light when the headlight switch is in the second position or the front fog light is turned on and the key is in the "ON" position.

ZB120A1-E

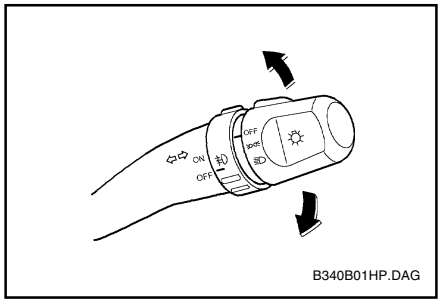
MULTI FUNCTION SWITCH

Turn Signal Operation

To signal an intention to turn right, the switch lever should be pressed down. To signal an intention to turn left, the switch lever should be pushed upwards. In both instances, the turn signal lamps on one side of the car will flash and the warning lamp located in the instrument cluster will flash in sympathy. Upon completion of the manoeuvre, the lever will, under normal circumstances, return to the "OFF" position. However, if the manoeuvre involved only a small movement of the steering wheel, the signal may need to be cancelled manually. If either turn signal indicator flashes more rapidly than normal or refuses to flash at all, a malfunction of the turn signal system may exist.

HPB220B1-E

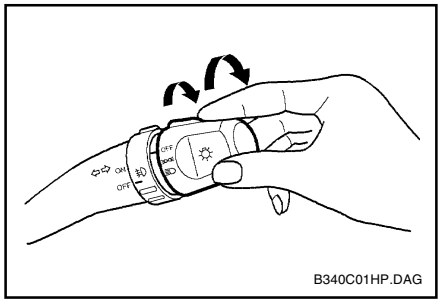
Lane Change Signal



To indicate an intention to change lanes, moving the lever slightly towards the direction of the relevant turn signal will cause the turn signal lights to flash. The lever will either return automatically or will need to be manually moved to the centre position when the lane change indication has been completed.

B340C03FC-EAT

LIGHTING SWITCH



The vehicle sidelights and headlights are operated by rotating the end of the turn signal switch barrel. To operate the parking lights, rotating the switch to the first detent with ignition switch at the "OFF" position will cause the lights to illuminate. To operate the headlights, the turn signal switch barrel should be rotated to the second detent. The headlights will only operate when the ignition switch is at the "ON" position. If the ignition switch is turned to the "OFF" position, only the parking lights will function.

NOTE:

The ignition must be in the "ON" position to turn on the headlights.

Sidelight auto cut

If you do not turn the sidelight "OFF" after driving, the sidelight will automatically shut "OFF" when the driver's door is opened.

To turn them "ON" again, you must simply turn the ignition key to the "ON" position.

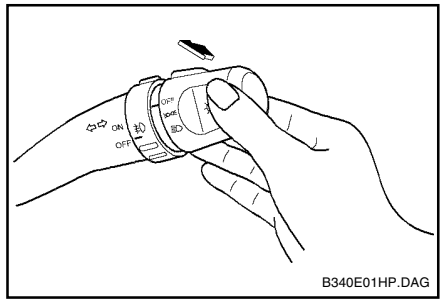
ZB120D1-E

HIGH AND LOW BEAM

To turn on the headlight high beams, push the lever forward (away from you). For low beams, pull the lever back (toward you). The appropriate headlight beam indicator light will come on at the same time.

SB220E1-E

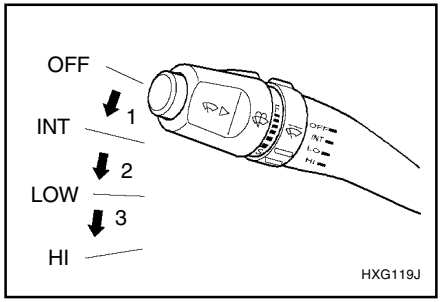
HEADLIGHT FLASH



The headlights may be flashed by pulling the turn signal switch lever towards the steering wheel. The headlights will be extinguished when the switch is released.

ZB130A2-E

WINDSCREEN WIPER AND WASHER SWITCH



The windscreen wiper switch has three positions.

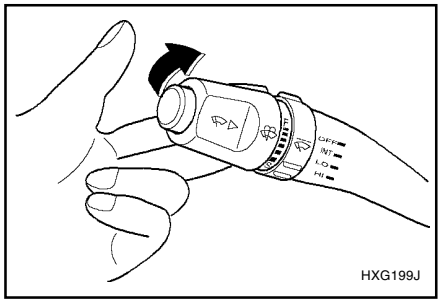
1. Intermittent operation
2. Low speed operation
3. High speed operation

NOTE:

To prevent damage to the wiper system, do not attempt to wipe away heavy accumulations of snow or ice. Accumulated snow and ice should be removed manually. If there is only a light layer of snow or ice, operate the heater in the defrost mode to melt the snow or ice before using the wiper.

YB130B1-E

WINDSCREEN WASHER OPERATION

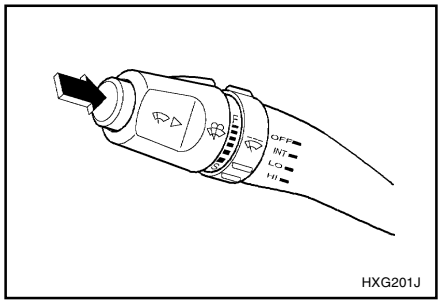


To use the windscreen washer, pull the wiper/washer lever toward the steering wheel. When the washer lever is operated, the wipers automatically make two passes across the windshield. The washer continues to operate until the lever is released.

NOTE:

In winter conditions where screen washer icing occurs, a winter screen wash additive containing an anti-freeze component may be used. Only fluids specifically intended for this purpose should be used. Ensure that undiluted additive is not spilt upon the vehicle paintwork and that engine coolant anti-freeze is not used for this purpose or damage to the paintwork may occur.

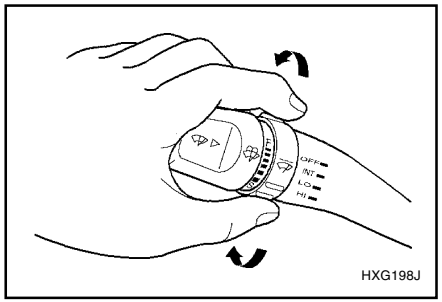
Mist Wiper Operation



If a single wipe is desired in mist, push the MIST operation switch at the end of the windscreen wiper and washer control lever.

OB140A1-E

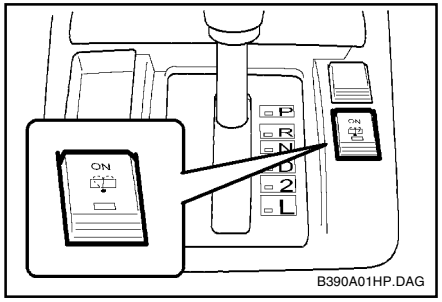
VARIABLE INTERMITTENT WIPE FACILITY



The variable intermittent wipe facility is operated by moving the windscreen wiper switch to the first position. The time period between wipes is adjusted by moving the rotary control on the windscreen wiper switch barrel. This is also varied automatically depending on your road speed.

B390A01HP-EAT

REAR WINDOW WIPER AND WASHER (Not all models)



The rear window wiper and washer are turned on by depressing the button. Washer fluid is sprayed onto the glass as long as the " " is depressed.

1. When the "ON" position is depressed, the rear window wiper starts to operate continuously.
2. When the " " position is depressed, the rear window wiper starts to operate three times after the washer fluid sprays onto the rear window.

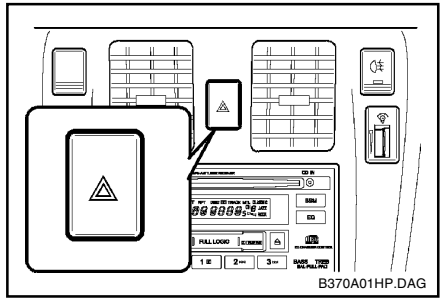
Do not operate the washer continuously for more than 15 seconds or when the fluid reservoir is empty; this could damage the system. Do not operate the wiper when the window is dry; this can result in scratching as well as premature wiper blade wear.
For the reason stated above,do not operate the washer when the washer fluid reservoir is empty.

NOTE:

- **In icy or freezing weather, be sure the wiper blades are not frozen to the glass prior to operating the wipers.**
- **In areas where water freezes in winter, use windscreen washer antifreeze.**

SB240A1-E

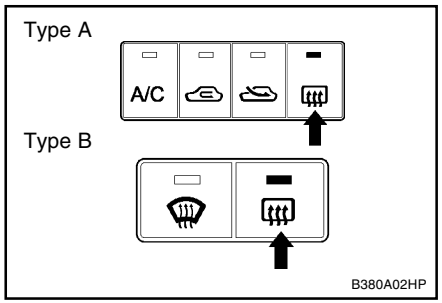
HAZARD WARNING SYSTEM



The hazard warning system should be used whenever it becomes necessary to stop the car in a hazardous location. The hazard warning system is operated by depressing the switch at which time all turn signal lights will flash simultaneously and the turn signal warning lights located within the instrument cluster will flash simultaneously.
The hazard warning system may be turned off by depressing the switch again.

SB250A1-E

HEATED REAR WINDOW (Not all models)



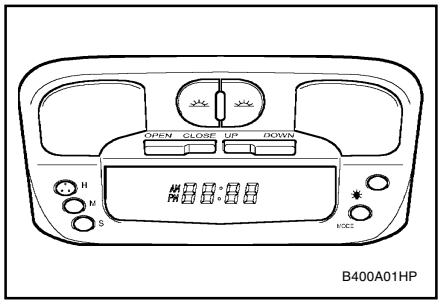
To operate the heated rear window depress the switch shown. The heated rear window will automatically turn off after 20 minutes or when the ignition is turned off.
The system may be turned off manually by depressing the switch again.

CAUTION:
The inside of the rear windscreen should never be cleaned with a hard or sharp implement since damage to the heating element may occur. The glass should only be cleaned with a soft cloth or chamois leather with the use only of a mild detergent or proprietary glass cleaner where necessary. Only horizontal movement of the cloth should be made when cleaning the glass and care should be exercised to ensure that the heating elements are not damaged by rings or jewellery whilst the glass is being cleaned.

NOTE:
The ignition must be in the "ON" position for the heated rear window to operate.

B400A01HP-EAT

DIGITAL CLOCK

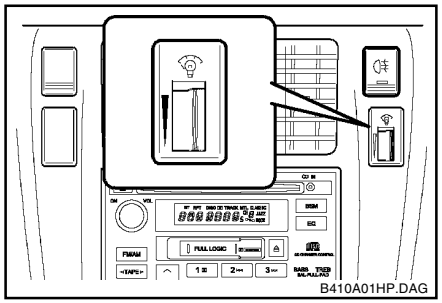


There are five control buttons for the digital clock. Their functions are:

1. **HOUR** - Push "H" to advance the hour indicated.
2. **MIN** - Push "M" to advance the minute indicated.
3. **RESET** - Push "S" to reset minutes to ":00" to facilitate resetting the clock to the correct time. When this is done:
   Pressing "S" between 10 : 30 and 11 : 29 changes the readout to 11 : 00.
   Pressing "S" between 11 : 31 and 12 : 29 changes the readout to 12 : 00.
4. **MODE** - Push "MODE" button to display a 12- or 24-hour clock.
   When the 12-hour clock is in use, the letters AM or PM appear with the time.
5. ☀ - The time is displayed on the LCD by pushing in on the switch and is turned off by pushing in on the switch again.

ZB200A1-E

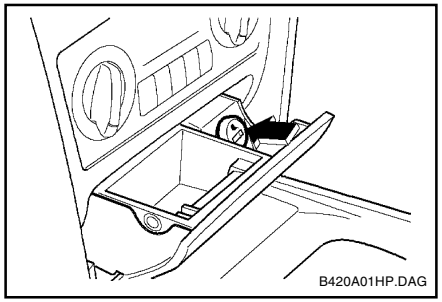
RHEOSTAT SWITCH



The panel lamps may be dimmed by use of the rheostat, turning the knob to decrease or increase the illumination intensity as required.

B420A02A-EAT

CIGAR LIGHTER



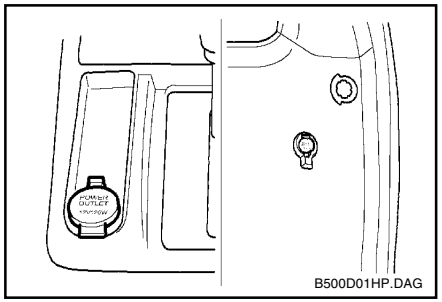
For the cigar lighter to work, the key must be in the "ACC" position or the "ON" position.
To use the cigar lighter, push it all the way into its socket. When the element has heated, the lighter will pop out to the "ready" position.
Do not hold the cigar lighter pressed in. This can damage the heating element and create a fire hazard.
If it is necessary to replace the cigar lighter, use only a genuine Hyundai replacement or its approved equivalent.

CAUTION:

Do not use electric accessories or equipment other than the Hyundai genuine parts in the socket.

B500D07O-EAT

POWER OUTLET (Not all models)



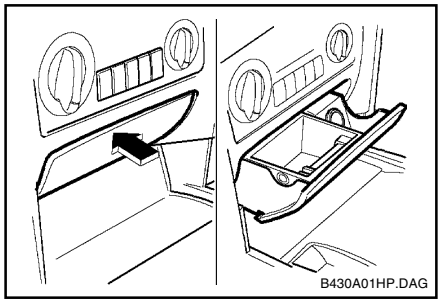
These supply 12V electric power to operate electric accessories or equipment only when the key is in the "ON" or "ACC" position.

CAUTION:

Do not use the power outlet to connect electric accessories or equipment other than those designed to operate on 12 volts.

B430A01Y-AAT

FRONT ASHTRAY

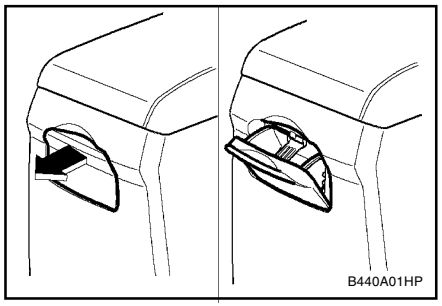


The front ashtray may be opened by pushing and releasing the ashtray/cigarette lighter door at its top edge.

To remove the ashtray in order to clean it, the metal ash receptacle should be removed from the ashtray door. Do not attempt to remove the entire ashtray door assembly or damage will result. Instead, push the metal ash receptacle down and forward in the ashtray door, and it can then be lifted out. To reinstall it, place it in the proper position and press it down and forward to reengage the ash receptacle rear lip in the ashtray door. The ashtray light will only illuminate when the exterior body lights are switched on.

B440A01E-AAT

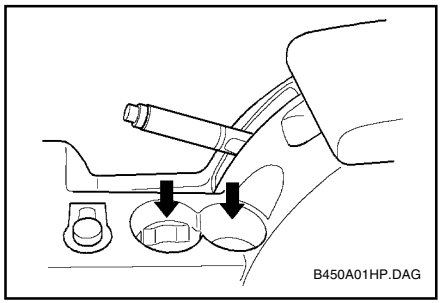
REAR ASHTRAY



The rear ashtray may be opened by pulling it out by its top edge. To remove the ashtray to empty or clean it, press down on the spring-loaded tab inside the ashtray and lift the ashtray upward and pull it all the way out.

B450A01O-GAT

DRINK HOLDER



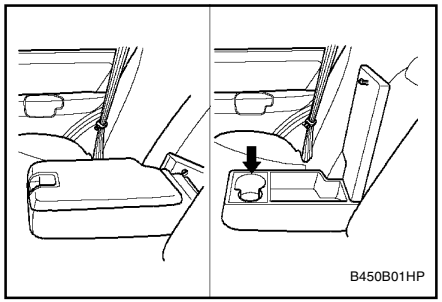
The drink holder is located on the main console for holding cups or cans.

WARNING:

Do not place objects other than cups or cans in the drink holder. Such objects can be thrown out in the event of a sudden stop or an accident, possibly injuring the passengers in the vehicle.

B450B01HP-GAT

REAR DRINK HOLDER



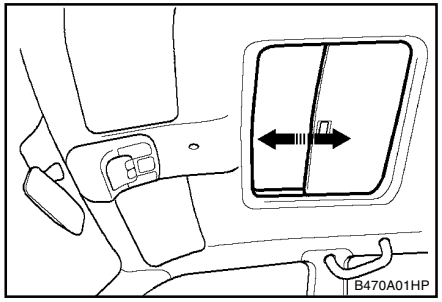
The rear drink holder is located in the rear seat arm rest for holding cups or cans. The rear drink holder can be used by opening the lid of arm rest.

WARNING:

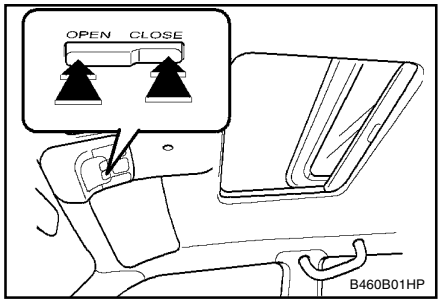
Do not place objects other than cups or cans in the drink holder. Such objects can be thrown out in the event of a sudden stop or an accident, possibly injuring the passengers in the vehicle.

HPB330A1-E

SUNROOF (Not all models)



The electrically operated sunroof may be used only whilst the ignition switch is at the "ON" position. The sunroof is equipped with a sunshade which may be used whilst the sunroof is at the closed position to obscure incoming light.
The sunshade is automatically opened whenever the sunroof is opened but must be manually closed by sliding forward after the sunroof is closed.
When the sunroof is opened, the wind deflector will automatically rise to the upper position and will automatically retract when the sunroof is closed.



The sunroof can be electrically opened or closed. The sunroof is moved to its fully open position by pushing the "OPEN" switch, and to stop at the desired position, push in any switches (Open, Close, Up, Down).
To close, press and hold the "CLOSE" button. Release the button when the sunroof reaches the desired position.

CAUTION:

- **Do not open the sunroof in severe cold temperature or when it is covered with ice or snow.**
- **Periodically remove any dirt that may have accumulated on the guide rails.**

WARNING:

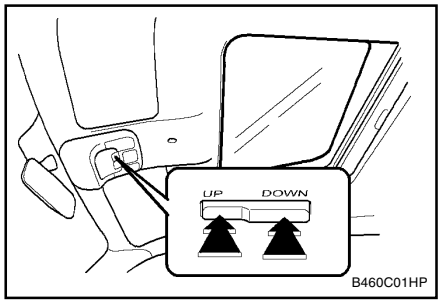
- **Ensure that the sunroof and guide rails are clear of obstructions before closing the sunroof and ensure that nothing may become entrapped between the sunroof**

panel and the vehicle body whilst the sunroof is being closed.

- **Do not stand up or extend any portion of your body out of the opening whilst the vehicle is moving.**

SB330C1-E

Tilting the Sunroof System



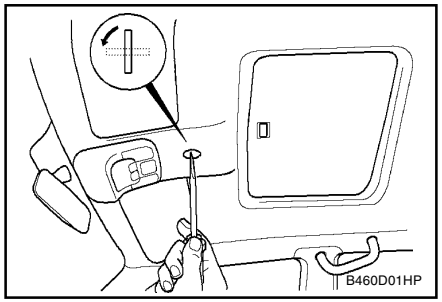
The sunroof can be tilted and closed by depressing the button indicated. Release the button when the sunroof reaches the up position.

NOTE:

The sunroof should not be opened when water or standing rain is on the roof panel. Driving the vehicle for a short distance will allow the water to disperse naturally at which point the sunroof may be opened.

B460D01HP-EAT

Manual Operation of Sunroof

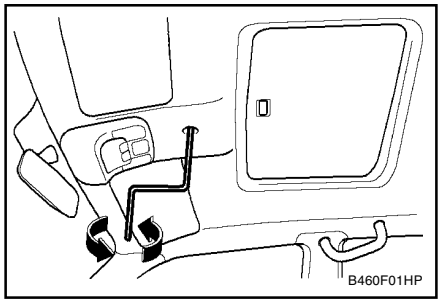


If the sunroof fails to operate:

1. Remove the round plug in the front of the roof panel with a flat-bladed screwdriver or coin.

CAUTION:

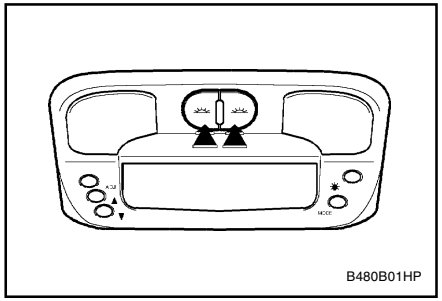
Remove the round plug with the groove pointing to the front and the rear. Otherwise, the projections of the plug may break if it is not positioned properly.



2. Insert the hexagonal head wrench provided with the vehicle into the socket. This wrench can be found in the glove box or the tool bag.
3. Turn the wrench clockwise to open or counterclockwise to close.

B480B01Y-AAT

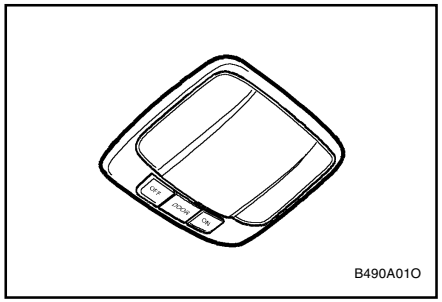
MAP LIGHT



Push in the map light switch to turn the light on or off. This light produces a spot beam for convenient use as a map light at night or as a personal light for the driver and the passenger.

B490A02Y-AAT

INTERIOR LIGHT



The interior courtesy light has three buttons. The three buttons are:

o DOOR

In the "DOOR" position, the interior courtesy light comes on when any door is opened regardless of the ignition key position. The light goes out gradually 6 seconds after the door is closed.

o ON

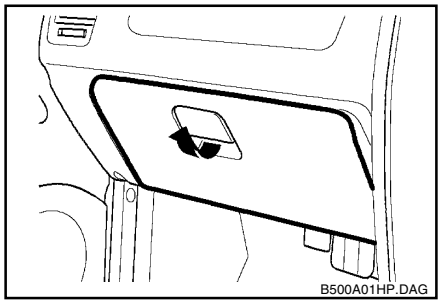
In the "ON" position, the light stays on at all times.

o OFF

In the "OFF" position, the light stays off at all times even though a door is open.

B500A01A-EAT

GLOVE BOX



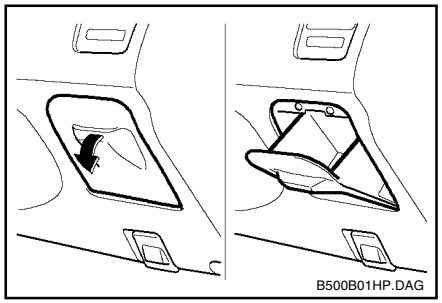
WARNING:

To avoid the possibility of injury in case of an accident or a sudden stop, the glove box door should be kept closed whilst the car is in motion.

o To open the glove box, pull on the glove box release lever.

B500B01HP-DAT

MULTI BOX (Not all models)

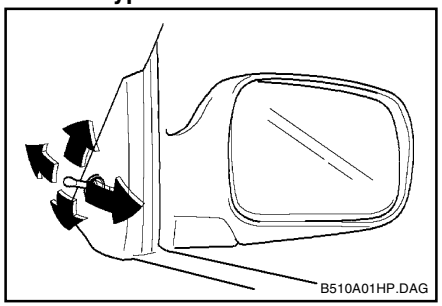


The multi box may be opened by pulling it out by its grip.It is used for storing small articles.

B510A01A-AAT

OUTSIDE REARVIEW MIRROR

Manual Type



The outside rearview mirrors are equipped with a remote control for your convenience. It is operated by the control lever in the bottom front corner of the window.

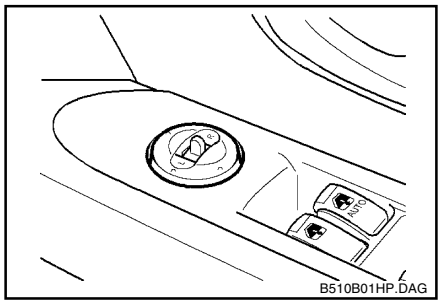
Before driving away, always check that your mirrors are positioned so you can see directly behind you. When using the mirror, always exercise caution when attempting to judge the distance of vehicles behind or along side of you.

CAUTION:

If the mirror control is jammed with ice, do not attempt to break it free using the control handle or by manipulating the face of the mirror. Use an approved spray de-icer (not radiator antifreeze) to release the frozen mechanism or move the vehicle to a warm place and allow the ice to melt.

B510B01Y-EAT

Electric Type (Not all models)

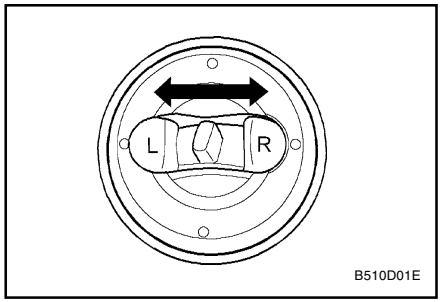


The outside rearview mirrors can be adjusted to your preferred rear vision, both directly behind the vehicle, and to the rear of the left and right sides.

The remote control outside rearview mirror switch controls the adjustments for both right and left outside mirrors.

To adjust the position of either mirror:

1. Move the selecting switch to the right or left to activate the adjustable mechanism for the corresponding door mirror.
2. Now, adjust mirror angle by depressing the appropriate perimeter switch as illustrated.



CAUTION:

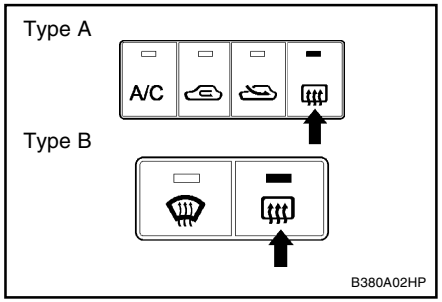
- **Do not operate the switch continuously for an unnecessary length of time.**
- **Scraping ice from the mirror face could cause permanent damage. To remove any ice, use a sponge, soft cloth or approved de-icer.**

WARNING:

Be careful when judging the size or distance of any object seen in the passenger side rear view mirror. It is a convex mirror with a curved surface. Any objects seen in this mirror are closer than they appear.

HPB270C1-E

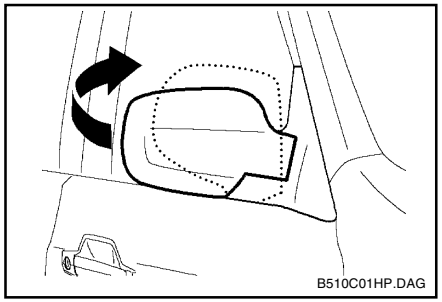
OUTSIDE REARVIEW MIRROR HEATER (Not all models)



The outside rearview mirror heater is actuated in connection with heated rear window.
So, to heat the outside rearview mirror glass, push in the switch for heated rear window.
The rearview mirror glass will be heated for defrosting or defogging and will give you improved rear vision in all weather conditions.
Push the switch again to turn the heater off.
The outside rear view mirror heater automatically turns itself off after 20 minutes.

YB270D2-E

FOLDING THE OUTSIDE REARVIEW MIRRORS



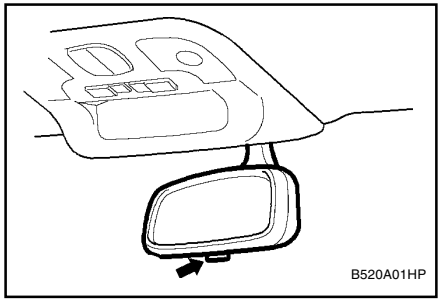
To fold the outside rearview mirrors, push them towards the rear.
The outside rearview mirrors can be folded rearward for parking in restricted areas.

WARNING:

Do not adjust or fold the outside rearview mirrors whilst the vehicle is moving. This could result in loss of control, and an accident causing death, serious injury or property damage.

SB370A1-E

INTERIOR REARVIEW MIRROR

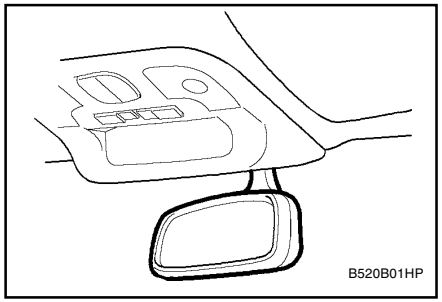


The interior mirror is of the day/night type to enable the glare of headlights from following vehicles to be eliminated during night time driving.
The tab located at the bottom of the mirror should be set to the position nearest the windscreen for normal day time driving, and flipped towards the rear of the vehicle to eliminate glare during night time driving. To adjust the field of vision, the mirror may be moved by hand upon the mounting.

NOTE:
The mirror should always be adjusted prior to setting the vehicle in motion.

B520B01O-EAT

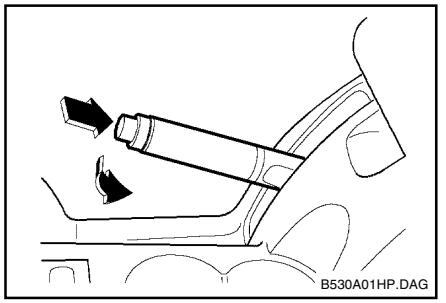
DAY/NIGHT INSIDE REARVIEW MIRROR (Electric type) (Not all models)



The electric type day/night inside rearview mirror controls automatically the glare of headlights of the car behind you. Adjust the rearview mirror to the desired position.

SB380A1-E

PARKING BRAKE

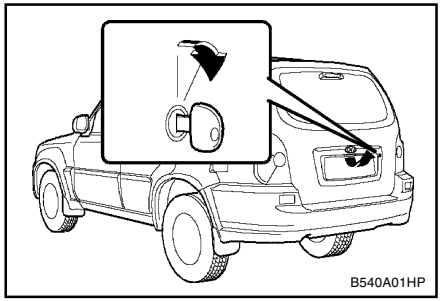


The parking brake must always be set when the vehicle is to be left unattended. When the parking brake is applied, and the ignition key is at the "ON" position, the parking brake warning light will be illuminated. Before driving the vehicle, the parking brake must be fully released and the warning light extinguished.

- To set the parking brake, apply the foot brake and pull the parking brake lever up. Release the button when the brake is fully applied.
- To release the parking brake, apply the foot brake and pull up the parking brake lever slightly. Depress the button and lower the lever.

B540A01O-EAT

HATCHBACK DOOR



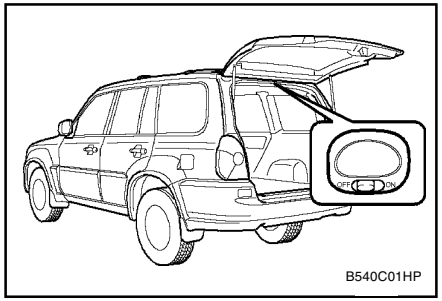
WARNING:

The hatchback door should always be kept completely closed whilst the vehicle is in motion. If it is left open or ajar, poisonous exhaust gases may enter the car resulting in serious illness or death to the occupants. See additional warnings concerning exhaust gases on page 2-1.

- o The hatchback door is opened by first turning the key clockwise to release the lock, then raising the door manually.
- o To close, lower the door, then press down on it until it locks. To be sure the door is securely fastened, always try to pull it up again.

B540C01HP-EAT

Luggage compartment light

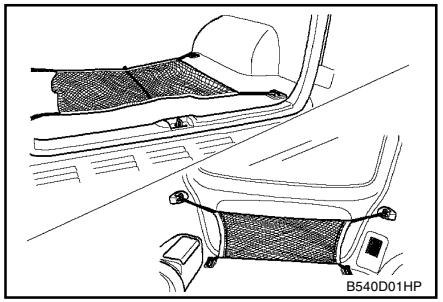


Luggage compartment light has a 3-position switch. The three positions are:

- o In the "MIDDLE" position, the luggage compartment light comes on when the hatchback door is opened, then goes out when it is closed.
- o In the "ON" position, the light stays on at all times.
- o In the "OFF" position, the light stays off at all times.

B540D02HP-DAT

Luggage Net



Some objects can be kept in the net at the luggage compartment.
Use the luggage net on the floor or at the back of the luggage compartment to prevent objects from sliding.

CAUTION:

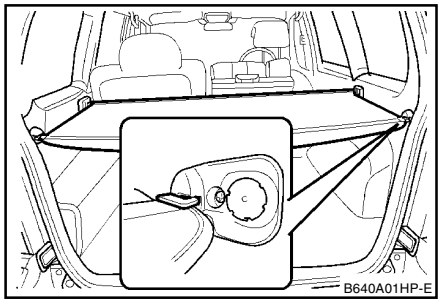
To prevent damage to the goods or the vehicle, care should be taken when carrying fragile or bulky objects in the luggage compartment.

WARNING:

Avoid eye injury. DO NOT overstretch. ALWAYS keep face and body out of recoil path. DO NOT use when strap has visible signs of wear or damage.

B640A01S-EAT

CARGO SECURITY SCREEN (Not all models)



To use the security screen, pull it out of the retractor and hook it to the anchors as illustrated.

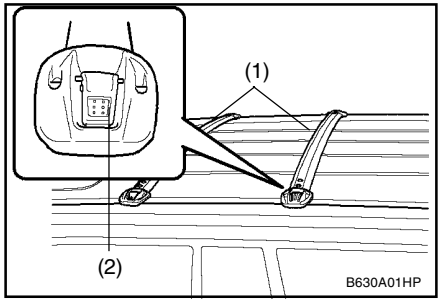
B650A01S-AAT

Stowage Precautions

1. Do not place objects on the cargo security screen. Such objects may be thrown about inside the vehicle and possibly injure vehicle occupants during an accident or when braking.
2. For better fuel economy, do not carry unnecessary weight.
3. Never allow anyone to ride in the luggage compartment. It is designed for luggage only.
4. Try to maintain the balance of the vehicle and locate the weight as far forward as possible.

B630A01HP-EAT

ROOF BARS (Not all models)



If your Hyundai has roof bars fitted, you can load cargo / luggage on top of these. The two roof bars (1) can be repositioned forward and rearward for conveniently loading cargo / luggage on to them. With an assistant on the opposite side of the vehicle, press and hold the slider lock buttons (2) on each side, then move the roof bar to the correct location.
The roof bars automatically lock in the locating hole when the slider lock buttons are released.

CAUTION:

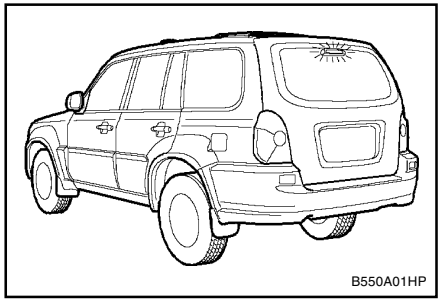
- **The roof bars should be positioned before securing a load to them.**
- **If a sunroof is fitted, do not position the roof bar loads which could interfere with the opening of the sunroof.**
- **The following specifications are recommended when loading cargo or luggage.**

ROOF BARS	75 lb (34 kg) EVENLY DISTRIBUTED

- **Loading cargo or luggage above 75 lb (34 kg) on the roof bars may damage your vehicle.**
  When you carry large objects, never let them hang over the rear or the sides of your vehicle.
- **To prevent damage or loss of cargo as you are driving, check frequently to make sure the luggage carrier and cargo are still securely fastened.**
- **Always drive your vehicle at a moderate speed.**
- **Loading cargo or luggage over specification on the roof bars may damage stability of your vehicle.**

B550A01A-EAT

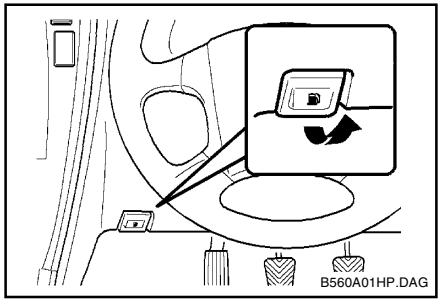
HIGH-MOUNTED REAR STOP LIGHT (Not all models)



In addition to the lower-mounted rear stoplights on either side of the car, the high mounted rear stoplight in the centre of the rear window also lights when the brakes are applied.

HPB360A1-E

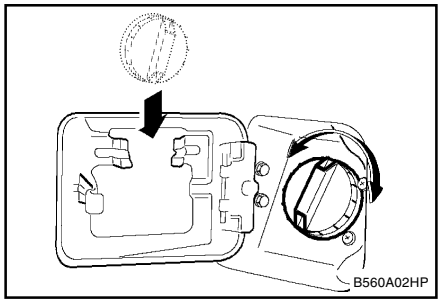
REMOTE FUEL-FILLER FLAP RELEASE



The fuel-filler flap may be opened from inside the vehicle by pulling up on the fuel-filler flap opener located below the left of the driver's side crash pad.

NOTE:

If the fuel-filler flap will not open because ice has formed around it, tap lightly or push on it to break the ice and release it. Do not lever the flap. If necessary, spray around the flap with an approved de-icer fluid (do not use radiator anti-freeze) or move the vehicle to a warm place and allow the ice to melt.



WARNING:

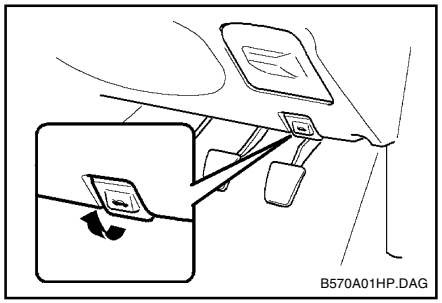
Fuel vapors are dangerous. Before refueling, always stop the engine and never allow sparks or open flames near the filler area. If you need to replace the filler cap, use a genuine Hyundai replacement part.

If you open the fuel filler cap during high ambient temperatures, a slight "pressure sound" may be heard. This is normal and not a cause for concern.

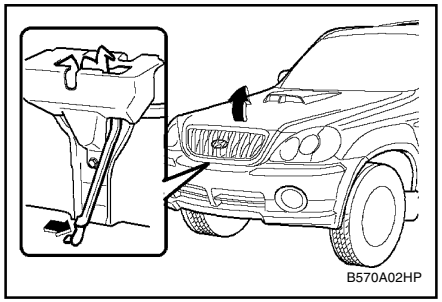
Whenever you open the fuel filler cap, turn it slowly.

DB370A2-E

BONNET RELEASE



To open the bonnet, pull the release lever inside the vehicle to unlatch the bonnet. At the front of the vehicle, depress the safety catch as shown and raise the bonnet by hand. When closing the bonnet, slowly close the bonnet and make sure it locks into place.

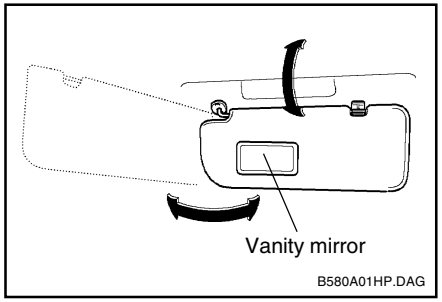


WARNING:

- **Always double check to be sure that the bonnet is firmly latched before driving away. If it is not latched, the bonnet could fly open whilst the vehicle is being driven, causing a total loss of visibility, which might result in an accident.**
- **Do not move the vehicle with the bonnet in the raised position, as vision is obstructed and the bonnet could fall or be damaged.**

B580A01E-EAT

SUN-VISOR



Sun visors are fitted to both the driver and passenger side of the vehicle. Certain derivatives are equipped with a vanity mirror which is located on the back of the driver and passenger visor. The visor may be lowered to reduce the amount of glare from directly ahead, or may be moved towards the side window to reduce glare from the side of the vehicle, once the inner pivot has been unclipped from the bracket.

NOTE:

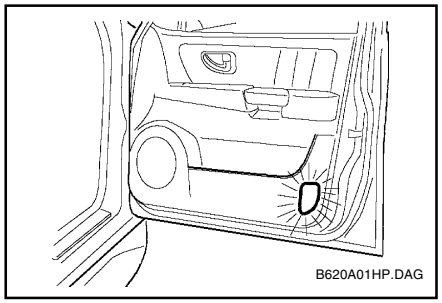
The Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) label containing useful information can be found on the back of each sun visor.

WARNING:

Do not place the sun-visor in such a manner that it obscures visibility of the roadway, traffic or other objects.

B620A01S-EAT

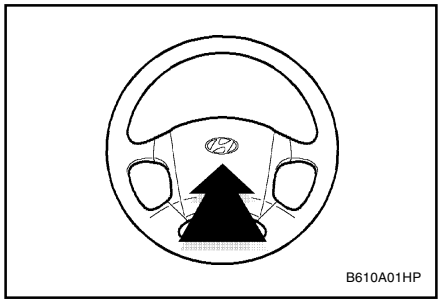
FRONT DOOR EDGE WARNING LIGHT



A red light comes on when the front door is opened. The purpose of this light is to assist when you get in or out and also to warn passing vehicles.

B610A01L-GAT

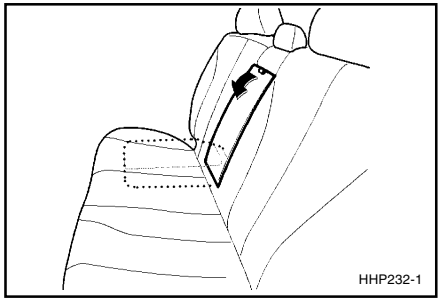
HORN



Press the pad on the steering wheel to sound the horn.

HPB830A1-E

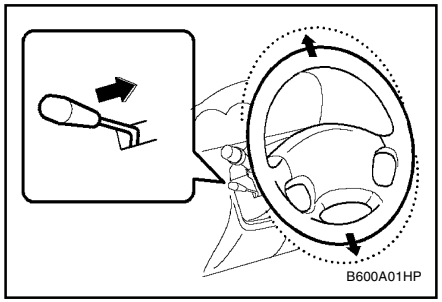
PACKAGE ARM REST (Not all models)



This arm rest is located in the centre of rear seat back. A storage box and two drink holders are included for your convenience.

B600A01HP-EAT

STEERING WHEEL TILT LEVER



To adjust the steering wheel:

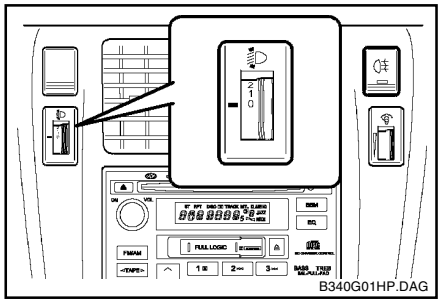
1. Pull the lever toward you and hold it to unlock.
2. Raise or lower the steering wheel to the desired position.
3. After adjustment, release the lever.

WARNING:

Do not attempt to adjust the steering wheel whilst driving as this may result in loss of control of the vehicle and serious injury or death.

B340G01HP-EAT

HEADLIGHT LEVELING DEVICE SYSTEM



To adjust the headlight beam level according to the number of the passengers and the loading weight in the luggage area, turn the beam leveling switch.

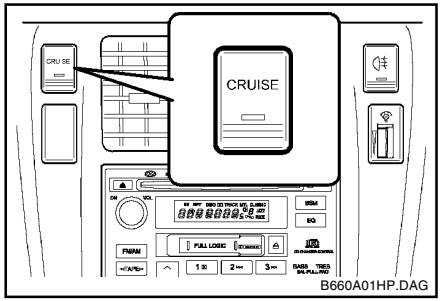
The higher the number of the switch position, the lower the headlight beam level. Always keep the headlight beam at the proper leveling position, or headlights may dazzle other road users.

Listed below are the examples of recommeneded switch settings. For loading conditions other than those listed below, adjust the switch position so that the beam level may be the nearest as the condition obtained according to the list.

LOADING CONDITION	Switch Position
Driver only	0
Driver + Front Passenger	0
Full Passengers	1
Full Passengers + Maximum Permissible Loading	2
Driver + Maximum Permissible Loading	3

B660A01S-EAT

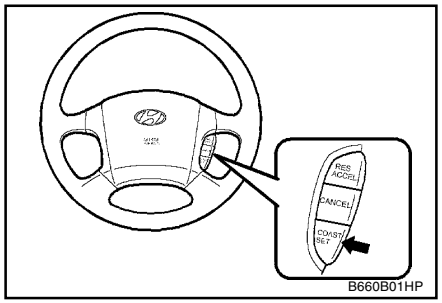
CRUISE CONTROL (Not all models)



The cruise control system provides a constant speed hold function which may be determined at will. The system is most suited to use during freeway/motorway driving where constant speed motoring at speeds in excess of 25 m.p.h. may be undertaken.

B660B02L-EAT

To Set the Cruise Speed

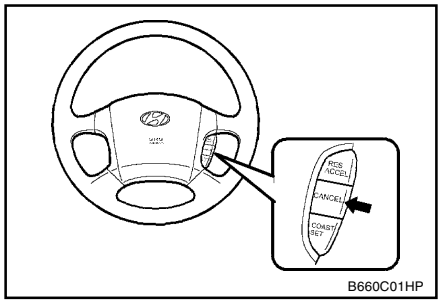


1. Push in the cruise control main switch. This turns the system on.
2. Accelerate to desired cruising speed above 25 mph (40 km/h).
3. Push the control switch "SET" (COAST) position. The "CRUISE" indicator light in the instrument cluster will illuminate after you have set the vehicle speed at the desired speed.
4. Remove your foot from the accelerator pedal and the desired speed will automatically be maintained.
5. To increase speed, depress the accelerator pedal enough for the vehicle to exceed the preset speed. When you remove your foot from the accelerator pedal, the vehicle will return to the speed you have set.

NOTE:
If the vehicle speed decreases more than 9 mph (15 km/h) below the set speed or decreases below 25 mph (40 km/h), the cruise control system will automatically cancel the set speed.

B660C02L-EAT

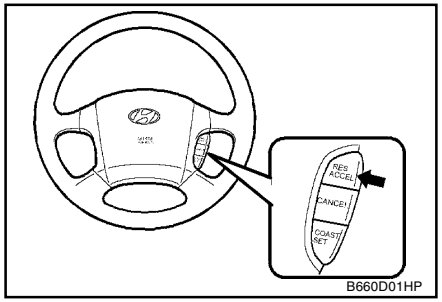
To Cancel the Cruise Speed



Do one of the following:
- o Push the control switch "CANCEL".
- o Depress the brake pedal.
- o Depress the clutch pedal (Manual transmission).
- o Shift the selector lever in "P" or "N" position (Automatic transmission).
- o Decrease the vehicle speed lower than memory speed by 9 mph (15 km/h).
- o Decrease the vehicle speed approximately to less than 25 mph (40 km/h).
- o Release the main switch.

B660D01L-AAT

To Resume the Preset Speed



B660D01HP

The vehicle will automatically resume the speed set prior to cancellation when you push the control switch "RESUME (ACCEL)" (when travelling above 25 mph).

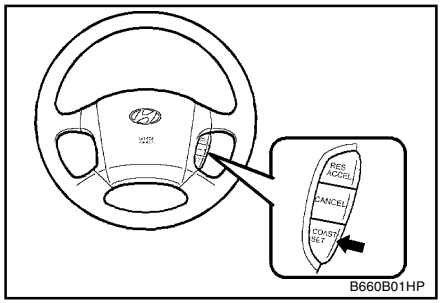
B660E01L-EAT

To Reset at a Faster Speed

1. Push the control switch "RESUME (ACCEL)"
2. Accelerate to desired speed. Whilst the control switch is held, the vehicle will gradually gain speed.

B660F01L-EAT

To Reset at a Slower Speed



B660B01HP

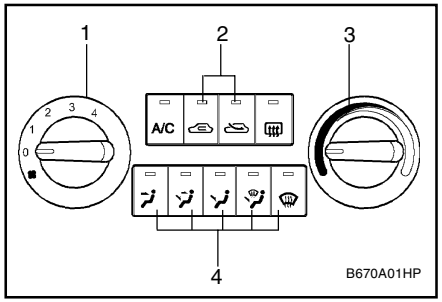
1. Push the control button "SET (COAST)". The vehicle will decelerate.
2. When the desired speed is obtained, release the control button. Whilst the control switch is pushed, the vehicle speed will gradually decrease.

WARNING:

- **Keep the main switch off when not using the cruise control.**
- **Do not use the cruise control when it may not be safe to keep the car at a constant speed, for instance, driving in heavy or varying traffic, or on slippery (rainy, icy or snow-covered) or winding roads or over 6% up-hill or down-hill roads.**
- **Pay particular attention to the driving conditions whenever using the cruise control system.**
- **During cruise-speed driving with manual transmission vehicle, do not shift into neutral without depressing the clutch pedal, since the engine will be overrevved. If this happens, depress the clutch pedal or release the main switch.**
- **During normal cruise control operation, when the set button is activated or reactivated after applying the brakes, the cruise control will energize after approximately 3 seconds. This delay is normal.**

B670A01HP-EAT

HEATING AND VENTILATION

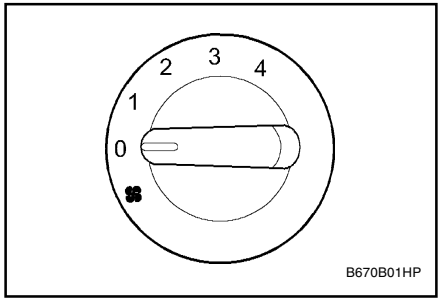


There are four controls for the heating and cooling system. They are:

1. Fan speed control.
   This is used to turn the fan on and select the fan speed.
2. Air intake control.
   This allows you to select fresh outside air or recirculation inside air.
3. Temperature control.
   This is used to turn the heating system on and off and to select the degree of heating desired.
4. Air flow control.
   This is used to direct the flow of air.
   Air can be directed to the floor, dashboard outlets, or windscreen. Five symbols are used to represent Face, Bi-Level, Floor, Floor-Defrost and Defrost air positions.

B670B01A-AAT

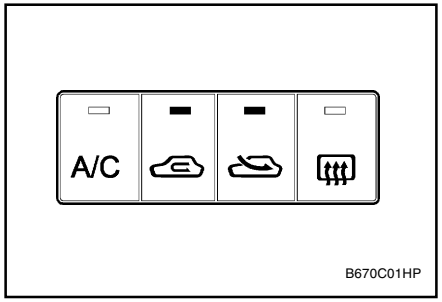
Fan Speed Control (Blower Control)



This is used to turn the blower fan on and off and to select the fan speed.
The blower fan speed, and therefore the volume of air delivered from the system, may be controlled manually by setting the blower control between the "1" and "4" position.

B670C01Y-EAT

Air Intake Control



This is used to select fresh outside air or recirculation inside air.

Fresh
Recirculation

With the " " mode selected, air enters the vehicle from outside and is heated or cooled according to the other functions selected.
With the " " mode selected, air from within the passenger compartment is drawn through the heating system and heated or cooled according to the other functions selected.

NOTE:

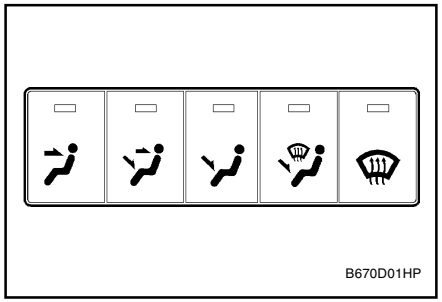
- **It should be noted that prolonged operation of the heating system in " " mode will give rise to fogging of the windscreen**

and side windows and the air within the passenger compartment will become stale. In addition prolonged use of the air conditioning with the "⟨⟩" mode selected may result in the air within the passenger compartment becoming excessively dry.

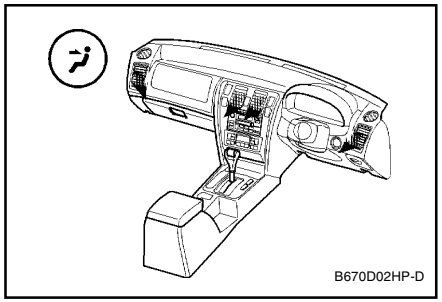
- **When the ignition switch is turned "ON" the air intake control will be changed to "⟨⟩" mode (regardless of switch position). This is normal operation.**

B670D01L-EAT

Air Flow Control

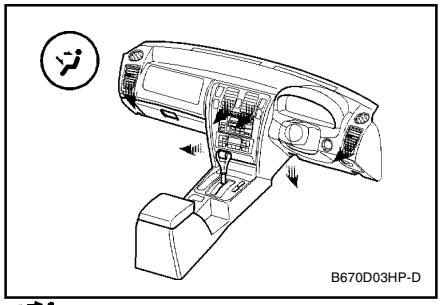


This is used to direct the flow of air. Air can be directed to the floor, dashboard outlets, or windscreen. Five symbols are used to represent Face, Bi-Level, Floor, Floor-Defrost and Defrost air position.



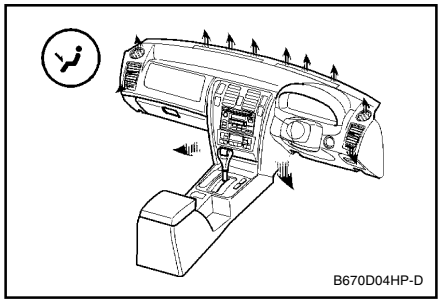
Face-Level

Selecting the "Face" mode will cause air to be discharged through the face level vents.



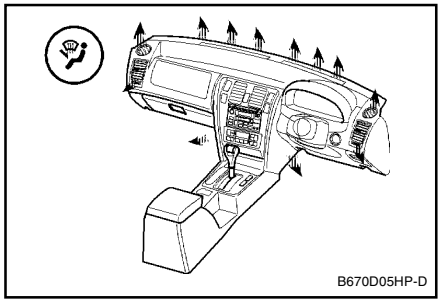
Bi-Level

Air is discharged through the face vents and the floor vents. This makes it possible to have cooler air from the dashboard vents and warmer air from the floor outlets at the same time.



Floor-Level

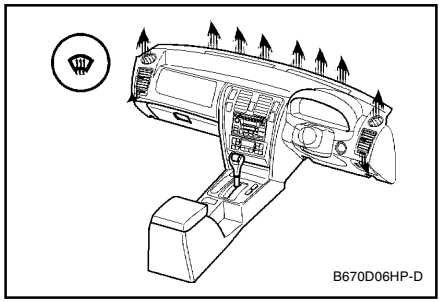
Air is discharged through the floor vents, windscreen defroster nozzle, side defroster nozzle and side ventilator.



Floor-Defrost Level

Air is discharged through the windscreen defrost nozzle, the floor vents, side defroster nozzle and side ventilator.

If the "Floor-Defrost" mode is selected, the A/C will turn on automatically and "Fresh" mode will be activated.

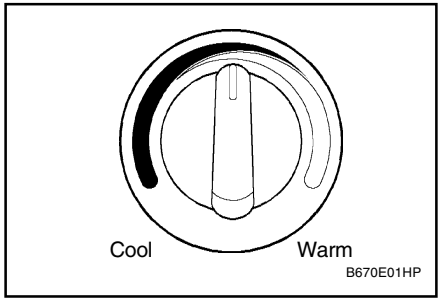


Defrost-Level

Air is discharged through the windscreen defrost nozzle, side defroster nozzle and side ventilator.
If the "Defrost" mode is selected, the A/C will turn on automatically and "Fresh" mode will be activated.

B670E02A-AAT

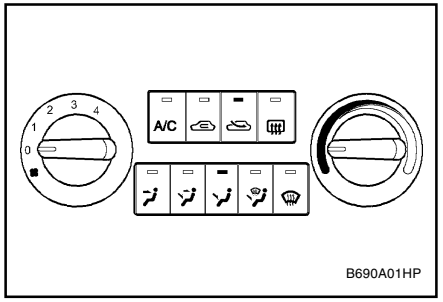
Temperature Control



This control is used to adjust the degree of heating or cooling desired.

B690A01S-AAT

HEATING CONTROLS



For normal heating operation, set the air intake control to the fresh air ( ) position and the air flow control to the floor ( ) position.

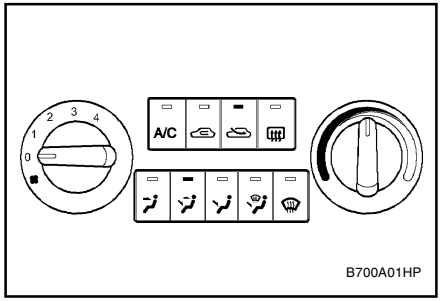
For faster heating, the air intake control should be set in the recirculate ( ) position.

If the windows fog up, set the air flow control to the defrost ( ) position. (The A/C will turn on automatically and "Fresh" mode will be activated.)

For maximum heat, move the temperature control to "Warm".

B700A01A-AAT

BI-LEVEL HEATING

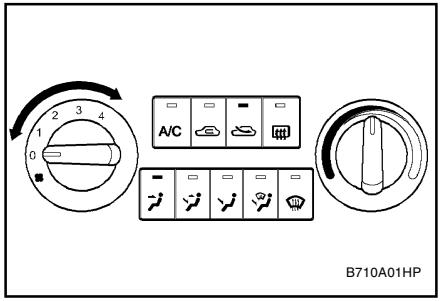


Your Hyundai is equipped with bi-level heating controls. This makes it possible to have cooler air from the dashboard vents and warmer air from the floor outlets at the same time. To use this feature:

- o Set the air intake control to the fresh air ( ) position.
- o Set the air flow control at the bi-level ( ) position.
- o Set the temperature control between "Cool" and "Warm".

B710A01A-AAT

VENTILATION

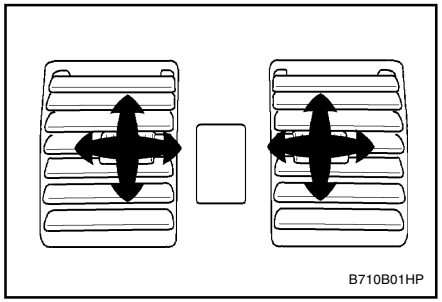


To operate the ventilation system:

- o Set the air intake control to the fresh air ( ) position.
- o To direct all intake air to the dashboard vents, set the airflow control to the face ( ) position.
- o Adjust the fan speed control to the desired speed.
- o Set the temperature control between "Cool" and "Warm".

B710B01S-DAT

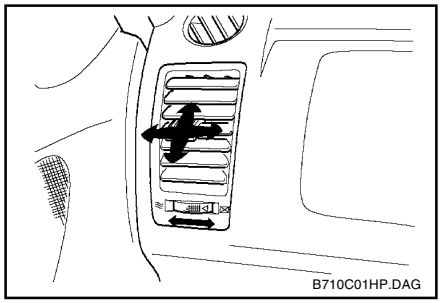
CENTRE VENTILATOR



The centre ventilators are located in the middle of the dashboard. The direction of air flow from the vents in the centre of the dashboard is adjustable.
To control the direction of the air flow, move the knob in the centre of the vent up-and-down and side-to-side.

B710C01HP-DAT

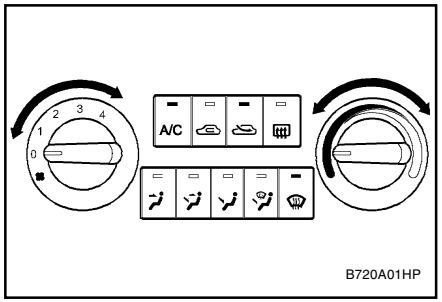
SIDE VENTILATOR



The side ventilators are located on each side of dashboard. To change the direction of the air flow, move the knob in the centre of the vent up-and-down and side-to-side. The side vent knobs control the amount of outside air entering the vehicle through the side vents. The vents are opened when the vent knob is moved to " " position. The vents are closed when the vent knob is moved to " ". Keep these vents clear of any obstructions.

B720A02FC-EAT

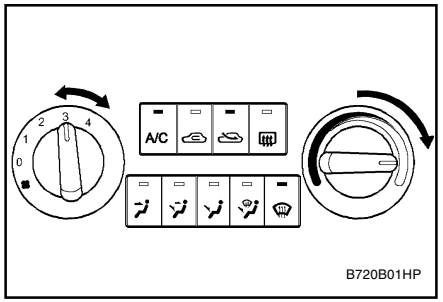
DEFROSTING/DEFOGGING



Use the heating/ventilation system to defrost or defog the windscreen.

To remove interior fog on the windshield:

- o Set the air flow control to the defrost ( ) position.(The A/C will turn on automatically and "Fresh" mode will be activated.)
- o Set the temperature control to the desired position.
- o Set the fan speed control between "1" and "4" position.



To remove frost or exterior fog on the windshield:

- o Set the air flow control to the defrost ( ) position.(The A/C will turn on automatically and "Fresh" mode will be activated.)
- o Set the temperature control to warm.
- o Set the fan speed control to position "3" or "4".

NOTE:

When the A/C is operated continuously on the floor-defrost level ( ) or defrost level ( ), it may cause fog to form on the exterior windscreen. If this occurs, set the air flow control to the face level position ( ) and fan speed control to the low position.

B730A01L-EAT

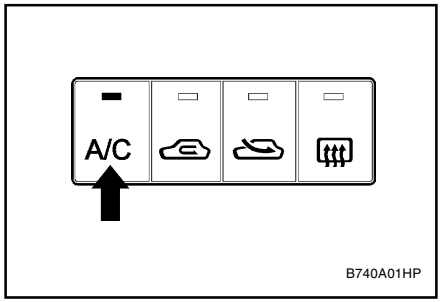
Operation Tips

- To keep dust or unpleasant fumes from entering the car through the ventilation system, temporarily set the air intake control to the position. Be sure to return the control to the position when the irritation has passed to keep fresh air in the vehicle. This will help keep the driver alert and comfortable.
- Air for the heating/cooling system is drawn in through the grilles just ahead of the windscreen. Care should be taken that these are not blocked by leaves, snow, ice or other obstructions.
- To prevent interior fog on the windscreen, set the air intake control to the fresh air ( ) position, and fan speed to the desired position, turn on the air conditioning system, and adjust temperature control to desired temperature.

B740A01S-AAT

AIR CONDITIONING SYSTEM

Air Conditioning Switch (Not all models)

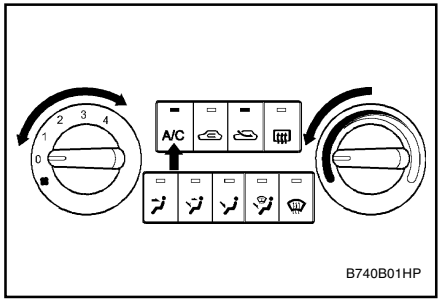


The air conditioning is turned on or off by pushing the A/C button on the heating/air conditioning control panel.

B740B01A-EAT

Air Conditioning Operation

Cooling



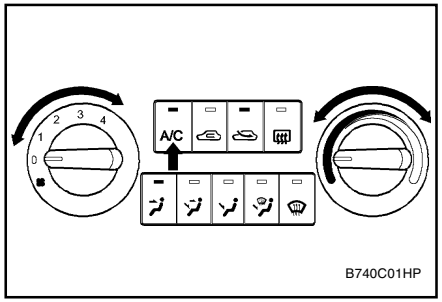
To use the air conditioning to cool the interior:

- Set the side vent control to "⊠", to shut off the outside air entry.
- Turn on the fan control switch.
- Turn on the air conditioning switch by pushing in on the switch. The air conditioning indicator light should come on at the same time.
- Set the air intake control to the fresh air ( ) position.
- Set the temperature control to "Cool". ("Cool" provides maximum cooling. The temperature may be moderated by moving the control toward "Warm".)

o Adjust the fan control to the desired speed. For greater cooling, turn the fan control to one of the higher speeds or temporarily select the recirculate (⟲) position on the air intake control.

B740C01A-AAT

De-Humidified Heating



For dehumidified heating:

o Turn on the fan control switch.
o Turn on the air conditioning switch. The air conditioning indicator light should come on at the same time.
o Set the air intake control to the fresh air (⟲) position.
o Set the air flow control to the face ( ) position.
o Adjust the fan control to the desired speed.
o For more rapid action, set the fan at one of the higher speeds.
o Adjust the temperature control to provide the desired amount of warmth.

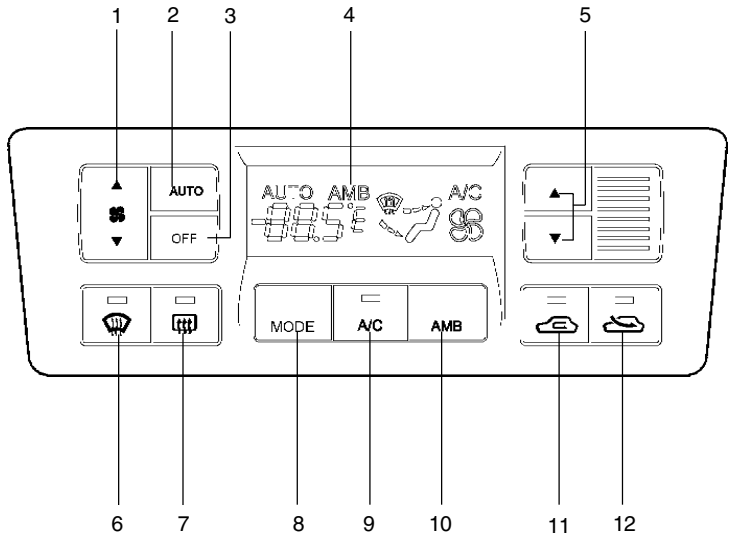
B970A01Y-EAT

AUTOMATIC HEATING AND COOLING CONTROL SYSTEM (Not all models)

Your Hyundai is equipped with an automatic heating and cooling control system controlled by simply setting the desired temperature.

B970B01HP-GAT

Heating and Cooling Controls

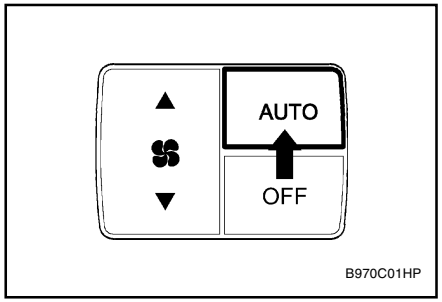


B970B01HP

1. Blower Fan Control Switch
2. AUTO (Automatic Control) Switch
3. OFF Switch
4. Display Window
5. Temperature Control Button
6. Defroster Switch
7. Rear Window Defrost Switch
8. Air Flow Control Switch
9. Air Conditioning Switch
10. Ambient Temperature Switch
11. Air Intake Control Switch (Recirculation air)
12. Air Intake Control Switch (Fresh air)

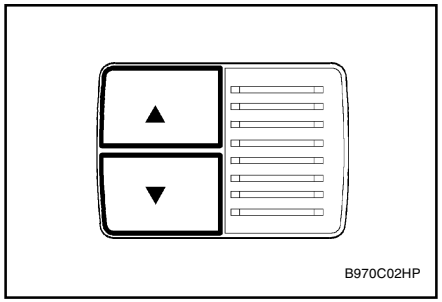
B970C02L-EAT

Automatic Operation



The FATC (Full Automatic Temperature Control) system automatically controls the heating and cooling by doing as follows:

1. Push the "AUTO" switch. The indicator light will come on confirming that the Face, Floor and/or Bi-Level modes as well as the blower speed and air conditioner will be controlled automatically.

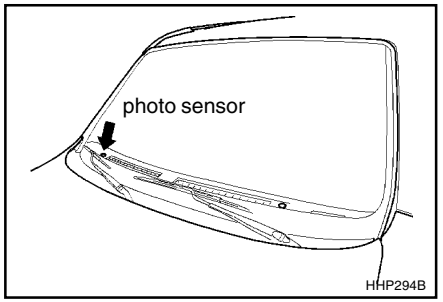


2. Push the "TEMP" button to set the desired temperature.
   The temperature will increase to the maximum 90°F(32°C) by pushing on the ▲ button. Each push of the button will cause the temperature to increase by 1°F(0.5°C).
   The temperature will decrease to the minimum 62°F(17°C) by pushing on the ▼ button. Each push of the button will cause the temperature to decrease by 1°F(0.5°C).

NOTE:

If the battery has been discharged or disconnected, the temperature mode will reset to centigrade degree.
This is a normal condition and you can adjust the temperature mode from centigrade to fahrenheit as follows;

Press the TEMP down (▼) button 3 seconds or more with the AMB button held down. The display shows that the unit of temperature is adjusted to centigrade or fahrenheit (°C → °F or °F → °C).

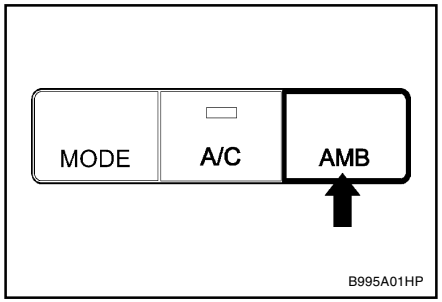


NOTE:

Never place anything over the sensor which is located in the car on the instrument panel to ensure better control of the heating and cooling system.

B995A01Y-AAT

AMBIENT TEMPERATURE SWITCH



Pressing the AMB button displays the ambient temperature on the display.

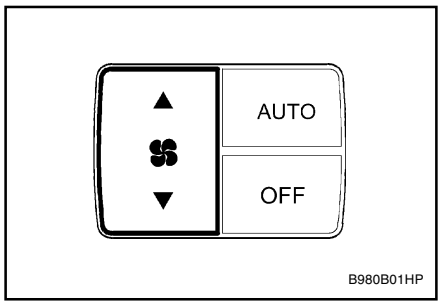
B980A01Y-AAT

MANUAL OPERATION

The heating and cooling system can be controlled manually as well as by pushing buttons other than the "AUTO" button. In this state, the system sequentially works according to the order of buttons selected.
The function of the buttons which are not selected will be controlled automatically.
Press the "AUTO" button in order to convert to automatic control of the system.

B980B01Y-AAT

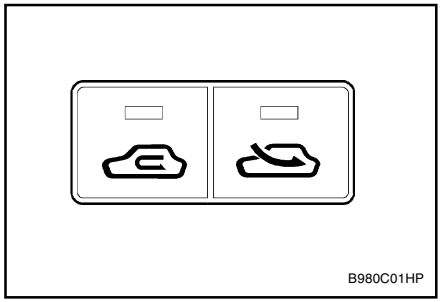
Fan Speed Control



The fan speed can be set to the desired speed by pressing the appropriate fan speed control button. The higher the fan speed is, the more air is delivered. Pressing the "OFF" button turns off the fan.

B670C02HP-EAT

Air Intake Control Switch



This is used to select fresh outside air or recirculation inside air.
To change the air intake control mode, push the control button.

FRESH MODE ( ) : The indicator light on the button is illuminated when the air intake control is fresh mode.

RECIRCULATION MODE ( ) : The indicator light on the button is illuminated when the air intake control is recirculation mode.

With the "Fresh" mode selected, air enters the vehicle from the outside and is heated or cooled according to the function selected.

With the "Recirculation" mode selected, air from within the passenger compartment will be drawn through the heating system heated or cooled according to the function selected.

NOTE:

- **It should be noted that prolonged operation of the heating in "recirculation" mode will give rise to fogging of the windscreen and side windows and the air within the passenger compartment will become stale. In addition, prolonged use of the air conditioning with the "Recirculation" mode selected may result in the air within the passenger compartment becoming excessively dry.**
- **When the ignition switch is turned "ON" the air intake control will be changed to "FRESH" mode (regardless of switch position). This is normal operation. The air intake control operates in "AUTO" mode when turning the ignition to the ON position if the "AUTO" mode was used before shutting off the engine.**

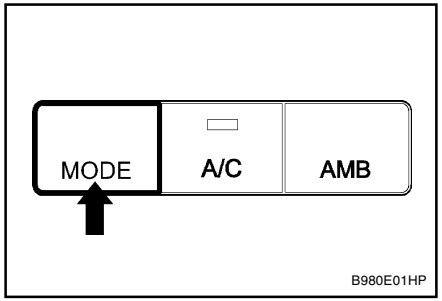
B980D01Y-AAT

Heating and Cooling System Off

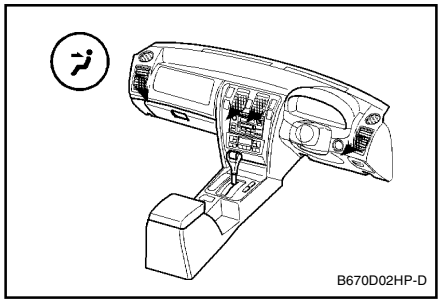
Press the "OFF" button to stop the operation of the heating and cooling system.

B980E01L-EAT

Air Flow Control

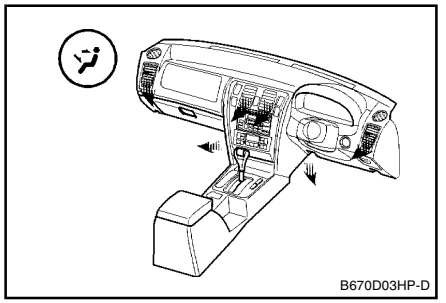


This is used to direct the flow of air. Air can be directed to the floor, dashboard outlets, or windscreen. Four symbols are used to represent Face, Bi-Level, Floor and Floor-Defrost air position.



Face-Level

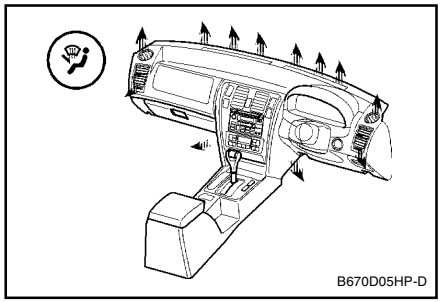
When selecting the "Face" mode, the indicator light will come on, causing air to be discharged through the face level vents.



Bi-Level

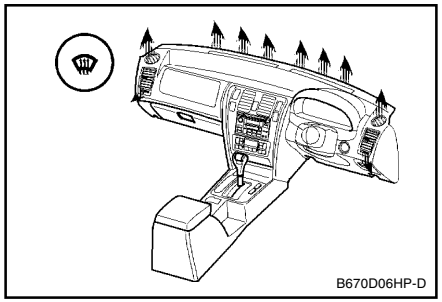
When selecting the "Bi-Level" mode, the indicator light will come on and the air will be dis-

charged through the face vents and the floor vents. This makes it possible to have cooler air from the dashboard vents and warmer air from the floor outlets at the same time.


B670D05HP-D

Floor-Level

When selecting the "Floor-Level" mode, the indicator light will come on and the air will be discharged through the floor vents, windscreen defrost nozzle, side defroster nozzle and side ventilator.

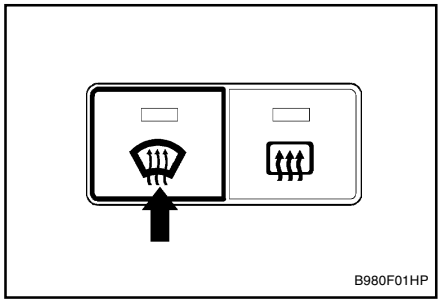

B670D06HP-D

Floor-Defrost Level

When selecting the "Floor-Defrost" mode, the indicator light will come on and the air will be discharged through the windscreen defrost nozzle, the floor vents, side defroster nozzle and side ventilator .

B980C02L-EAT

Defrost Switch


B980F01HP

When the "Defrost" button is pressed, the "" mode will be automatically selected and the air will be discharged through the windscreen defrost nozzle, side defroster nozzle and side ventilator. To assist in defrosting the air conditioning will operate if ambient temperature is higher than 38.3 °F (3.5°C)and automatically turns off if the ambient temperature drops below 38.3 °F (3.5°C).

B740D01Y-AAT

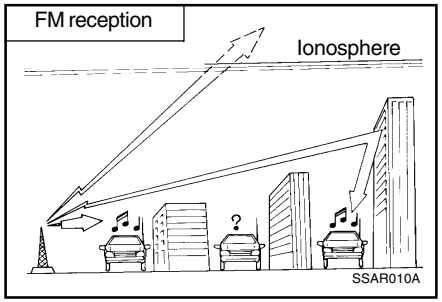
Operation Tips

- If the interior of the car is hot when you first get in, open the windows for a few minutes to expel the hot air.
- When you are using the air conditioning system, keep all windows closed to keep hot air out.
- When moving slowly, as in heavy traffic, shift to a lower gear. This increases engine speed, which in turn increases the speed of the air conditioning compressor.
- On steep grades, turn the air conditioning off to avoid the possibility of the engine overheating.
- During winter months or in periods when the air conditioning is not used regularly, run the air conditioning once every month for a few minutes. This will help circulate the lubricants and keep your system in peak operating condition.

B750A02A-AAT

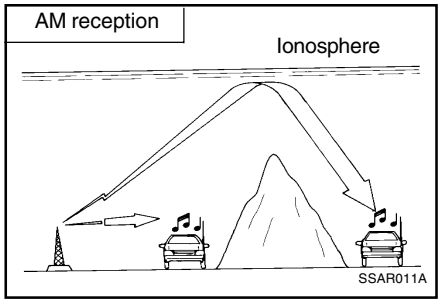
STEREO SOUND SYSTEM

How Car Audio Works

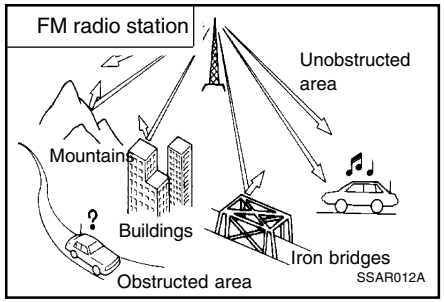


AM and FM radio signals are broadcast from transmitter towers located around your city. They are intercepted by the radio antenna on your car. This signal is then received by the radio and sent to your car speakers.

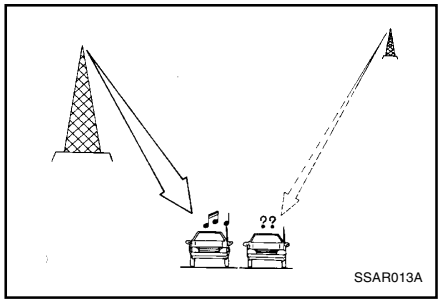
When a strong radio signal has reached your vehicle, the precise engineering of your audio system ensures high quality reproduction. However, in some cases the signal coming to your vehicle is not strong and clear. This can be due to factors such as the distance from the radio station, closeness of other strong radio stations or the presence of buildings, bridges or other large obstructions in the area.



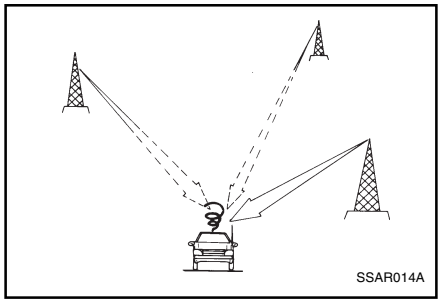
AM broadcasts can be received at greater distances than FM broadcasts. This is because AM radio waves are transmitted at low frequency. These long, low frequency radio waves can follow the curvature of the earth rather than travelling straight out into the ionosphere. In addition, they curve around obstructions so that they can provide better signal coverage.



FM broadcasts are transmitted at high frequency and do not bend to follow the earth's surface. Because of this, FM broadcasts generally begin to fade at short distances from the station. Also, FM signals are easily affected by buildings, mountains, or other obstructions. These can result in certain listening conditions which might lead you to believe a problem exists with your radio. The following conditions are normal and do not indicate radio trouble:



- o Fading - As your car moves away from the radio station, the signal will weaken and sound will begin to fade. When this occurs, we suggest that you select another stronger station.
- o Flutter/Static - Weak FM signals or large obstructions between the transmitter and your radio can disturb the signal causing static or fluttering noises to occur. Reducing the treble level may lessen this effect until the disturbance clears.



- o Station Swapping - As a FM signal weakens, another more powerful signal near the same frequency may begin to play. This is because your radio is designed to lock onto the clearest signal. If this occurs, select another station with a stronger signal.
- o Multi-Path Cancellation - Radio signals being received from several directions can cause distortion or fluttering. This can be caused by a direct and a reflected signal from the same station, or by signals from two stations with close frequencies. If this occurs, select another station until the condition has passed.

B750B02Y-AAT

Using a cellular phone or a two-way radio

When a cellular phone is used inside the vehicle, noise may be produced from the audio equipment. This does not mean that something is wrong with the audio equipment. In such a case, use the cellular phone at a place as far as possible from the audio equipment.

CAUTION:

When using a communication system such a cellular phone or a radio set inside the vehicle, a separate external antenna must be fitted. When a cellular phone or a radio set is used with an internal antenna alone, it may interfere with the vehicle's electrical system and adversely affect safe operation of the vehicle.

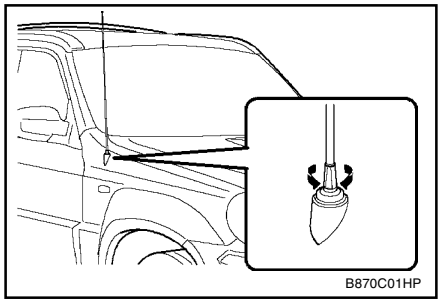
WARNING:

Don't use a cellular phone when you are driving, you must stop at a safe place to use a cellular phone.

B870A01A-GAT

ANTENNA

Fixed Rod Antenna



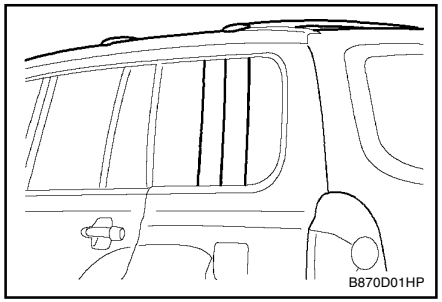
Your car uses a fixed rod antenna to receive both AM and FM broadcast signals.
This antenna is a removable type. To remove the antenna, turn the antenna counterclockwise. To install the antenna, turn the antenna clockwise.

CAUTION:

Be sure to remove the antenna before washing the car in an automatic car wash or the antenna may be damaged.

B880C02B-EAT

Glass Antenna (Not all models)



When the radio power switch is turned on whilst the ignition key is in either the "ON" or "ACC" position, your car will receive both AM and FM broadcast signals through the antenna in the rear quarter glass.

CAUTION:

- **Do not clean the inner side of the rear quarter glass with an abrasive type of glass cleaner or use a scraper to remove foreign deposits from the inner surface of the glass as this may cause damage to the antenna elements.**
- **Avoid adding metallic coating such as Ni, Cd, and so on. These can disturb receiving AM and FM broadcast signals.**

YC010A1-A

2. DRIVING THE HYUNDAI

C010A01O-EAT

WARNING: ENGINE EXHAUST CAN BE DANGEROUS!

Engine exhaust gases are potentially lethal. If at any time engine exhaust gas is detected within the passenger compartment, move the vehicle to an open area and open all windows.

o Never inhale exhaust gas.

Exhaust gases contain Carbon Monoxide which is colourless and odourless. Carbon Monoxide is poisonous and can cause unconsciousness and death by asphyxiation.

o Exhaust System Maintenance.

Ensure that the exhaust system is maintained in good condition and is free from excessive corrosion and damage which may result in leakage. If the vehicle is driven over an object which strikes the exhaust system, ensure that the exhaust system is inspected at the first available opportunity to ensure that no leakage exists.

o Confined Areas.

Do not run the engine in confined spaces, allowing the engine to idle in a garage, even when the doors are open is dangerous practice. Only start the engine immediately prior to moving the vehicle out of the garage.

o Prolonged Idling.

If it is necessary to allow the vehicle to idle for prolonged periods, ensure that the heating system air intake control is set to the "Fresh" position, the blower is set to high speed operation and that the vehicle is standing in an open area.

o Load Carrying.

If it is necessary to carry long objects which do not permit the hatchback door to be fully closed, the side windows must remain closed and the heating air intake control set to the "Fresh" position with the blower running at the highest speed setting.

To ensure correct operation of the heater system, the air intake grilles at the base of the windscreen must not be obstructed by snow leaves etc..

C020A01A-EAT

BEFORE STARTING THE ENGINE

Before you start the engine, you should always:

1. Look around the vehicle to be sure there are no flat tyres, puddles of oil or water or other indications of possible trouble.
2. After entering the car, check to be sure the parking brake is engaged.
3. Check that all windows, and lights are clean.
4. Check that the interior and exterior mirrors are clean and in position.
5. Check your seat, seatback and headrest to be sure they are in their proper positions.
6. Close all the doors.
7. Fasten your seat belt and be sure that all other occupants have fastened theirs.
8. Turn off all lights and accessories that are not needed.
9. When you turn the ignition switch to "ON" check that all appropriate warning lights are operating and that you have sufficient fuel.
10. Check the operation of warning lights and all bulbs when key is in the "ON" position.

C030A01HP-EAT

COMBINATION IGNITION SWITCH AND STEERING LOCK

To Start the Engine

- If your Hyundai is equipped with a manual transmission, place the shift lever in neutral and depress the clutch pedal fully.
- If your Hyundai has an automatic transmission, place the shift lever in "P" (park).
- To start the engine, insert the ignition key and turn it to the "START" position. Release it as soon as the engine starts. Do not hold the key in the "START" position for more that 15 seconds.

NOTE:

For safety, the engine will not start if the shift lever is not in "P" or "N" position (Automatic Transmission).

WARNING: (Diesel only)

To ensure that sufficient vacuum exists within the brake system during cold weather start-up conditions, it is necessary to run the engine at idle after starting according to the following table.

Ambient temp.	Warm up time
Above 5°F (-15°C)	3 min. or longer
Below 5°F (-15°C)	6 min. or longer

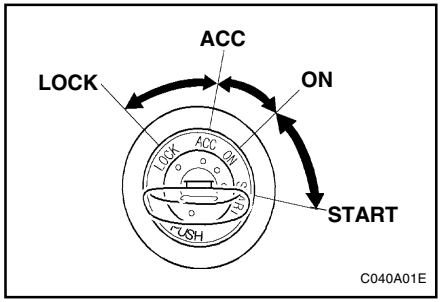
After starting the engine, do not drive the vehicle until the brake vacuum warning light has turned off.
Failure to carry out the above procedure may result in the need to apply greater pedal pressure in order to effect the necessary braking effort.

SC050A1-E

KEY POSITIONS

WARNING:

The engine must never be turned off and the key removed from the ignition key cylinder whilst the vehicle is in motion since the steering lock will operate and control of the vehicle will be lost.



"START"

The engine is started in this position. It will crank until you release the key.

NOTE:

Do not hold the key in the "START" position for more than 15 seconds.

"ON"

When the key is at the "ON" position, the ignition and all accessories are available for use. If the engine is not running, the key should not be left at this position since the battery will become discharged and damage to the ignition system may also result. For information regarding engine starting, refer to "STARTING THE ENGINE".

"ACC"

When the ignition key is at the "ACC" position, the radio and other accessories may be used.

"LOCK"

The ignition key may only be inserted or removed at this position.

NOTE:

The ignition key can only be removed if the transmission selector is at the "P" position (automatic transmission only).

YC030A1-E

STEERING WHEEL LOCK

When the ignition key is removed, the steering wheel lock will be activated. The lock only engages at one position of the steering wheel and therefore it will be possible to turn the wheel until this position is reached. It is not, however, necessary for the lock to be engaged before leaving the vehicle since in the event of attempted unauthorized removal, the lock will engage when attempts are made to steer the vehicle.

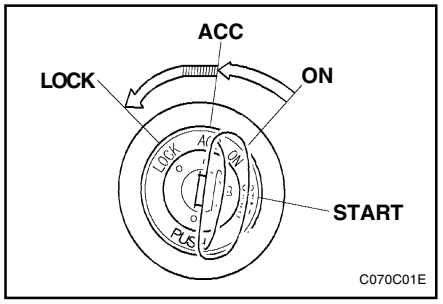
Should it be difficult to turn the key from the "LOCK" position, it may be found that rocking the steering wheel to and fro whilst turning the key will assist.

CAUTION:

Never remove the key from the ignition lock whilst the vehicle is in motion since the steering mechanism lock will be activated.

C070C01A-AAT

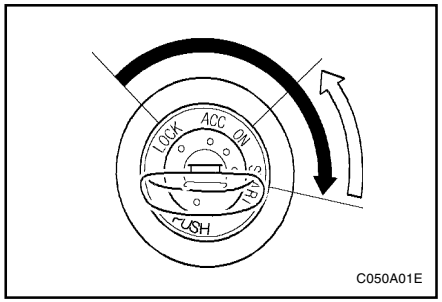
To Remove the Ignition Key



1. Turn the ignition key to the "ACC" position.
2. Simultaneously push and turn the ignition key counterclockwise from the "ACC" position to the "LOCK" position.
3. The key can be removed in the "LOCK" position.

HPC060A1-E

STARTING THE ENGINE



C050A01E

1. Ensure that the transmission is in neutral and that the clutch pedal is held depressed (manual transmission) or the transmission selector is at the "P" position (automatic transmission vehicle).
2. Turn the ignition key to and hold at the "Start" position until the engine starts. When the engine has started, release the key.

NOTE:

Do not operate the starter for more than 15 seconds continuously or continue to operate the starter after the engine has started to avoid damaging the starter motor. If the engine makes a false start, allow it and the starter motor to come to rest before attempting to start the engine again. Never attempt to start the engine with the transmission in gear. Do not depress the accelerator pedal whilst starting the engine. Allow the engine to idle for 20 seconds or so before driving the vehicle.

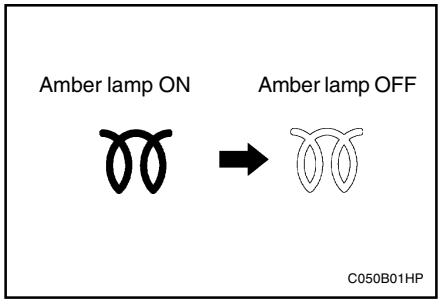
CAUTION:

Do not leave the vehicle unattended whilst idling. Never allow the vehicle to idle or warm up in a confined space (ie garage) longer than is necessary to move the vehicle into an open area.

C050B01HP-EAT

Starting Procedure

1. Insert key, and fasten the seat belt.
2. Apply the parking brake.
3. If your Hyundai is equipped with a manual transmission, place the shift lever in neutral and depress the clutch pedal fully. If your Hyundai has an automatic transmission, place the shift lever in "P" (park).
4. On vehicles equipped with the diesel preheat indication lamp, turn the ignition key to the "ON" position. The diesel-preheat indication lamp will first illuminate in amber, and then after a short time, the amber illumination will go off, indicating that preheating is completed.



C050B01HP

NOTE:

If the engine were not started within 2 seconds after the preheating is completed, turn the ignition key once more to the "LOCK" position during 10 seconds, and then to the "ON" position, in order to preheat again.

WARNING:

Be sure that the clutch is fully depressed when starting a manual tranmission vehicle. Otherwise there is the potential to cause damage to the vehicle or injury to someone inside or outside the vehicle as a result of the forward or backward movement of the vehicle that will occur if the clutch is not depressed when the vehicle is started.

5. Turn the ignition key to the "Start" position and release it when the engine starts.

C055B01HP-GAT

STARTING AND STOPPING THE ENGINE FOR TURBO CHARGER INTERCOOLER (Diesel Engine)

(1) Do not race the engine or sudden accelerate the engine immediately after starting it. If the engine is cold, allow the engine to idle for several seconds before it is driven to ensure sufficient lubrication of the turbo charger unit.

(2) After high speed or extended driving, requiring a heavy engine load, the engine should be allowed to idle, as shown in the chart below, before turning it off.
This idle time will allow the turbo charger to cool prior to shutting the engine off.

Driving Condition		Required Idle Time
Normal driving		Not necessary
High speed driving	Up to 50 mph	About 20 seconds
	Up to 62 mph	About 1 minute
Steep mountain slopes or continued driving in excess of 62 mph		About 2 minutes

WARNING:

Do not turn the engine off immediately after it has been subjected to a heavy load. Doing so may cause severe damage to the engine or turbo charger unit.

DC090C1-E

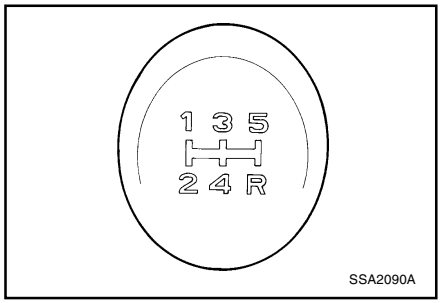
FUEL ECONOMY

The following suggestions are made to assist in achieving the greatest degree of fuel economy.

- Maintaining a constant check on fuel consumption will enable the most economical use pattern and driving style to be adopted.
- Avoid using the vehicle for very short journeys if possible, particularly when a cold start is involved.
- Ensure that tyre pressures are maintained at the correct level.
- Use only the recommended grade of fuel.
- Avoid carrying unnecessary weight, and if a roof rack is in use, remove it as soon as possible after use.
- Anticipate the road and conditions ahead to enable adjustments in speed to be made smoothly. Avoid heavy acceleration and sharp braking.
- Avoid cruising at unnecessary high speeds.
- Always ensure that the periodic maintenance services are performed by a Hyundai dealer at the time and/or mileage intervals specified.
- Use the air conditioner only when necessary.

HPC090A2-E

MANUAL TRANSMISSION



The five speed fully synchronized transmission is controlled by a floor mounted shift lever upon which the shift pattern is indicated. It is important that when changing gear, the clutch pedal is fully depressed to avoid transmission damage.

CAUTION:

- **Do not attempt to engage reverse gear when the car is in motion.**
- **To avoid damaging the selector mechanism, do not use the gear shift lever as a hand rest. Release the lever immediately the shift is completed.**
- **To avoid premature clutch wear, do not use the clutch pedal as a foot rest, and do not hold the vehicle on a gradient using the clutch.**

- **Ensure that the engine is not over-revved by upshifting before the tachometer needle enters the red zone.**
- **Do not coast with the shift lever at the neutral position.**
- **When descending long gradients, make use of the engine braking to assist the footbrake to avoid brake fade or overheating.**
- **When slippery conditions are encountered, increased caution should be exercised when gear changing, braking or accelerating. Abrupt changes in speed may cause a loss of traction or control of the vehicle.**
- **During cold weather, shifting may be difficult until the transmission lubricant has warmed up. This is normal and not harmful to the transmission.**
- **If you've come to a complete stop and it's hard to shift into 1st or R(Reverse), put the shift lever in N(Neutral) position and release the clutch. Press the clutch pedal back down, and then shift into 1st or R(Reverse) gear position.**
- **Do not use the shift lever as a handrest during driving, as this can result in premature wear of the transmission shift forks.**

C070B01A-EAT

Using the Clutch

The clutch should be pressed all the way to the floor before shifting, then released slowly. The clutch pedal should aways be used after fully returning to the original position. Do not rest your foot on the clutch pedal whilst driving. This can cause unnecessary wear.

Do not partially engage the clutch to hold the car on an incline. This causes unnecessary wear. Use the parking brake to hold the car on an incline. Do not operate the clutch pedal rapidly and repeatedly.

C070E03A-EAT

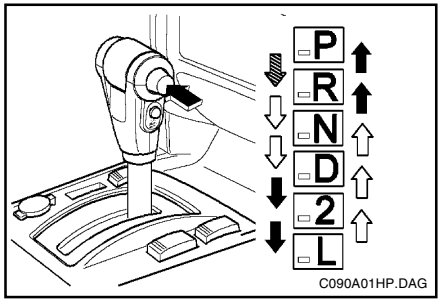
RECOMMENDED SHIFT POINTS

Shift from-to	Recommended mph (km/h)
1-2	15 (20)
2-3	25 (40)
3-4	35 (55)
4-5	45 (75)

The shift points as shown above are recommended for optimum fuel economy and performance.

C090A01HP-EAT

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION (Not all models)



The highly efficient Hyundai automatic transmission has four forward speeds and one reverse speed. It has a conventional shift pattern as shown in the illustration.

At night, with the side lights or headlights switched on, the appropriate symbol on the quadrant will be illuminated according to the range selected.

CAUTION:

Never shift into "R" or "P" position whilst the vehicle is moving.

NOTE:

⇛ **Depress the brake pedal and push the button when shifting.**
➡ **Push the button when shifting.**
⇨ **The selector lever can be shifted freely.**

For optimum fuel economy, accelerate gradually. The transmission will automatically shift to the second, third and overdrive gears.

HPC090A1-E

SELECTOR POSITIONS

o P (Park):

With the selector in this position, no drive is transmitted from the engine and the transmission output and therefore the front wheels locked. The engine may be started with the selector in this position.

CAUTION:

The selector must NEVER be shifted to the "P" position whilst the vehicle is in motion, otherwise serious transmission damage will result.

DC110C1-E

o R (Reverse):

With the selector in this position, reverse gear will be engaged. The engine may not be started with the selector in this position.

CAUTION:

The selector must NEVER be shifted to the "R" position whilst the vehicle is in motion.

DC110D1-E

o N (Neutral):

With the selector in this position, no gear is selected and no drive is transmitted from the engine. The engine may be started with the selector in this position.

CAUTION:

Do not coast with the selector at the "N" position.

C090E01O-AAT

o D(Drive):

Use for normal driving. The transmission will automatically shift through a four gear sequence.

DC110F1-E

o 2 (Second Gear):

With the selector in this position, first gear will be engaged from rest. The transmission will upshift to second gear depending upon the vehicle speed and throttle position. No upshift to third or fourth will occur. The engine may not be started with the selector in this position.

CAUTION:

Do not move the selector to the 2 position when the vehicle speed is in excess of 60 m.p.h.

DC110G2-E

o L (Low Gear):

With the selector in this position, first gear will be engaged from rest. No upshift will occur regardless of vehicle speed and throttle opening. The engine may not be started with the selector in this position.

CAUTION:

Do not move the selector to the L position when the vehicle speed is in excess of 50 m.p.h.

C090H01A-EAT

NOTE:

- **The brake pedal should be depressed when shifting from NEUTRAL to a forward or reverse gear.**
- **The brake pedal fully depressed in order to move the shift lever from the "P" (Park) position to any of the other positions.**
- **It is always possible to shift from "R", "N", "D", "2", "L" positions to "P" position.**

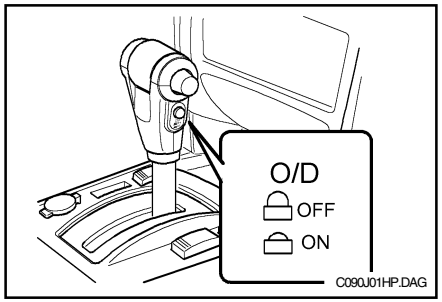
C090I01E-EAT

CAUTION:

- **Shift into "R" and "P" only when the vehicle has completely stopped.**
- **Do not accelerate the engine in reverse or any of the forward positions with the brakes applied.**
- **Always apply the footbrake when shifting from "P" or "N", to "R", "D", "2" or "L" position.**
- **Do not use the "P" (Park) position in place of the parking brake. Always set the parking brake, shift the transmission into "P" (Park) and turn off the ignition when you leave the vehicle, even momentarily. Never leave the vehicle unattended whilst the engine is running.**
- **Check the automatic transmission fluid level regularly, and add fluid as necessary.**

SC130A1-E

OVERDRIVE SWITCH



The overdrive switch prevents the transmission upshifting higher than third gear when the switch is turned "OFF". The transmission will start from rest in first gear and upshift to second and third gear depending upon the roadspeed and throttle opening but will not upshift to fourth gear. When the overdrive switch is turned "ON", the transmission will start from rest in first gear and will upshift, depending upon roadspeed and throttle opening to second, third and fourth gear. Therefore, when the overdrive switch is turned "OFF", the transmission performs as a three speed unit and the overdrive warning light located in the instrument cluster will be illuminated. When the overdrive switch is turned "ON", the transmission functions as a fully automatic four speed unit with the maximum fuel economy potential of the vehicle being realized.

HPC120D1-E

General Operating Instructions

- The button in the selector handle must be depressed before the selector can be moved.
- The engine may only be started when the selector is at position "P" or "N".
- Ensure that the footbrake is firmly applied when shifting from "P" or "N" to "D", "2" or "L" and vice versa.
- Always engage the parking brake when the vehicle is unattended, never use the "P" position in place of the parking brake.
- Under normal circumstances, the selector should be placed in the "D" position and the transmission allowed to select the most ideal ratio for the circumstances. In this position maximum fuel economy will be achieved.
- When descending steep gradients where engine braking is required, the selector should be placed at the "2" or "L" position depending upon the vehicle speed.
- When ascending steep gradients and using large throttle openings, the transmission may repeatedly change between two adjacent ratios. This is a normal characteristic and may be prevented by selecting "2" or "L" depending upon the vehicle speed.
- Never move the selector to or from the "P" or "N" position with the accelerator depressed.
- Only with the brake pedal fully depressed, the shift lever is shifted from "P" (parking) position to other position. (Not all models)

- o Ensure that the overdrive switch is at the "ON" position for maximum economy.
- o If rapid acceleration is required, fully depress the accelerator pedal. In this condition, the kickdown mechanism will be operated and the transmission will automatically downshift according to the vehicle speed.

C120A02A-EAT

ANTI-LOCK BRAKE SYSTEM (Not all models)

The Anti-Lock Brake System (ABS) is designed to prevent wheel lock-up during sudden braking or on hazardous road surfaces. The ABS control module monitors the wheel speed and controls the pressure applied to each brake. Thus, in emergency situations or on slick roads, ABS will increase vehicle control during braking.

NOTE:

During ABS operation, a slight pulsation may be felt in the brake pedal when the brakes are applied. Also, a noise may be heard in the engine compartment whilst braking. These conditions are normal and indicate that the anti-lock brake system is functioning properly.

WARNING:

ABS will not prevent accidents due to improper or dangerous driving manoeuvres. Even though vehicle control is improved during emergency braking, always maintain a safe distance between you and objects ahead. Vehicle speeds should always be reduced during extreme road conditions.
The braking distance for cars equipped with an anti-lock braking system may be longer than for those without it in the following road conditions.

- **o Driving on rough, gravel or snow-covered roads.**
- **o Driving with tire chains installed.**
- **o Driving on roads where the road surface is pitted or has different surface height.**

These roads should be driven at reduced speeds. The safety features of an ABS equipped vehicle should not be tested by high speed driving or cornering. This could endanger the safety of yourself or others.

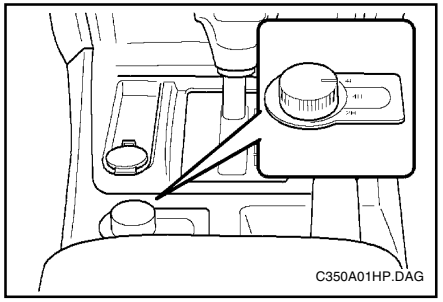
D090A01P-GAT

FOUR-WHEEL DRIVE (4WD)

You can send your engine power to all front and rear wheels for maximum power. 4WD is useful when you drive in snow, mud, ice, mountainous or sandy areas where good traction is required, or when your wheels lose traction using two-wheel drive.

C350A01HP-EAT

Part-time 4WD operation



1. Knob position

This is used to set different positions.

2H(Rear-wheel drive)

When driving on normal roads and highway.

4H(High range 4-wheel drive)

When driving off-road, wet or snow-covered roads with normal speed.
The 4WD engaged indicator light (4WD) will be turned on to remind you that you are in the 4H mode.

4L(Low range 4-wheel drive)

Use "4L" for climbing or descending steep hills, off-road driving, and vehicle towing.
Especially when increased drive power is required.
The 4WD LOW indicator light (4WD LOW) will be turned on to remind you that you are in the 4L mode.

CAUTION:
Do not select 4WD (4H or 4L) mode on dry paved roads. Especially on dry highway, never select the 4WD mode.
Four-wheel driving on dry paved roads for a long period will increase the fuel consumption with possible noise generation and early tyre wear. In addition, axle gear oil temperature increases with possible driving system part wear.

2. Transfer shift knob operation

By turning the transfer shift knob(4H, 4L), both axles of the vehicle are rigidly connected with each other. This improves the traction characteristics.

2H → 4H

Turn the transfer shift knob from the 2H mode to the 4H mode at speed below 50mph (80 km/h). It is not necessary to depress the clutch pedal (Manual Transmission) or put the shift lever into "N(neutral)" position (Automatic Transmission). Perform this operation when driving straight.

4H → 2H

Turn the transfer shift knob from the 4H mode to the 2H mode at speed below 50mph (80 km/h). It is not necessary to depress the clutch pedal (Manual Transmission) or put the shift lever into "N(neutral)" position (Automatic Transmission). Perform this operation when driving straight.

4H → 4L

1. Stop the vehicle.
2. Depress the clutch pedal (Manual Transmission) or put the shift lever into "N (neutral)" position (Automatic Transmission).
3. Select the 4L mode.

4L → 4H

1. Stop the vehicle.
2. Depress the clutch pedal (Manual Transmission) or put the shift lever into "N (neutral)" position (Automatic Transmission).
3. Select the 4H mode.

D090E01HP-EAT

Driving Four-wheel drive safely

- The driving posture should be more upright; adjust the seat to a good position for easy steering and pedal operation.
- Be sure to wear the seat belt.
- Drive carefully when off the road and avoid dangerous areas.
- 4WD has higher ground clearance and a narrower track to make them capable of performing in a wide variety of off road applications. Specific design characteristics give them a higher centre of gravity than ordinary cars. An advantage of the higher ground clearance is a better view of the road allowing you to anticipate problems. They are not designed for cornering at the same speeds as conventional 2-wheel drive vehicles any more than low-slung sports cars are designed to perform satisfactorily under off-road conditions. If at all possible, avoid sharp turns or abrupt maneuvers. As with other vehicles of this type, failure to operate this vehicle correctly may result in loss of control or vehicle rollover.
- Do not grip the inside or spokes of the steering wheel when driving off-road. The steering wheel could jerk and injure your hands. Always firmly hold the outer steering wheel when you are driving off-road.
- Drive at lower speeds in strong crosswinds. Because of your vehicle's high centre of gravity, its stability will be affected in crosswinds. Slower speeds ensure better vehicle control.

- o Check your brake condition once you are out of mud or water. Press the brake several times as you move slowly until your feel normal braking forces return.
- o Four-wheel driving on flat and normal roads can result in a severe binding condition when turning the steering wheel.

Driving on dry paved road and highway

Select the 2H(2WD) to drive on dry paved roads. Especially on dry highway, never select the 4H or 4L(4WD).

Driving on snowy or icy roads

Select the 4H or 4L in accordance with the road conditions, and then gradually depress the accelerator pedal for a smooth start.

Driving on sandy or muddy roads

Select the 4H or 4L and then gradually depress the accelerator pedal for a smooth start. Keep the pressure on the accelerator pedal constant as possible, and drive at low speed.

Climbing sharp grades

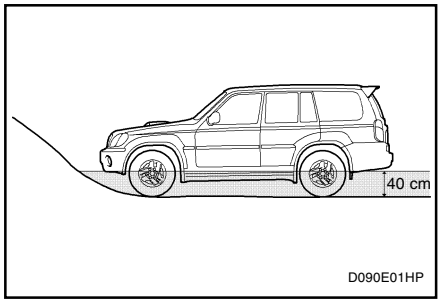
Select the 4L to maximize use the engine torque.

Descending sharp grades

Select the 4L, use the engine brake and descend slowly.

Driving in Water

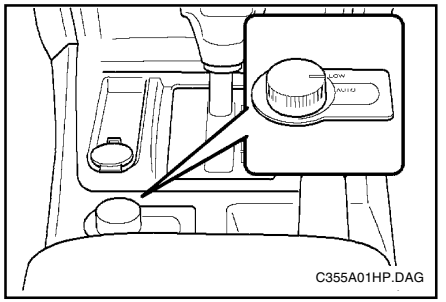
Select the 4L mode and drive through slowly.



The maximum advisable wading depth is approximately 40cm.
Before driving through water, such as when crossing shallow streams, first check the depth of the water and the bottom of the river bed for firmness. Drive slowly at the speed of 3mph (5 km/h) and avoid deep water.
Take all necessary safety measures to ensure that water damage to the engine or other vehicle parts does not occur.
Water entering the engine air intake will cause severe engine damage.
Water can wash the grease from wheel bearings, causing rusting and premature failure, and may also enter the axles, transmission and transfer case, reducing the gear oil's lubricating qualities.

C355A02HP-EAT

Full-time 4WD operation (Not all models)



1. Knob position

This is used to set different positions.

AUTO Mode

Full power delivered to front and rear axles for increase traction. Use this mode for normal on-road operating conditions such as dry road surfaces, wet pavement, snow-covered roads and/or off-road.

LOW Mode

Full power to both axles, including a lower gear ratio for low-speed applications that require extra power such as dry road surfaces, wet pavement, snow-covered roads and/or off-road. Especially when increased drive power is required.
"LOW" mode is not recommended on dry pavement.
The 4WD LOW indicator light (4WD LOW) will be turned on to remind you that you are in the LOW mode.

2. Transfer shift knob operation

AUTO → LOW

1. Stop the vehicle.
2. Depress the clutch pedal (Manual Transmission) or put the shift lever into "N(neutral)" position (Automatic Transmission)
3. Turn the transfer shift knob to "LOW" mode.

LOW → AUTO

1. Stop the vehicle.
2. Depress the clutch pedal (Manual Transmission) or put the shift lever into "N (neutral)" position (Automatic Transmission).
3. Turn the transfer shift knob to "AUTO" mode.

Driving 4WD Safely

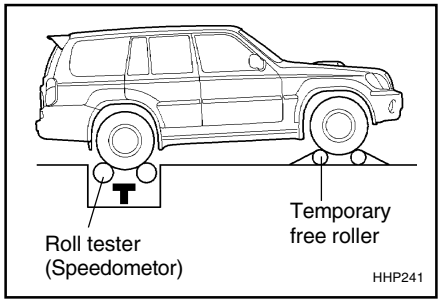
(1) Be sure to wear the seat belt.
(2) Drive at lower speeds in strong crosswinds. Because of your vehicle's high centre of gravity, its stability will be affected in crosswinds. Slower speeds ensure better vehicle control.
(3) Check the brake condition after driving in wet or muddy conditions. Press the brake several times as you move slowly until you feel normal braking forces return.
(4) Do not drive the vehicle through water. (i.e. streams, rivers, lakes, etc.)
(5) The stopping distance of the full-time 4WD vehicle differs very little from that of the 2WD vehicle.
When driving on a snow-covered road or a slippery, muddy surface, make sure that you keep a sufficient distance between your vehicle and the one ahead of you.
(6) Since the driving torque is always applied to the 4 wheels, the performance of the full-time 4WD vehicle is greatly affected by the condition of the tyres. Be sure to equip it with all four tyres of the same size and type.
- o When replacement of any of the tyres or disc wheels is necessary, replace all of them.
- o Rotate the tyres and check the tyre pressure at regular intervals.

(7) The full-time 4WD vehicle cannot be towed by an ordinary tow truck. Make sure that the vehicle is towed with its four wheels raised off the ground.

- o If the vehicle is towed with its only two wheels raised off the ground, the 4WD system could be damaged.
- o In unavoidable case, if the vehicle is being towed with all four wheels on the ground, it should be towed only forward direction with rope.
- o Whilst towing, check the following items.
  1. The ignition switch is in "ACC" or "ON".
  2. Place the shift lever in neutral (For Automatic Transmission, "N" position).
  3. Release the parking brake.

NOTE:

To avoid serious damage to your 4WD vehicle, limit towing to 10 mph (15km/h) and not for more than 1 mile (1.5km) at ANY TIME.



(8) For speedometer test or inspection/maintenance (I/M) program of full-time 4WD vehicle, use a four-wheel chassis dynamometer.

CAUTION:
Never engage the parking brake whilst performing these tests.

o In rare cases when it's unavoidable that a 4WD vehicle is to be inspected for speedometer test on 2WD roll tester, strictly follow the procedures next.
  1. Check the tyre pressures recommended for your vehicle.
  2. Place the rear wheels on the roll tester for speedometer test as shown in the illustration.
  3. Release the parking brake.
  4. Place the front wheels on the temporary free roller as shown in the illustration.

WARNING:
Keep away from the front of the vehicle whilst inspecting. This is very dangerous as the vehicle can jump forward and cause serious injury or death.

(9) When using tyre chains, always attach them to the rear wheels.
(10) If the front or rear wheels get stuck in the mud, do not spin them recklessly. The 4WD system could be damaged.

Driving on dry paved road and highway
Select the AUTO to drive on dry paved roads. Especially on dry highway, never select the LOW.

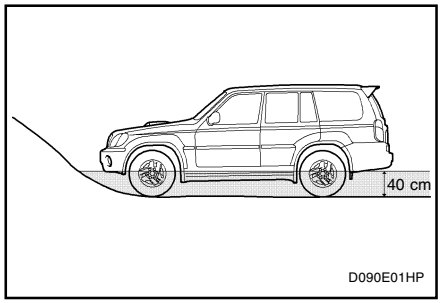
Driving on snowy or icy roads
Select the AUTO or LOW in accordance with the road conditions, and then gradually depress the accelerator pedal for a smooth start.

Driving on sandy or muddy roads
Select the LOW and then gradually depress the accelerator pedal for a smooth start. Keep the pressure on the accelerator pedal constant as possible, and drive at low speed.

Climbing sharp grades
Select the LOW to maximize use the engine torque.

Descending sharp grades
Select the LOW, use the engine brake and descend slowly.

Driving in Water
Select the LOW mode and drive through slowly.



The maximum advisable wading depth is approximately 40cm.
Before driving through water, such as when crossing shallow streams, first check the depth of the water and the bottom of the river bed for firmness. Drive slowly at the speed of 3mph (5 km/h) and avoid deep water.
Take all necessary safety measures to ensure that water damage to the engine or other vehicle parts does not occur.
Water entering the engine air intake will cause severe engine damage.
Water can wash the grease from wheel bearings, causing rusting and premature failure, and may also enter the axles, transmission and transfer case, reducing the gear oil's lubricating qualities.

CAUTION:

- **Whilst the full-time 4WD vehicle is being raised on a jack, never start the engine or cause the tyres to rotate.**
  There is the danger that rotating tyres touching the ground could cause the vehicle to go off the jack and to jump forward.
- **If one of the front or rear wheels begins to spin in mud, snow, etc., the vehicle can sometimes be driven out by depressing the accelerator pedal further; however, avoid running the engine continuously at high rpm because doing so could damage the 4WD system.**

WARNING:

- **Avoid high cornering speeds.**
- **Do not make quick steering wheel movements, such as sharp lane charges or fast, sharp turns.**
- **The risk of rollover is greatly increased if you lose control of your vehicle at highway speeds.**
- **In a collision crash, an unbelted person is significantly more likely to die than a person wearing a seatbelt.**
- **Loss of control often occurs if two or more wheels drop off the roadway and the driver oversteers to reenter the roadway.**
- **In the event your vehicle leaves the roadway, do not steer sharply. Instead, slow down before pulling back into the travel lanes.**

D190A01O-EAT

LIMITED-SLIP DIFFERENTIAL (Not all models)

A limited-slip differential, if equipped, is for the rear wheel differential only. The features of this limited-slip differential are described below:
Just as with a conventional differential, the wheel on one side is allowed to turn at a different speed from the wheel on the other side when the vehicle is cornering. The difference between the limited-slip differential and a conventional differential is that if the wheel on one side of the vehicle loses traction, a greater amount of torque is applied to the rear wheel on the other side to improve traction.

SC140A1-E

EFFECTIVE BRAKING

Braking system performance and friction material life are greatly affected by the driving style adopted. The following suggestions are made to assist in achieving the best results from the braking system.

- Anticipate the road and conditions ahead in order that heavy braking may be avoided.
- When descending long gradients, use the engine to assist in retarding the vehicle to minimize the possibility of brake fade occurring.
- When trailer towing, ensure that the trailer brakes function correctly and use engine braking to assist the vehicle braking system.
- Use only genuine Hyundai replacement brake pads and shoes to ensure consistent friction characteristics and wear rates.
- After driving through deep water (e.g. fording), the brakes may become wet and performance reduced. Always check brake efficiency after emerging from the water and dry the brakes by lightly depressing the brake pedal several times whilst driving slowly.
- Apply the parking brake only when the vehicle is at rest.
- Since the power assistance provided by the brake servo is derived from the engine, coasting with the engine turned off or towing of the vehicle with the engine turned off will result in greatly increased pedal pressures being required to stop the vehicle.
- Do not hold the vehicle on the upgrade with the accelerator pedal. This can cause the transmission to overheat. Always use the brake pedal or parking brake.

C140A01A-EAT

DRIVING FOR ECONOMY

You can save fuel and get more miles from your car if you follow these suggestions:

- Drive smoothly. Accelerate at a moderate rate. Don't make "jack-rabbit" starts or full-throttle shifts and maintain a steady cruising speed. Don't race between stoplights. Try to adjust your speed to that of the other traffic so you don't have to change speeds unnecessarily. Avoid heavy traffic whenever possible. Always maintain a safe distance from other vehicles so you can avoid unnecessary braking. This also reduces brake wear.
- Drive at a moderate speed. The faster you drive, the more fuel your car uses. Driving at a moderate speed, especially on the highway, is one of the most effective ways to reduce fuel consumption.
- Don't "ride" the brake or clutch pedal. This can increase fuel consumption and also increase wear on these components. In addition, driving with your foot resting on the brake pedal may cause the brakes to overheat, which reduces their effectiveness and may lead to more serious consequences.
- Take care of your tyres. Keep them inflated to the recommended pressure. Incorrect inflation, either too much or too little, results in unnecessary tyre wear. Check the tyre pressures at least once a month.
- Be sure that the wheels are aligned correctly. Improper alignment can result from hitting curbs or driving too fast over irregular surfaces. Poor alignment causes faster tyre wear and may also result in other problems as well as greater fuel consumption.
- Keep your car in good condition. For better fuel economy and reduced maintenance costs, maintain your car in accordance with the maintenance schedule in Section 5. If you drive your car in severe conditions, more frequent maintenance is required (see Section 5 for details).
- Keep your car clean. For maximum service, your Hyundai should be kept clean and free of corrosive materials. It is especially important that mud, dirt, ice, etc. not be allowed to accumulate on the underside of the car. This extra weight can result in increased fuel consumption and also contribute to corrosion.
- Travel lightly. Don't carry unnecessary weight in your car. Weight reduces fuel economy.
- Don't let the engine idle longer than necessary. If you are waiting (and not in traffic), turn off your engine and restart only when you're ready to go.
- Remember, your Hyundai does not require extended warm-up. As soon as the engine is running smoothly, you can drive away. In very cold weather, however, give your engine a slightly longer warm-up period.
- Don't "labour" or "over-rev" the engine. Labouring is driving too slowly in too high a gear resulting in the vehicle kangarooing. If this happens, shift to a lower gear. Over-revving is racing the engine beyond its safe limit. This can be avoided by shifting at the recommended speeds.
- Use your air conditioning sparingly. The air conditioning system is operated by engine power so your fuel economy is reduced when you use it.

C150A01A-EAT

SMOOTH CORNERING

Avoid braking or gear changing in corners, especially when roads are wet. Ideally, corners should always be taken under gentle acceleration. If you follow these suggestions, tyre wear will be held to a minimum.

DC170A1-E

WINTER MOTORING

The onset of winter conditions subject motor vehicles to greater operating demands. Therefore, the following suggestions will assist in maintaining peak performance and reliability during these periods:

ZC170B1-E

Electrical System

Winter conditions impose severe demands upon vehicle electrical systems, particularly the charging circuit. The battery condition and performance along with the alternator performance and drive belt condition should be checked prior to the onset of winter.

YC170C1-E

Anti-freeze/Corrosion inhibitor

The cooling system must always contain an Ethylene-Glycol based anti-freeze solution. The system is filled during manufacture with solution of the correct strength which should be checked before the onset of winter and adjusted or changed as required.

NOTE:

The anti-freeze solution contains a corrosion inhibitor to prevent degradation of the aluminium castings contained within the engine. Therefore, never, drain the system and refill with water only.

In addition, anti-freeze solution must ALWAYS be used in vehicles fitted with air conditioning, to prevent the heater matrix from freezing and subsequently bursting with the refrigeration system in use.

ZC170D1-E

Door Locks

Should the door lock mechanism become frozen, a proprietary lock de-icer should be used. Alternatively, warming the door key may thaw the door lock. However, the key should be handled carefully to avoid burning the fingers. Never attempt to thaw a frozen door lock using hot water, since the water will eventually freeze and compound the problem.

NOTE:

The proper temperature for using the immobilizer key is from -40°F to 176°F (-40°C to 80°C). If you heat the immobilizer key over 176°F to open the frozen lock, it may cause damage to the transponder in its head.

ZC170E1-E

Windscreen Washers & Wipers

The windscreen washer bottle should be filled with a solution of water and a proprietary winter screen wash additive. The windscreen wipers should not be used if the blades are frozen to the windscreen or if they are covered with snow, before this is removed.

NOTE:

Never allow undiluted screen washer fluid additive to spill upon the paintwork or use engine coolant anti-freeze since damage to the paintwork may result.

- When driving in extreme conditions, the windscreen wiper blades may fail to clear the screen properly due to the formation of ice upon the blade edge. It will therefore be necessary to periodically remove such ice to restore their efficiency.
- If the power operated door mirrors become frozen, attempts to adjust these may damage the mechanism.
- The formation of snow or ice build up inside the wheel arches may interfere with the roadwheels or steering mechanism. In such instances, unusual noises or an increase in steering effort may result. Therefore, ensure that the wheelarches are checked periodically and any accumulated snow or ice removed.

o It is advisable to carry emergency equipment including, torch, shovel, tow rope, blankets etc., if a journey is to be undertaken into areas of severe road conditions.

HPC200A1-E

TRAILER OR VEHICLE TOWING

If you are considering towing with your car, you should first check with your Local Laws to determine their legal requirements.
Since laws vary from county to county, the requirements for towing trailers, cars, or other types of vehicles or apparatus may differ. Ask your Hyundai dealer for further details before towing.

CAUTION:

Do not do any towing with your car during its first 1,200 miles (2,000 km) in order to allow the engine to have properly run-in. Failure to heed this caution may result in serious engine or transmission damage.

YC200B2-E

Trailer Towbars

Select the correct towbar and ball combination, making sure that its location is compatible with that of the trailer or vehicle being towed.
Use a quality non-equalizing towbar which distributes the nose weight uniformly throughout the chassis.

The towbar should be bolted securely to the car and installed by a qualified technician.

YC200C3-A

Trailer Brakes

If your trailer is equipped with a braking system, make sure it conforms to federal and/or local regulations and that it is properly installed and operating correctly.

NOTE:

If you tow a trailer or vehicle, your car will require more frequent maintenance due to the additional load. See Maintenance Under Severe Usage Conditions" on page 5-5.

CAUTION:

- **Never connect a trailer brake system directly to the vehicle brake system.**
- **When towing a trailer on steep grades (in excess of 12%) pay close attention to the engine coolant temperature gauge to ensure the engine does not overheat. If the needle of the coolant temperature gauge moves across the dial towards "H" (HOT), pull over and stop as soon as it is safe to do so, and allow the engine to idle until it cools down. You may proceed once the engine has cooled sufficiently.**

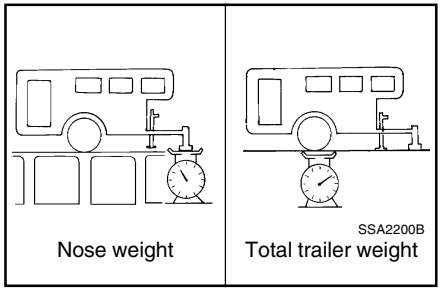
YC200D2-E

Safety Cables

Should the towbar connection between your car and the trailer or vehicle you are towing fail, the trailer or vehicle could wander dangerously across other lanes of traffic and ultimately leave the roadway. To eliminate this potentially dangerous situation, safety cables, attached between your car and the trailer or towed vehicle, are required.

C190E02HP-EAT

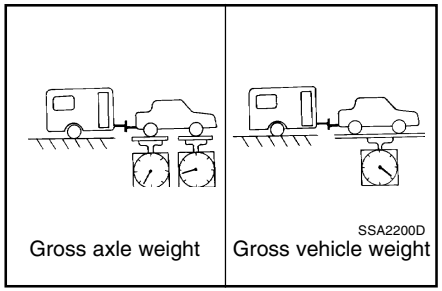
Trailer Weight Limit



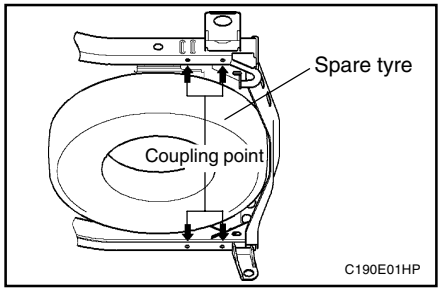
Nose weights can be increased or decreased by re-distributing the load in the trailer.
This can be verified by checking the total weight of the loaded trailer and then checking the nose weights.

NOTE:

1. **Never load the trailer with more weight in the back than in the front. About 60% of the trailer load should be in the front half on the trailer and the remaining 40% in the rear.**
2. **The total gross vehicle weight with trailer must not exceed the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR) shown on the vehicle identification plate (see page 8-1). The total gross vehicle weight is the combined weight of the vehicle, driver, all passengers and their luggage, cargo, towbar hitch, trailer nose weight and other optional equipment.**
3. **The front or rear axle weight must not exceed the Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR) shown on the vehicle identification plate (see page 8-1). It is possible that your towing package does not exceed the GVWR but exceeds the GAWR. Improper trailer loading and/or too much luggage in the trunk can overload the rear axle. Redistribute the load and check the axle weight again.**
4. **The maximum permissible static vertical load (nose weight) on the coupling device is 254 Lbs. (115kg)**



5. **The maximum permissible overhang of the coupling point is 48.4 inches (1230 mm).**



CAUTION:

The following specifications are recommended when towing a trailer. The loaded trailer weight cannot safely exceed the values in the chart.

Lbs.(kg)

	Maximum Towable Weight	
	Trailer	Nose weight
With Brake	6,173(2800)	254(115)
Without Brake	1,543(700)	61.7(28)

WARNING:

- **Improperly loading your car and trailer can seriously affect its steering and braking performance causing a crash which could cause injury or death.**
- **When a trailer is used, the operation speed is restricted to 62.1 MPH(100km/h) or less.**

C190G01HP-EAT

Important Trailer Weight Information

The Maximum Towable Weight of your Hyundai Terracan will be reduced if the vehicle is load. The Maximum Towable Weight for a fully load is vehicle is calculated as follows:

1. Find the Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) plate (see section 8).
2. Note the top 2 weights (in kg) of the 4 lines of weight information on the VIN plate.
3. Subtract the weight on line 1 from line 2. This result (in kg) is the maximum towable weight of a fully loaded vehicle.
   For more information, contact your local Hyundai Dealer.

HPC200E1-E

Trailer or Vehicle Towing Tips

1. Before towing, check towbar and safety cable connections as well as proper operation of the trailer running lights, brake lights, and turn signals.
2. Always drive your vehicle at a moderate speed (Less than 60 mph)
3. Trailer towing requires more fuel than normal conditions.
4. To maintain engine braking efficiency and electrical charging performance, do not use fifth gear (manual transmission).
5. Always secure items in the trailer to prevent load shift whilst driving.
6. Check the condition and air pressure of all tyres on the trailer and your car. Low tyre pressure can seriously affect the handling. Also check the spare tyre.
7. The vehicle/trailer combination is more affected by crosswind and buffeting.
   When being passed by a large vehicle, keep a constant speed and steer straight ahead. If there is too much wind buffeting slow down to get out of the other vehicle's air turbulence.
8. When parking your car and trailer, especially on a hill, be sure to follow all the normal precautions. Turn your front wheel into the curb, set the parking brake firmly, and put the transmission in 1st or Reverse (manual) or Park (automatic). In addition, place wheel chocks at each of the trailer's tyres.
9. If the trailer has electric brakes, start your vehicle and trailer moving, and then apply the trailer brake controller by hand to be sure the brakes are working. This lets you check your electrical connection at the same time.
10. During your trip, check occasionally to be sure that the load is secure, and that the lights and any trailer brakes are still working.
11. Avoid jerky starts, sudden acceleration or sudden stops.
12. Avoid sharp turns and rapid lane changes.
13. Avoid holding the brake pedal down too long or too frequently. This could cause the brakes to overheat, resulting in reduced braking efficiency.
14. When going down a hill, shift into a lower gear and use the engine braking effect.
    When ascending a long grade, downshift the transmission to a lower gear and reduce speed to reduce chances of engine overloading and/or overheating.
15. If you have to stop whilst going uphill, do not hold the vehicle in place by pressing on the accelerator. This can cause the automatic transmission to overheat. Use the parking brake or footbrake.

NOTE:
When towing, check transmission fluid more frequently.

CAUTION:
If overheating should occur when towing, (temperature gauge reads near red zone), taking the following action may reduce or eliminate the problem.

1. **Turn off the air conditioner.**
2. **Reduce highway speed.**
3. **Select a lower gear when going uphill.**
4. **Whilst in stop and go traffic, place the gear selector in park or neutral and idle the engine at a higher speed.**

ZD000A1-A

3. IN CASE OF EMERGENCY

SD020A1-E

IF THE ENGINE WILL NOT START

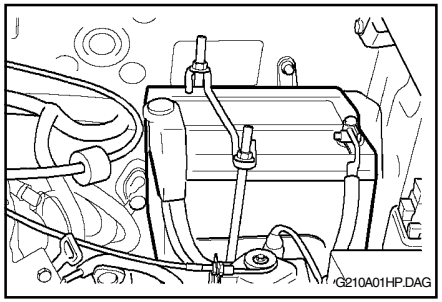
Seek assistance from the nearest Hyundai dealer with regard to the method of ignition and fuel system diagnosis.

CAUTION:

If the engine refuses to start, no attempt should be made to push or tow start the vehicle. Vehicles with automatic transmission or fuel injection will not be able to be started in this manner since no drive is transmitted through the automatic transmission whilst the engine is not running, and in the case of fuel injected derivatives, the fuel pump will not operate under tow start conditions. In addition, if the vehicle is equipped with an exhaust catalyst, damage to the catalyst may result if the vehicle is tow started.

HPD020B1-E

IF THE ENGINE CANNOT BE CRANKED



1. If the vehicle is fitted with manual transmission, ensure that the clutch pedal is depressed whilst cranking the engine. If the vehicle is fitted with automatic transmission, ensure that the transmission selector is at the "P" or"N" position.
2. Check the battery terminals and connections to ensure that these are clean and also tight.
3. If the ignition warning lights dim when the engine is cranked and the battery terminals have been checked, a discharged battery is indicated.
4. Do not attempt to push or tow start the vehicle, refer to "Jump Starting" for information regarding engine starting when the battery is discharged.

D010C02A-EAT

If Engine Turns Over Normally but Does Not Start

1. Check fuel level.
2. With the key in the "OFF" position, check all connectors at ignition coils and spark plugs(For Petrol Engine) or check all connectors at glow plug and glow plug relay(For Diesel Engine). Reconnect any that may be disconnected or loose.
3. Check fuel line in the engine compartment.
4. If engine still refuses to start, call a Hyundai dealer or seek other qualified assistance.

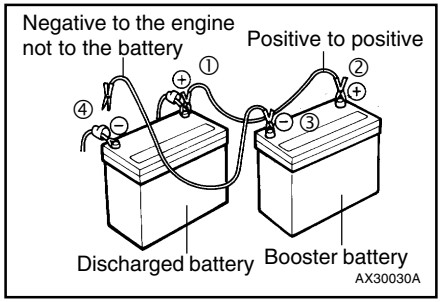
D010A01A-EAT

If Engine Stalls Whilst Driving

1. Reduce your speed gradually, keeping a straight line. Move cautiously off the road to a safe place.
2. Turn on your emergency flashers.
3. Try starting the engine again. If your vehicle will not start, contact Hyundai dealer or seek other qualified assistance.

SD030A1-E

JUMP STARTING



CAUTION:

Personal injury and damage to the vehicle may occur if jump starting is not performed correctly. If any doubt exists as to how this operation should be performed, seek assistance from qualified personnel.

WARNING:

Motor vehicle batteries contain sulphuric acid and emit hydrogen gas. Protective clothing should be worn and care exercised to prevent the acid from coming into contact with skin or clothing and the vehicle. Naked lights should not be permitted in the vicinity of the battery. Care should be exercised to prevent sparks occurring during connection. If acid accidentally comes into contact with skin or eyes, the affected area should immediately be flushed with copious amounts of water and medical assistance sought.

1. Ensure that the booster battery is 12 volt type. If the booster battery is installed in another vehicle, ensure that the two vehicles are not touching.
2. Turn off all unnecessary electrical equipment in both vehicles.
3. Ensure that the engine of the vehicle providing the jump start is running prior to connection of the jump cables.
4. Connect the red jump cable to the positive (+) terminal of the booster battery and the other end to the positive (+) terminal of the dis-charged battery.
5. Attach the black jump cable to the negative (-) terminal of the booster battery, and the other end to a ground point within the engine compartment of the vehicle with the flat battery. Do not connect to the negative battery terminal of the flat battery since sparks may be generated with the subsequent risk of explosion.
6. Raise the booster vehicle engine speed to 2,000 r.p.m. and start the engine of the vehicle with the flat battery.
7. Switch "ON" the main beam headlamps before carefully removing the jumper cables in the reverse order of attachment. Once the jumper cables have been removed, switch "OFF" the main beam headlamps.

CAUTION:

If the jump cable is incorrectly installed, damage to the vehicle electrical system may occur, in particular the electronic components such as the Fuel Injection system computer and the Automatic Transmission computer. The battery must never be disconnected whilst the engine is running.

HPD040A2-E

IF THE ENGINE OVERHEATS

If the temperature gauge indicates overheating:

1. Pull off the road and stop as soon as it is safe to do so.
2. Place the gear selector lever in "P" (automatic), or neutral (manual transmission) and set the parking brake. If the air conditioning is on, turn it off.
3. If coolant is running out under the car or steam is coming out from under the bonnet stop the engine. Do not open the bonnet until the coolant has stopped running or the steaming has stopped. If there is no visible loss of coolant and no steam, leave the engine running and check to be sure the engine cooling fan is operating.
   If the fan is not running, turn the engine off.
4. Check to see if the water pump drive belt is missing. If it is not missing, check to see that it is tight. If the drive belt seems to be satisfactory, check for coolant leaking from the radiator, hoses or under the car. (If the air conditioning had been in use, it is normal for cold water to be draining from it).

WARNING:
Whilst the engine is running, keep hands and clothing away from moving parts such as the fan and drive belts to prevent injury.

WARNING (Diesel only):
Never work on injection system with engine running or within 30 seconds after shutting off engine. High pressure pump, rail, injectors and high pressure pipes are subject to high pressure even after the engine stopped. The fuel jet produced by fuel leaks may cause serious injury, if it touch the body. People using pacemakers should not move than 30cm closer to the ECU or wiring harness within the engine room while engine is running, since the high currents in the Common Rail system produce considerable magnetic fields.

5. If the water pump drive belt is broken or coolant is leaking out, stop the engine immediately and call the nearest Hyundai dealer for assistance.

WARNING:
Do not remove the radiator cap when the engine is hot since steam and boiling water may be ejected from the radiator resulting in burns or scalding.

6. If the cause of the overheating cannot be found, wait until the engine temperature has returned to normal. Then, if coolant has been lost, carefully remove the radiator cap and add water to bring the fluid level in the reservoir up to the base of the radiator fill opening. Fill the coolant expansion tank to the halfway mark.
7. Proceed with caution until it is established that the engine is operating normally. If the engine overheats repeatedly, the advice of a Hyundai dealer should be sought.

CAUTION:
Serious loss of coolant indicates there is a leak in the cooling system and this should be checked as soon as possible by a Hyundai dealer.

YD050A1-E

SPARE TYRE

For Full Size

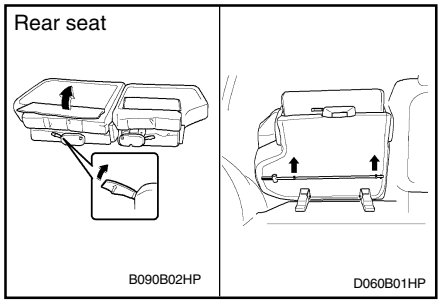
The following instructions for the FULL SIZE spare tyre should be observed:
Check inflation pressure as soon as possible after installing the spare tyre, and adjust to the specified pressure. The tyre pressure should be periodically checked and maintained at the specified pressure whilst the tyre is stored.

Spare Tyre Pressure

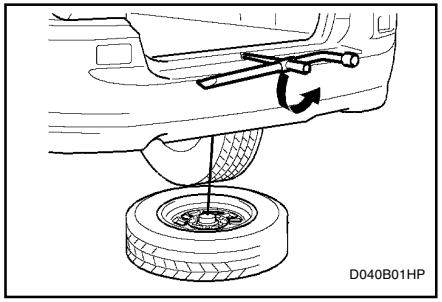
Tyre Size	FULL SIZE
Inflation Pressure	29 psi (200 kPa)

D040B03HP-EAT

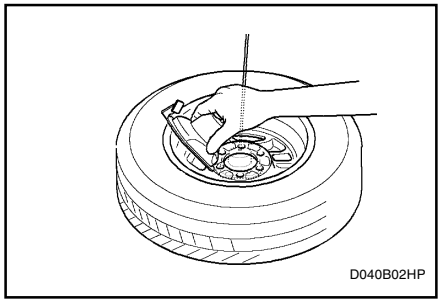
Handling the Spare Tyre



1. Obtain the spare wheel rod (Jack handle) after folding up the seat cushion of the rear seat .
   To fold up the seat cushion, refer to the page 1-15.



2. Insert the spare wheel rod into the hole in the upper pad of the rear bumper.
3. Connect the wheel nut wrench to the spare wheel rod.
4. Turn the wheel nut wrench counterclockwise and the spare tyre will lower.


D040B02HP

5. Remove the lift plate from the centre of the spare tyre after the spare tyre is lowered completely.

Installation is the reverse order of removal.

CAUTION:
When installing, turn the wheel nut wrench clockwise till you hear the crackle once or twice(Tightening torque : 3.87 kg m). And make sure the spare tyre is secured in the proper location.

SD060A1-E

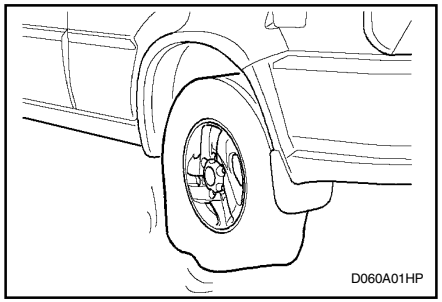
IN THE EVENT OF A PUNCTURE

If a puncture occurs whilst driving the vehicle:

1. Bring the car to rest as soon as it is safe to do so and with the minimum amount of braking required which will assist in maintaining the maximum amount of control. The vehicle should be parked wherever possible upon firm level ground to facilitate wheel changing.
2. If the vehicle is creating a hazard and the road conditions do not permit the wheel to be changed safely, assistance should be sought.
3. Passengers must not be allowed to remain inside the vehicle during wheel changing. If a puncture occurs whilst the vehicle is on a motorway, the passengers should take refuge on the motorway embankment to avoid the possibility of injury occurring should the vehicle be struck by other motorway traffic.
4. Wheel changing should be performed according to the following instructions.

HPD070A1-E

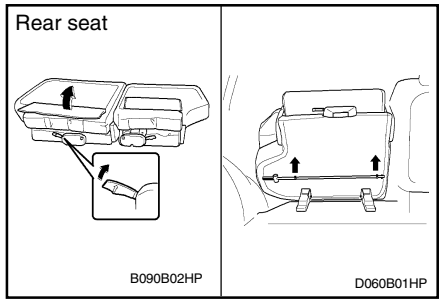
CHANGING A FLAT TYRE


D060A01HP

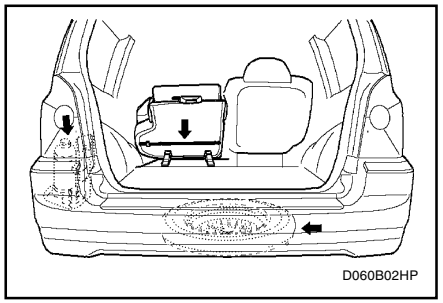
It is of the utmost importance that care is exercised when changing road wheels. Ensure that the parking brake is set and that the gear shift lever is in reverse (P, if the vehicle has automatic transmission).

D060B01HP-GAT

1. Obtain Spare Tyre and Tool



o Obtain the spare wheel rod (Jack handle) after folding up the seat cushion of the rear seat .
To fold up the seat cushion, refer to the page 1-15.

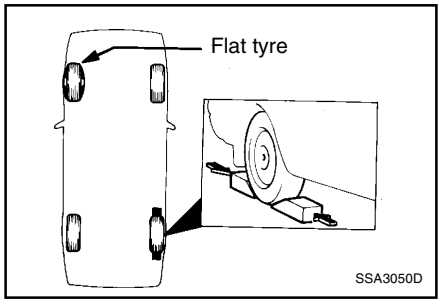


o Remove the spare tyre and take out the jack and tool bag.

NOTE:
The spare tyre is located underneath the car.

ZD070D1-E

2. Block the Wheel



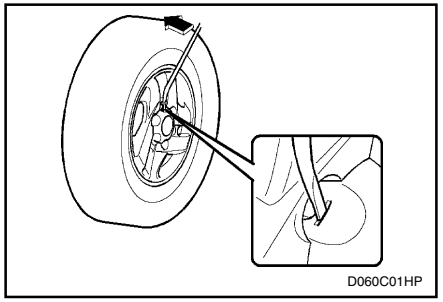
Block the wheel that is diagonally opposite from the flat tyre to prevent the vehicle from rolling when the car is raised on the jack.

D065C01HP-GAT

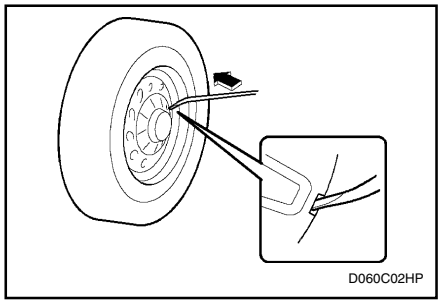
3. Removing the Spare Wheel Cap

Pry off the wheel cap, using the bar as shown in the illustration.

o Alloy Wheel Cap type

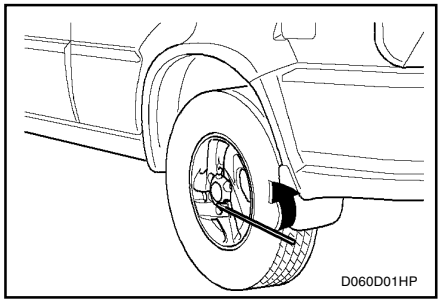


o Steel Wheel Cap type



ZD070F1-E

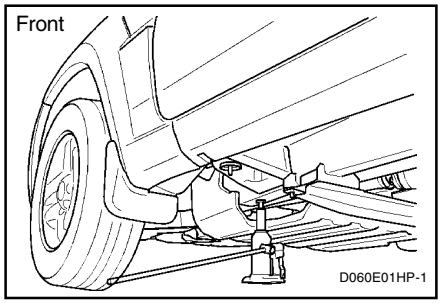
4. Loosen Wheel Nuts

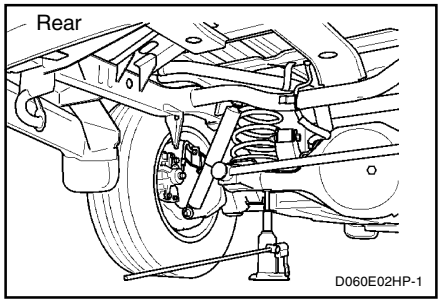


The wheel nuts should be loosened slightly before raising the car. To loosen the nuts, turn the wheel brace counterclockwise. When doing this, be sure that the socket is seated completely over the nut so it cannot slip off. For maximum leverage, position the wheel brace so the handle is to the right as shown in the drawing. Then, whilst holding the wheel brace near the end of the handle, pull up on it with steady pressure. Do not remove the nuts at this time. Just loosen them about one-half turn.

D060E01A-AAT

5. Put the Jack in Place

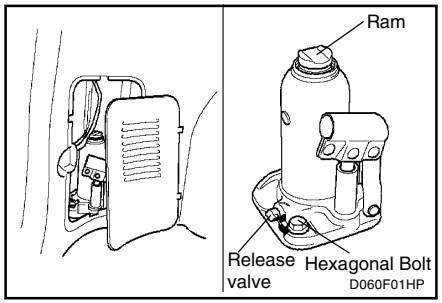




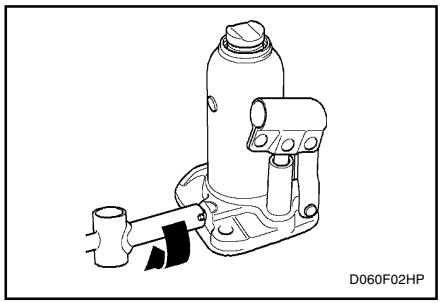
The base of the jack should be placed on firm, level ground. The jack should be positioned as shown in the illustration.

D060F02HP-EAT

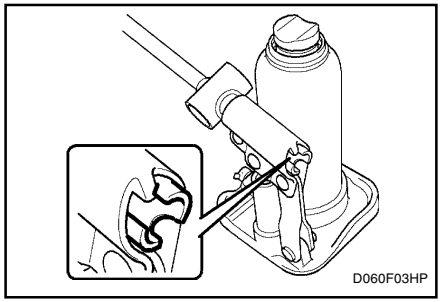
6. Raising the Car



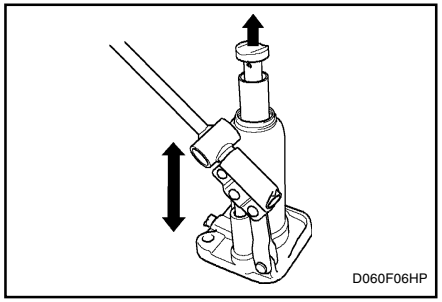
- o Open the lid at the left corner of the luggage compartment.
- o Loosen the hexagonal bolt, and then take out the jack.



Using the jack handle, turn the release valve clockwise until it reaches a stop.

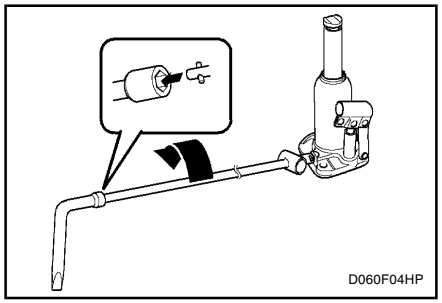


Then fit the jack handle into the holder, and align the groove of the jack handle with the notch of the holder.

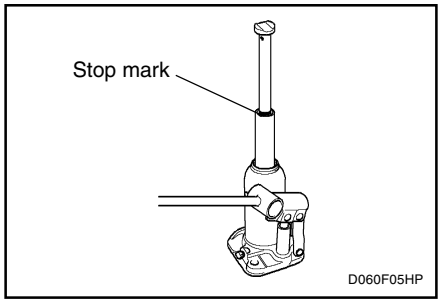


Move the jack handle up and down to raise the ram until just before the jack contacts the jacking point of the car.

Position the jack with the jack handle. Position it only at the specified points indicated in the "Put the Jack in Place".
Use of the jack at other points could damage the car.
Moving the jack handle up and down to raise the ram.
As the jack begins to raise the vehicle, double check that it is properly positioned and will not slip.
Raise the car high enough so that the fully inflated spare tire can be installed. To do this, you will need more ground clearance than is required to remove the flat tire.
Using the jack handle, turn the release valve counterclockwise slow to lower the ram, and then take out the jack.



When the release valve is difficult to turn by jack handle, connect the wheel brace to the jack handle.



CAUTION:

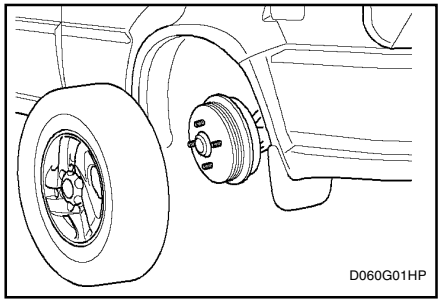
(1) Use only the jack included with the vehicle and use it only for changing a wheel and for installing tyre chains.
(2) Position the jack on a hard, level surface.
(3) If the release valve is loosened by turning it 2 or more times in the counterclockwise direction, the jack's oil will leak and the jack cannot be used.
(4) This jack is hydraulic, and the ram is a two stage type. When both rams are raised and the stop mark of the upper ram becomes visible, stop jacking immediately.

WARNING:

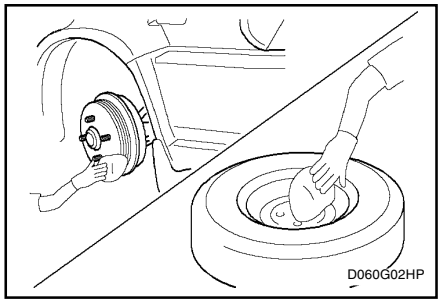
Do not get under the car when it is supported by the jack! This is very dangerous as the vehicle could fall and cause serious injury or death. No one should stay in the car whilst the jack is being used.

SD070H1-E

7. Changing Wheels



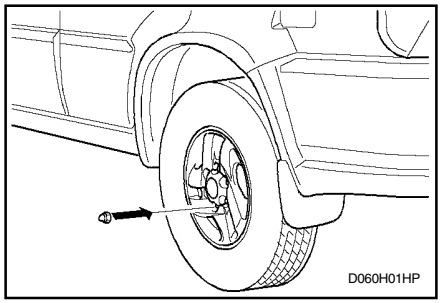
Using the wheel brace, remove the nuts and slide the wheel off the hub and wheel studs. Lie the wheel flat to prevent it from rolling. Ensure that the faces of the wheel and hub are clean. Position the spare wheel over the studs and slide it up to the hub.



WARNING:
It is important that the faces of the wheel and hub are clean prior to installing the wheel. The prescence of dirt or other matter in the wheel or hub faces could result in the wheel nuts becoming loose whilst the vehicle is being driven.

SD070I1-E

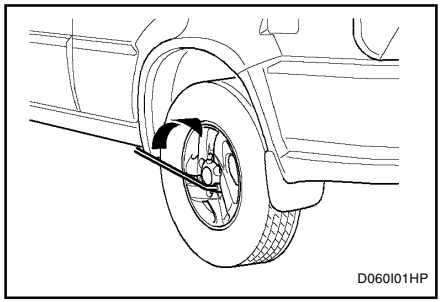
8. Re-install Wheel Nuts



Fit the wheel nuts onto the studs and tighten with the wheel brace.

D060I01HP-EAT

9. Lower Vehicle and Tighten Nuts

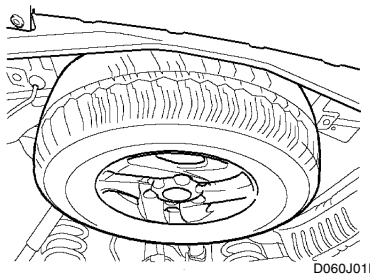


Lower the car to the ground by moving the jack handle up and down. Then position the wheel brace as shown in the drawing and tighten the wheel nuts. Be sure the socket is seated completely over the nut. Do not stand on the wrench or use an extension pipe over the wrench handle.
Go around the wheel tightening every other nut until they are all tight. Then double-check each nut for tightness. After changing wheels, have a technician tighten the wheel nuts to their proper torque as soon as possible.

Wheel nut tightening torque:
Steel wheel & aluminium alloy wheel:
90-110 N.m (65-80 lb.ft)

D060J02O-EAT

AFTER CHANGING WHEELS

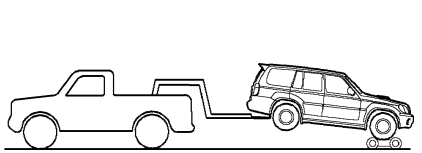


D060J01HP

If you have a tyre gauge, remove the valve cap and check the air pressure. If the pressure is lower than recommended, drive slowly to the nearest service station and inflate to the correct pressure. If it is too high, adjust it until it is correct. Always reinstall the valve cap after checking or adjusting tyre pressure. If the cap is not replaced, air may leak from the tyre. If you lose a valve cap, buy another and install it as soon as possible.
After you have changed wheels, always secure the flat tyre in its place and return the jack and tools to their proper storage locations.

D080A02A-EAT

IF YOUR CAR MUST BE TOWED



D080A01HP

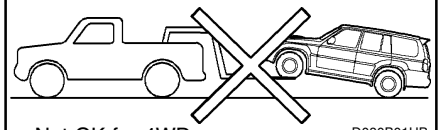
- o OK for 4WD
- o OK for Automatic or Manual Transmission Equipped Vehicle

CAUTION:
Your car can be damaged if towed incorrectly!

If your car has to be towed, it should be done by your Hyundai dealer or a commercial tow truck service. This will help assure that your car is not damaged in towing. Also, professionals are generally aware of local laws governing towing. In any case, rather than risk damage to your car, it is suggested that you show this information to the tow truck operator. Be sure that a safety cable system is used and that all current laws associated with vehicle towing are observed.

D080B01HP-EAT

Towing a Car With Manual Transmission



D080B01HP

- o Not OK for 4WD (OK for Part Time 4WD in 2H Position)
- o Not OK for Automatic Transmission Equipped Vehicle
- o OK for Manual Transmission

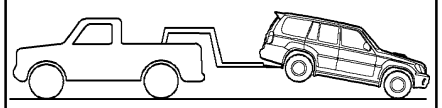
- o Be sure that the ignition key is in the "ACC" position. This is necessary to prevent damage to the steering lock mechanism, which is not designed to hold the front wheels straight whilst the car is being towed.
- o If any of the loaded wheels or suspension components are damaged, a towing dolly must be used.

CAUTION:

Full time 4 Wheel Drive cannot be towed with a tow truck.
It must be towed by lifting all 4 wheels.

D080C01HP-EAT

Towing A Car With Automatic Transmission



D080C01HP

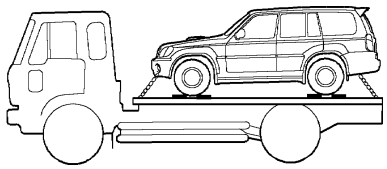
- o Not OK for 4WD (OK for Part Time 4WD in 2H Position)
- o OK for Automatic or Manual Transmission Equipped Vehicle with No Damage

CAUTION:

A car with an automatic transmission should never be towed from the front with the rear wheels on the ground. This can cause serious damage to the transmission. If the car must be towed from the front, a towing dolly must be used under the rear wheels.

- o If the car is being towed with all four wheels on the ground, it can be towed only from the front. Be sure that the transmission is in neutral. Do not tow at speeds greater than 30 mph (50 km/h) and for more than 15 miles (25 km).

Be sure the steering is unlocked by placing the key in the "ACC" position. A driver must be in the towed vehicle to operate the steering and brakes.



D080C02HP

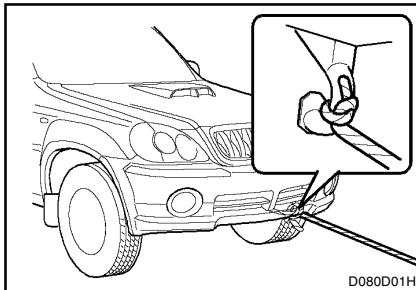
- o OK for 4WD
- o OK for Automatic or Manual Transmission Equipped Vehicle

NOTE:

Before towing, check the level of the transmission fluid. If it is below the "HOT" range on the dipstick, add fluid. If you cannot add fluid, a towing dolly must be used.

D080D01HP-EAT

Emergency Towing



D080D01HP

For emergency towing when no commercial tow vehicle is available, attach a tow cable, chain or strap to one of the towing hooks under the front of your car. Be very careful when attempting this procedure when the vehicle is on any unpaved surface to avoid damage to your vehicle.
Nor should towing be attempted if the wheels, drive train, axles, steering or brakes are damaged. Before towing, be sure the transmission is in neutral and the key is in "ACC" (with the engine off) or in the "ON" position (with the engine running). A driver must be in the towed car to steer it and operate the brakes.

NOTE:
To avoid serious damage to your 4WD vehicle, limit the towing to 10 mph (15 km/h) and not for more than 1 mile (1.5 km) at ANY TIME.

D120A01A-EAT

IF YOU LOSE YOUR KEYS

Information about the key of immobiliser system will be found on page 1-2.

SE000A1-E

4. APPEARANCE CARE

ZE020A1-E

APPEARANCE CARE

In using the most advanced design and construction practices, every Hyundai is built to retain its original factory finish for many years. However, long term durability is also greatly dependant upon maintaining the various protection systems and coatings used in manufacture since constant exposure to the elements will eventually result in their breakdown and loss of effectiveness. The following suggestions are made to assist in the maintenance of the vehicle bodywork.

ZE020B1-E

Underbody Coatings

Every Hyundai passenger car receives a full underbody and cavity injection treatment during production. In order that this treatment may retain maximum effectiveness, it is recommended that the underbody receives a power wash and a thorough inspection after each winter season. In doing so any accumulations of mud, which act as moisture traps and combine with road salts to accelerate corrosion, will be removed. Should any damage to or deterioration of the underbody coating be apparent, the advice of a Hyundai dealer regarding the use of a compatible repair material should be sought.

NOTE:

The underbody should never be steam cleaned since the underbody coating may be removed by this process.

During the interim period between power washing the underbody, the more vulnerable areas such as wheelarches should be hosed off, particularly during the winter season to prevent prolonged contact of road salt with the body.

Ensure that the various drain points located at bottom of the door panels are kept clear, to prevent water becoming trapped within the cavities. Wherever possible, the parking of the vehicle in a confined, poorly ventilated location (e.g.) garage should be avoided when the vehicle is wet or covered with snow or ice. Under these conditions, the internal cavities of the vehicle will remain damp for long periods of time which encourage corrosion. Parking the vehicle where good ventilation exists is preferable.

ZE020C1-E

Interior

During the winter period, it is possible that the carpet within the passenger compartment may become wet. The carpet should not be allowed to remain in this condition for prolonged periods since the carpet may begin to create musty smells and promote internal corrosion of the floorpan.

JE050A1-E

VALETING

Regular cleaning of the exterior paintwork serves two important functions. Firstly, the removal of abrasive dirt and contaminants will maintain the lustre of the paintwork and will prevent discolouration and dulling due to prolonged contact.

Secondly, the presence of damage through impact or abrasion will be apparent allowing early rectification to be made thus preventing corrosion from becoming established and spreading beneath the paint film. To avoid "water spotting" the vehicle should not be washed in direct sunlight particularly in the case of vehicles having dark body colours. The heat from the sun rays is absorbed by the paint film increasing the surface temperature. This action causes water used for washing to evaporate quickly leaving behind the deposits from the water and the shampoo used.

Use only a shampoo intended for the purpose and ensure that the body work is thoroughly wetted to soften the dirt film prior to attempting to remove this.

After removing the dirt film with a soft sponge, the body work should be thoroughly rinsed and then dried with a good quality chamois leather to prevent streaking or spotting of the paint work.

Household detergents, solvents and abrasive cleaning materials should not be used in order to avoid damaging the paint film.

Plastic wheel covers should be cleaned using a sponge and water. Cast alloy wheels should be cleaned using a mild soap or neutral detergent. Abrasive compounds must not be used since in the event of these damaging the lacquer coating, oxidisation of the aluminium wheel will occur, spoiling the appearance.
The use of a toothbrush will facilitate cleaning between the wheel "spokes".

JE060A1-E

STAIN/SPOT REMOVAL

Should tree sap, dead insects or tar prove to be difficult to remove from the paint film, turpentine or a proprietary paint cutting compound may be used. Ensure that the area to be cleaned is not rubbed intensively to prevent breaking through the colour coat and exposing the under coat.

JE070A1-E

POLISHING

The exterior paint work should be polished with a proprietary wax polish when water no longer collects in bead form on the paint work. The instructions of the product manufacturer should be adhered to.

JE080A1-E

BUMPER MAINTENANCE

The special material from which the bumpers are manufactured warrants special attention to preserve the appearance of the bumpers. Avoid contact with battery electrolyte or brake fluid and ensure that accidental spillages are immediately flushed with water.
Do not use abrasive cleaning materials which may damage the bumpers.
Avoid subjecting the bumpers to high temperatures such as may be encountered in high bake paint ovens.

JE090A1-E

ACCIDENT REPAIRS

In the event of the body work sustaining damage, the following points should be noted prior to repairs being undertaken.
If body panels are replaced or repaired, anti corrosion treatment must be applied to the repair area. The product used must be compatible with those used in manufacture. It is recommended that repairs are entrusted to a Hyundai dealer to ensure that replacement parts used are of the same high quality as those used in manufacture of the vehicle and that the correct repair methods and materials will ensure adequate levels of corrosion protection and the continued validity of the Anti Perforation Warranty.

JE100A1-E

SEAT BELTS

Seat belts should be cleaned only with a mild soap solution. Strong detergents, solvens or bleaches may damage the belt webbing and therefore reduce the effectiveness of the belt. Belts which display signs of fraying, wear or cut should be replaced.

JE110A1-E

INTERIOR VALETING

The soft trim and carpets should be maintained with the regular use of a vacuum cleaner. Heavy soiling should be removed with a dry cleaning agent recommended for this purpose following the instructions of the product manufacturer. Paint thinner, solvents or other such cleaning materials should not be used since damage to the upholstery may result.

JE120A1-E

WINDOWS

A proprietary glass cleaner should be used to clean the inside of the windows. However, the rear heated windscreen must only be cleaned using a light horizontal cleaning action. Care should be exercised to avoid the use of abrasive cleaners or contact with items of jewellery which may damage the heating elements.

YE010A1-E

To Clean Leather Upholstery (Not all models)

In the normal course of use, leather upholstered surfaces will, like any material, pick-up dust and dirt. This dust and dirt MUST be cleaned off or it may work into the surface of the leather, causing damage.

Fine leather needs care. This care, as with all fine things, need not be elaborated, but should include cleaning when necessary. Washing leather thoroughly with soap and water will keep your leather lustrous, beautiful and ensure you have many years of wear.

Take a piece of cheese cloth and using any mild soap and lukewarm water, work up a good lather. Thoroughly wash the leather. Wipe clean with a slightly damp cloth and dry with soft cloth. Do this as often as the leather becomes soiled.

During tanning operations, sufficient oils are incorporated through processing that none need be applied during the life of the leather. Oil applied to the finished surface will in no way help the leather and may do more harm than good. Varnished and furniture polishes should NEVER be used under any conditions.

YF010A1-A

5. VEHICLE MAINTENANCE REQUIREMENTS

DF020A1-E

MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING REQUIREMENTS

To ensure the continued reliability and safety of the vehicle, certain routine maintenance operations are required at specific mileage or time intervals.

It is the responsibility of the vehicle owner to ensure that the maintenance schedules shown in both this Owner's Manual and the Warranty and Service Passport are adhered to.

The new vehicle warranty may be invalidated if the routine maintenance operations are not performed in line with the recommendations outlined and the safety and durability of the vehicle adversely affected.

It is recommended that all maintenance operations with the exception of the daily operating checks are entrusted to a Hyundai dealer to ensure that the latest repair and maintenance procedures and specialized servicing tools are employed. In addition, the use of genuine Hyundai replacement parts will ensure that the vehicle safety and performance will not be compromised.

NOTE:

The inspection and testing of certain electronic fuel injection/engine management and automatic transmission control systems require specialised electronic equipment specifically designed for Hyundai vehicles. The use of general purpose electrical test equipment may result in damage to the control unit microprocessors.

DF020C1-E

Specified Scheduled Procedures

The specified scheduled procedures are listed in the maintenance charts beginning at page 5-2. The operations specified must be performed at the time or mileage intervals shown irrespective of whether the mileage interval has been reached before the specified time interval.

Certain lubricants and components degrade with both time and mileage (eg, engine oil and brake fluid) and therefore it is not permissable to base the maintenance schedule upon mileage alone. It is strongly recommended that the maintenance operations are performed by a Hyundai dealer because of the need for specialized knowledge and tooling and to ensure that no possibility of invalidating the manufacturers warranty exists.

The maintenance schedules relate to vehicles operated under normal conditions, vehicles which are operated under adverse conditions will require more frequent maintenance which is described at page 5-5.

DF020F1-E

SERVICE HISTORY

It is important that all scheduled maintenance services are recorded in the warranty and service passport to ensure that proof of maintenance is available when warranty service is required.

YF010A2-E

REGULAR SERVICING

In order to ensure continued reliability, safety and longevity, regular maintenance performed at the intervals specified is essential. The maintenance intervals specified are based both on time elapsed and mileage covered since the previous maintenance service was performed. However, under severe operating conditions, certain scheduled operations should be performed at shorter intervals.

Regular maintenance should be entrusted to a Hyundai dealer who is best able to provide the expertise required to ensure optimum operational performance.
In addition the use of Hyundai replacement parts and service consumables will ensure that the original build quality, operational performance and safety are maintained.

F030B01HP-EAT

R : REPLACE I : INSPECT AND, AFTER INSPECTION, CLEAN, ADJUST, REPAIR OR REPLACE IF NECESSARY

NO.	DESCRIPTION	MILES X 1000	10	20	30	40	50	60
		MONTHS	12	24	36	48	60	72
	ENGINE CONTROL SYSTEM MAINTENANCE (PETROL)							
1	ENGINE OIL & FILTER (API SG, SG/CD, SH OR SH/CD)		R	R	R	R	R	R
2	DRIVE BELT (ALT, DAMPER, TENSIONER, IDLER)			I		I		I
3	FUEL FILTER (MPI TYPE)					R		
4	FLUID LEAKS		I	I	I	I	I	I
5	TIMING BELT				I		R	
6	VENTILATION HOSES				I			I
7	AIR CLEANER FILTER		I	R	I	R	I	R
8	SPARK PLUGS (PLATINUM COATED)							R

VEHICLE MAINTENANCE REQUIREMENTS

F030D04HP-EAT

R :REPLACE I : INSPECT AND, AFTER INSPECTION, CLEAN, ADJUST, REPAIR OR REPLACE IF NECESSARY.

NO.	DESCRIPTION	MILES X 1000	10	20	30	40	50	60	70
		MONTHS	12	24	36	48	60	72	84
	ENGINE CONTROL SYSTEM MAINTENANCE (DIESEL)								
1	ENGINE OIL & FILTER (API CF-4 OR ABOVE, ACEA B4 OR ABOVE)		R	R	R	R	R	R	R
2	AIR CLEANER FILTER		I	R	I	R	I	R	I
3	FUEL FILTER CARTRIDGE			R		R		R	
4	TIMING BELT							R	
5	DRIVE BELT (FOR AIR COMPRESSOR, ALTERNATOR)			I		I		I	
6	ALTERNATOR VACUUM PUMP		I	I	I	I	I	I	I
7	ALTERNATOR OIL HOSE & VACUUM HOSE		I	I	I	I	I	I	I
8	FUEL LINES, FUEL HOSE & CONNECTIONS		I	I	I	I	I	I	I

VEHICLE MAINTENANCE REQUIREMENTS

F030C02HP-EAT

R : REPLACE I : INSPECT AND, AFTER INSPECTION, CLEAN, ADJUST, REPAIR OR REPLACE IF NECESSARY

NO.	DESCRIPTION		MILES X 1000	10	20	30	40	50	60
			MONTHS	12	24	36	48	60	72
	GENERAL MAINTENANCE								
1	COOLING SYSTEM			I	I	I	I	I	I
2	COOLANT	PETROL ENGINE				R			R
		DIESEL ENGINE			R		R		R
3	ENGINE COOLANT SPECIFIC GRAVITY			I	I	I	I	I	I
4	MANUAL TRANSMISSION OIL			I	I	I	I	I	I
5	AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION FLUID AND FILTER			I	I	I	I	I	R
6	BRAKE PIPES, HOSES, AND CONNECTIONS			I	I	I	I	I	I
7	BRAKE FLUID			I	R	I	R	I	R
8	CLUTCH FLUID			I	R	I	R	I	R
9	REAR BRAKE LININGS AND CYLINDERS				I		I		I
10	BRAKE PADS			I	I	I	I	I	I
11	SUSPENSION AND STEERING SYSTEM			I	I	I	I	I	I
12	FRONT SUSPENSION BALL JOINTS			I	I	I	I	I	I
13	TRANSFER CASE OIL			I	I	I	I	I	I
14	AXLE GEAR OIL			R	I	I	R	I	I
15	CLEAN PROPELLAR SHAFT/RETIGHTEN BOLTS			I	I	I	I	I	I
16	REAR WHEEL BEARINGS			I	I	I	I	I	I
17	TYRE CONDITION AND PRESSURE (incl. Spare)			I	I	I	I	I	I
18	LUBRICATE LOCKS AND HINGES			I	I	I	I	I	I
19	CHECK ALL ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS			I	I	I	I	I	I
20	ROAD TEST			I	I	I	I	I	I
21	CHECK ALL SYSTEMS WITH HI-SCAN			I	I	I	I	I	I
22	CHECK EMISSIONS			I	I	I	I	I	I
23	CHECK 4 WHEEL ALIGNMENT			I	I	I	I	I	I

F040A05HP-EAT

MAINTENANCE UNDER SEVERE USAGE CONDITIONS

The following items must be serviced more frequently on cars normally used under severe driving conditions. Refer to the chart below for the appropriate maintenance intervals.

R : REPLACE I : INSPECT AND, AFTER INSPECTION, CLEAN, ADJUST, REPAIR OR REPLACE IF NECESSARY

MAINTENANCE ITEM	MAINTENANCE OPERATION	MAINTENANCE INTERVALS	DRIVING CONDITION
ENGINE OIL AND FILTER	R	EVERY 4,500 MILES OR 6 MONTHS	A, B, C, F, H
AIR CLEANER FILTER	R	MORE FREQUENTLY	C, E
SPARK PLUGS (FOR PETROL ENGINE)	R	MORE FREQUENTLY	G, H, I, J
TIMING BELT	R	EVERY 37,000 MILES OR 48 MONTHS	D, E, F, G
BRAKE PADS, CALIPERS AND ROTORS	I	MORE FREQUENTLY	C, D, G, H
REAR BRAKE DRUMS/LININGS/PADS, PARKING BRAKE	I	MORE FREQUENTLY	C, D, G, H
STEERING GEAR BOX, LINKAGE & BOOTS/ LOWER ARM BALL JOINT	I	MORE FREQUENTLY	C, D, E, F
DRIVESHAFTS & BOOTS	I	EVERY 9,000 MILES OR 12 MONTHS	C, D, E, F
MANUAL TRANSMISSION OIL	R	EVERY 60,000 MILES	A, C, D, E, F, G, H, I, J
AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION FLUID AND FILTER	R	EVERY 27,000 MILES	A, C, E, F, G, H, I
TRANSFER CASE OIL *1	R	EVERY 60,000 MILES	C, E, G, H, I
AXLE GEAR OIL *1	I	MORE FREQUENTLY	C, E, G, H, I

SEVERE DRIVING CONDITIONS

A - Repeated short distance driving
B - Extensive idling
C - Driving in dusty, rough roads
D - Driving in areas using salt or other corrosive materials or in very cold weather
E - Driving in sandy areas
F - More than 50% driving in heavy city traffic during hot weather above 32°F(90°C)
G - Driving in mountainous areas
H - Towing a trailer
I - Driving for patrol car,taxi,commercial car or vehicle towing
J - Driving over 100 MPH

*1: Transfer Case Oil and Axle Gear Oil should be checked (and replaced if necessary) anytime they have been submerged in water over 40 cm deep.

F060A01A-AAT

EXPLANATION OF SCHEDULED MAINTENANCE ITEMS

F060M01A-AAT

o Engine oil and filter

The engine oil and filter should be changed at the intervals specified in the maintenance schedule. If the car is being driven in severe conditions, more frequent oil and filter changes are required.

F060B01A-AAT

o Drive belts

Inspect all drive belts for evidence of cuts, cracks, excessive wear or oil and replace if necessary. Drive belts should be checked periodically for proper tension and adjusted as necessary.

F060C01A-AAT

o Fuel filter

A clogged filter can limit the speed at which the vehicle may be driven, damage the emission system and cause hard starting. If an excessive amount of foreign matter accumulates in the fuel tank, the filter may require replacement more frequently.
After installing a new filter, run the engine for several minutes, and check for leaks at the connections. Fuel filters should be installed by trained technicians.

F060D01TB-AAT

o Fuel lines, fuel hoses and connections

Check the fuel lines, fuel hoses and connections for leakage and damage. Have a trained technician replace any damaged or leaking parts immediately.

WARNING (Diesel only):
Never work on injection system with engine running or within 30 seconds after shutting off engine. High pressure pump, rail, injectors and high pressure pipes are subject to high pressure even after the engine stopped. The fuel jet produced by fuel leaks may cause serious injury, if it touch the body. People using pacemakers should not move than 30cm closer to the ECU or wiring harness within the engine room while engine is running, since the high currents in the Common Rail system produce considerable magnetic fields.

F060E01A-AAT

o Timing belt

Inspect all parts related to the timing belt for damage and deformation. Replace any damaged parts immediately.

F060G01A-EAT

o Vapour hose and fuel filler cap

The vapour hose and fuel filler cap should be inspected at those intervals specified in the maintenance schedule. Make sure that a new vapour hose or fuel filler cap is correctly replaced.

F060F01A-AAT

o Vacuum, crankcase ventilation hoses

Inspect the surface of hoses for evidence of heat and/or mechanical damage. Hard and brittle rubber, cracking, tears, cuts, abrasions, and excessive swelling indicate deterioration. Particular attention should be paid to examine those hose surfaces nearest to high heat sources, such as the exhaust manifold.
Inspect the hose routing to assure that the hoses do not come in contact with any heat source, sharp edges or moving component which might cause heat damage or mechanical wear. Inspect all hose connections, such as clamps and couplings, to make sure they are secure, and that no leaks are present. Hoses should be replaced immediately if there is any evidence of deterioration or damage.

F060H01A-AAT

o Air cleaner filter

A Genuine Hyundai air cleaner filter is recommended when filter is replaced.

F060J01A-AAT

o Spark plugs (For Petrol Engine)

Make sure to install new spark plugs of the correct heat range.

F070C01A-AAT

o Coolant

The coolant should be changed at the intervals specified in the maintenance schedule.

F070D01HP-AAT

o Manual transmission oil

Inspect the manual transmission oil according to the maintenance schedule.

NOTE:

If the oil level is low, check for possible leaks before adding oil. Do not overfill.

F070E02HP-GAT

o Automatic transmission fluid and filter

The fluid level should be in the "HOT" range of the dipstick, after engine and transmission and filter are at normal operating temperature. Check the Automatic and filter Transmission and filter Fluid level with the engine running and the transmission and filter in neutral, with the parking brake properly applied. Use MOBIL DEXRON-II when adding or changing fluid.

F070F01A-AAT

o Brake hoses and lines

Visually check for proper installation, chafing, cracks, deterioration and any leakage. Replace any deteriorated or damaged parts immediately.

F070G02A-AAT

o Brake fluid

Check brake fluid level in the brake fluid reservoir. The level should be between "MIN" and "MAX" marks on the side of the reservoir. Use only hydraulic brake fluid conforming to DOT 3 or DOT 4.

F070H01HP-AAT

o Rear brake drums, linings and pads parking brake

Check the rear brake drums, linings and pads for scoring, burning, leaking fluid, broken parts, and excessive wear. Inspect the parking brake system including the parking brake lever and cables. For detailed service procedures, refer to the Shop Manual.

F070J01A-AAT

o Brake pads, calipers and rotors

Check the pads for excessive wear, discs for run out and wear, and calipers for fluid leakage.

F070K01A-AAT

o Exhaust pipe and muffler

Visually inspect the exhaust pipes, muffler and hangers for cracks, deterioration, or damage. Start the engine and listen carefully for any exhaust gas leakage. Tighten connections or replace parts as necessary.

F070L01A-AAT

o Suspension mounting bolts

Check the suspension connections for looseness or damage. Retighten to the specified torque.

F070M01B-AAT

o Steering gear box, linkage & boots/ lower arm ball joint, upper arm ball joint

With the vehicle stopped and engine off, check for excessive free-play in the steering wheel. Check the linkage for bends or damage. Check the dust boots and ball joints for deterioration, cracks, or damage. Replace any damaged parts.

F070N01A-AAT

o Power steering pump, belt and hoses

Check the power steering pump and hoses for leakage and damage. Replace any damaged or leaking parts immediately. Inspect the power steering belt for evidence of cuts, cracks, excessive wear, oiliness and proper tension. Replace or adjust it if necessary.

F070P01HP-AAT

o Driveshafts and boots

Check the drive shafts, boots and clamps for cracks, deterioration, or damage. Replace any damaged parts and, if necessary, repack the grease.

F070Q01A-AAT

o Air conditioning refrigerant

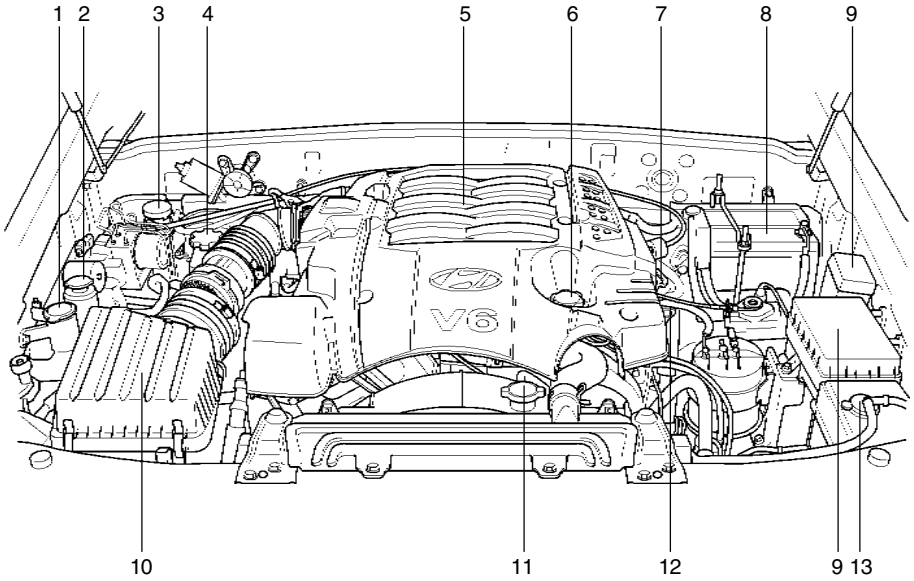
Check the air conditioning lines and connections for leakage and damage. Check air conditioning performance according to the relevant shop manual if necessary.

SG000A1-E

6. OWNER MAINTENANCE

G010A01HP-EAT

PETROL ENGINE COMPARTMENT (3.5 V6)



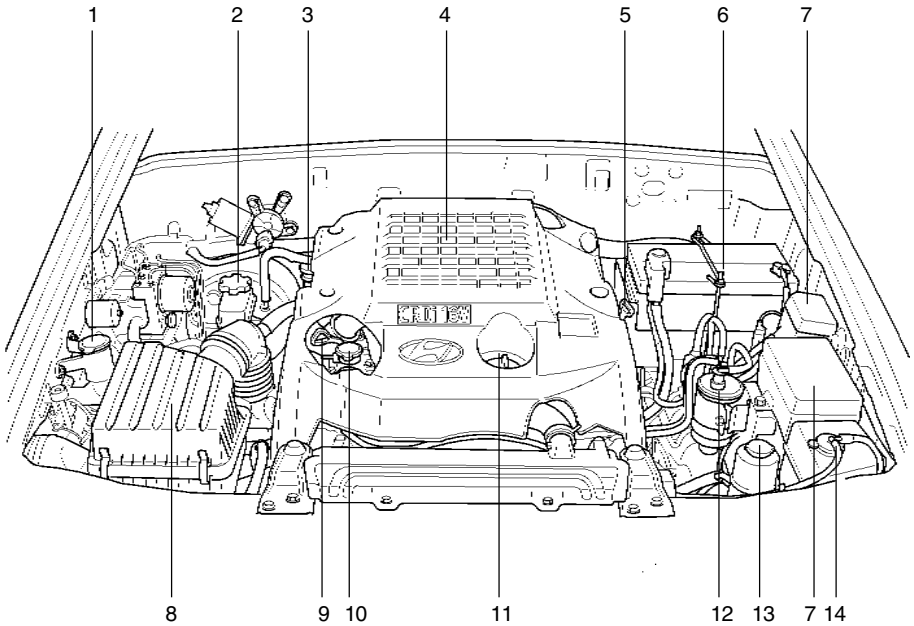
1. Windscreen washer fluid reservoir
2. Power steering fluid reservoir
3. Clutch fluid reservoir (Not all models)
4. Brake fluid reservoir
5. Engine cover
6. Engine oil filler cap
7. Automatic transmission fluid level dipstick (Vehicle with Automatic Transmission)
8. Battery
9. Fuse and relay box
10. Air cleaner
11. Radiator cap
12. Engine oil level dipstick
13. Coolant reservoir cap

CAUTION:
When inspecting or servicing the engine, you should handle tools and other heavy objects carefully so that the plastic cover of the engine is not damaged.

G010A02HP-E

G010C01HP-EAT

DIESEL ENGINE COMPARTMENT (2.9 CRDi)



CAUTION:
When inspecting or servicing the engine, you should handle tools and other heavy objects carefully so that the plastic cover of the engine is not damaged.

G010C01HP-D

1. Windscreen washer fluid reservoir
2. Brake fluid reservoir
3. Clutch fluid reservoir (Not all models)
4. Engine cover
5. Automatic transmission fluid level dipstick (Vehicle with Automatic Transmission)
6. Battery
7. Fuse and relay box
8. Air cleaner
9. Engine oil level dipstick
10. Radiator cap
11. Engine oil filler cap
12. Fuel filter
13. Power steering fluid reservoir
14. Coolant reservoir cap

SG020B1-E

DAILY OPERATING CHECKS

The following items should be checked on a daily basis or whenever the vehicle is refuelled, whichever occurs sooner.

- o Engine oil level.
- o Coolant level.
- o Power steering fluid level.
- o Brake fluid level.
- o Windscreen washer fluid level.
- o Battery condition.
- o Tyre condition and pressures.
- o Operation and cleanliness of all lighting equipment.
- o Windscreen wiper and washer operation.
- o Horn operation.
- o Warning light operation.
- o Adjustment and cleanliness of mirrors.
- o Seat and seat belt adjustment and operation.
- o Fluid leakage.

The vehicle must not be driven if the daily operating checks indicate that any item of equipment related to the safety or roadworthiness of the vehicle is not functioning correctly.

G030A01FC-EAT

ENGINE OIL

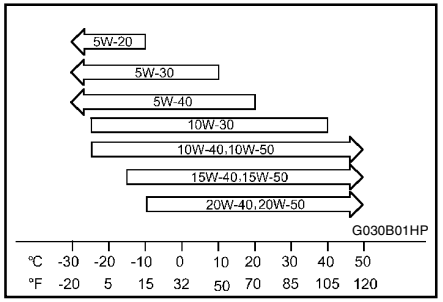
The correct engine oil level is of paramount importance. An excessively high or low oil level may result in irreparable damage being sustained by the engine. The engine oil level must be checked on a daily basis, whenever the vehicle is refuelled or before starting a long trip, whichever occurs sooner.

In addition, it is imperative that only an approved grade and specification of oil is used to avoid the possibility of serious engine damage and premature wear. The use of "budget price" oil is a false economy that must be avoided if the maximum reliability and useful life is to be obtained from the vehicle.

G030B01HP-EAT

Recommended Oil

1. Petrol Engine

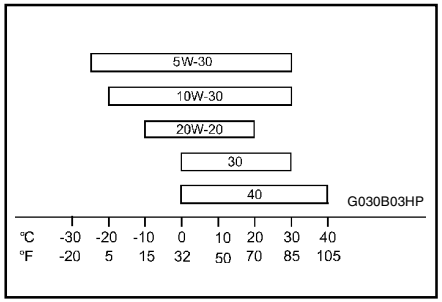


A multi grade oil having a specification which meets A.P.I. specification of SG, SG/CD, SH or SH/CD is recommended. The oil viscosity should be selected according to the operating environment of the engine by means of the table shown above. The engine oil recommendations are complete in themselves and the use of additives is neither required nor recommended. The use of engine oil additives may result in invalidation of the vehicle warranty.

NOTE:

The use of a 5W-20 multi grade oil is not recommended for sustained high speed use.

2. Diesel Engine

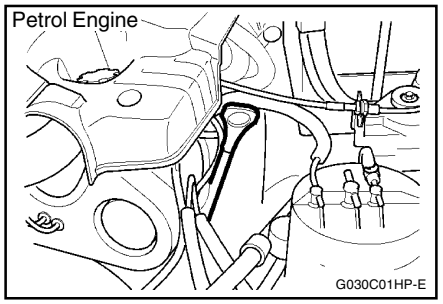


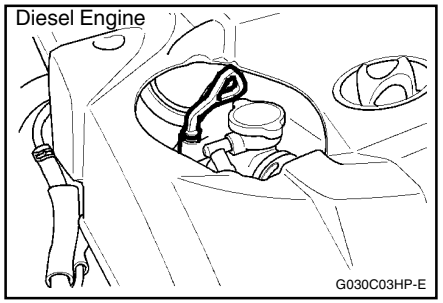
The engine oil quality should meet the following classification:

API: CF-4 or ABOVE
ACEA: B4 or ABOVE

SG030C1-E

Engine Oil Level



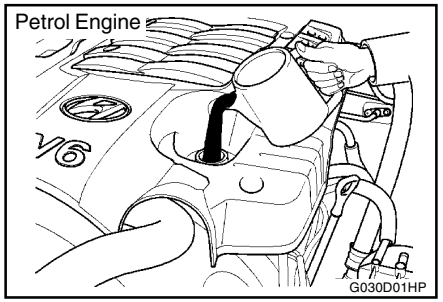


The engine oil level should be checked with the engine at normal operating temperature and the vehicle parked upon level ground.
Prior to checking the level, the vehicle should be allowed to stand for several minutes after the engine has been switched off to allow the oil to drain back to the sump.

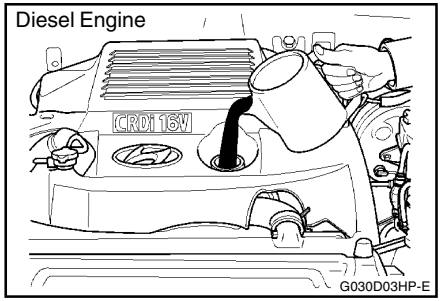
Withdraw the dipstick and wipe it with a clean rag. Replace the dipstick fully and withdraw again when the oil level may be read from the stick. Normal oil level is indicated when the oil is present between the two marks on the stick. It is not necessary to add oil if the level is above the lower mark and in any case, oil must not be added to the degree that the level exceeds the upper mark. Replace the dipstick fully after checking the level.

HPG030D1-E

ENGINE OIL REPLENISHMENT



Diesel Engine



If the indicated oil level is at or below the lower mark of the dipstick, oil should be added until the level is at or below the upper mark.
To add oil to the engine, remove the filler cap by rotating in an counterclockwise direction and pour engine oil into the engine. Before checking the level again, allow several minutes for the oil to drain into the sump. Replace the oil filler cap rotating it in a clockwise direction until tight.
The quantity of oil required to raise the level from the minimum to maximum level is approximately 1 litre (Petrol Engine)/1.4 litres (Diesel Engine).

G350A01A-EAT

ENGINE OIL CONSUMPTION

Function of engine oil

Engine oil has the primary function of lubricating and cooling the inside of the engine.

Engine oil consumption

It is normal that an engine should consume some engine oil whilst normal driving.
The causes of oil consumption in a normal engine are as follows;

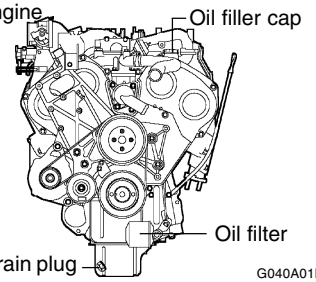
- Engine oil is used to lubricate pistons, piston rings and cylinders.
  A thin film of oil is left on the cylinder wall when a piston moves downwards in the cylinder.
  High negative pressure generated during engine operation sucks some of this oil into the combustion chamber.
  This oil with some oil of the cylinder wall is burned by the high temperature combustion gases during the combustion process.

- The engine oil consumption is strongly effected by the viscosity and quality of oil, engine rpm and driving condition etc.
  More engine oil may be consumed under severe driving conditions such as high speeds, frequent acceleration and deceleration, compared to normal driving.

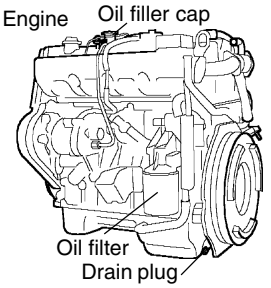
G040A04A-EAT

ENGINE OIL AND FILTER REPLACEMENT

Petrol Engine



Diesel Engine



The engine oil and filter must be changed at the time or mileage interval specified in the maintenance schedule. If the vehicle is operated under severe or adverse conditions, the oil and filter must be replaced more frequently.

To replace the oil and filter, proceed as follows:

1. Ensure that the engine is at normal operating temperature and park the vehicle on level ground with the parking brake securely applied and the engine turned off.
2. Open the bonnet and remove the oil filler cap.
3. Prepare a suitable receptacle to collect the displaced oil and remove the drain plug from the sump.

CAUTION:
The oil being drained from the engine will be hot. Care should be exercised to prevent scalding.

4. When the oil has drained from the sump, replace the drain plug using a new washer ensuring that the plug is not over tightened.

   Tightening torque is: 3.5 ~ 4.5 kgf.m

5. Remove the oil filter by rotating counterclockwise, using a proprietary oil filter removal tool if necessary. Note that the oil filter will contain approximately 0.5 litres of oil and this should be collected in a suitable receptacle.
6. Install a new oil filter having smeared the sealing ring with clean oil and rotating clockwise until the filter contacts the mounting and then a further one half turn. Do not overtighten.

   Tightening torque:
   Petrol Engine - 1.2 ~ 1.6 kgf.m
   Diesel Engine - 2.3 ~ 2.5 kgf.m

7. Pour the specified quantity of the recommended oil into the engine and replace the filler cap. Start the engine and ensure that no oil leaks exist. Turn off the engine and after a couple minutes, recheck the oil level.

WARNING:
Prolonged and repeated contact with used engine oils may result in serious skin disorders including dermatitis and cancer. Avoid contact with skin as far as possible and always wash thoroughly after any contact. Keep used oils out of reach of children. It is illegal to pollute drains, water courses and soil. Use only authorized waste collection facilities including civic amenity sites and garages for the disposal of used oil and oil filters. If in doubt, contact the local authority for disposal instructions.

SG050A1-E

ENGINE COOLANT CHECKING AND REPLACING

WARNING:
Do not remove the radiator cap when the engine is hot, since the system is pressurized and coolant may be ejected from the radiator resulting in scalding.

SG050B1-E

Coolant recommendations

Only ethylene glycol based coolant with a corrosion inhibitor suited to aluminium alloy engine components should be used in the cooling system. No further additives or inhibitors should be used. The coolant specific gravity should be checked as prescribed in the maintenance schedule to ensure adequate frost and corrosion protection. In addition, the engine coolant must be replaced at the specified interval since the corrosion inhibitor properties deteriorate with time.

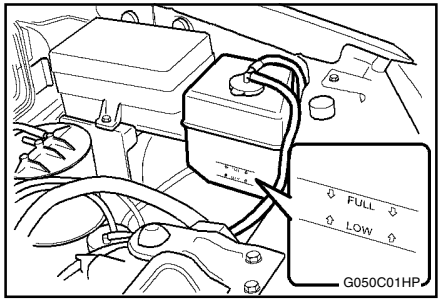
It is important to note that whilst an increase in the concentration of anti freeze gives an increase in the level of frost protection, a solution which is in excess of 65% anti freeze will result in reduced frost protection and engine overheating. Therefore the recommended concentration of 50% should not be exceeded for general use.

The use of methanol based anti freeze compounds may result in engine overheating and will invalidate the vehicle warranty.

NOTE:
It is imperative that vehicles fitted with an air conditioning system have a coolant concentration of the recommended strength at all times. The use of the air conditioning system when the cooling system is filled with water only will result in the heater matrix freezing and subsequently bursting.

SG050C1-E

Coolant Level



The engine coolant level may be observed through the side of the plastic coolant reservoir (expansion tank) when the engine is cold. If the level is below the "LOW" mark, add coolant of the correct concentration until the level is between the "LOW" and "FULL" marks. If the level falls below the "LOW" mark on a regular basis despite being topped up, consult a Hyundai dealer.

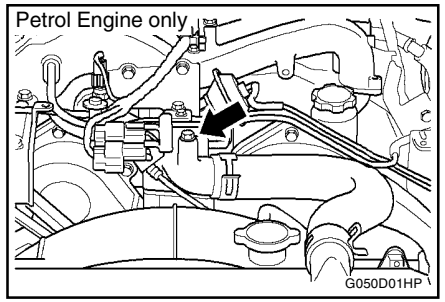
HPG050D1-E

To Change the Coolant

The coolant should be changed at those intervals specified in the vehicle maintenance schedule in Section 5.

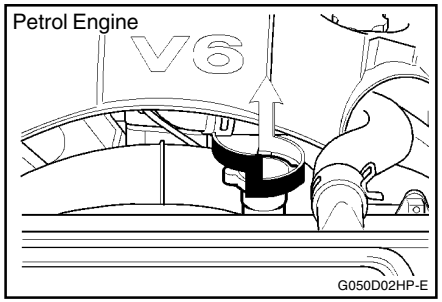
NOTE:
Care should be taken to ensure that coolant is not allowed to spill onto the paintwork since the finish may become damaged. If coolant spillage occurs, the affected area should be rinsed thoroughly with water.

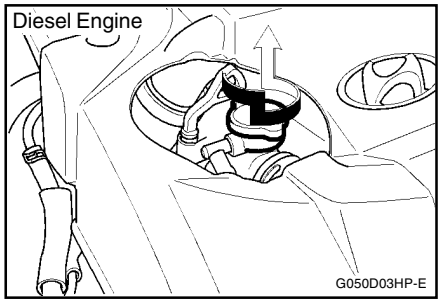
1. Park the vehicle on level ground and ensure that the parking brake is firmly applied, and the engine allowed to cool.
   Do not attempt this operation whilst the engine is hot since burning or scalding may result.
2. Prepare a suitable receptacle to collect the displaced coolant and position this under the radiator drain tap.



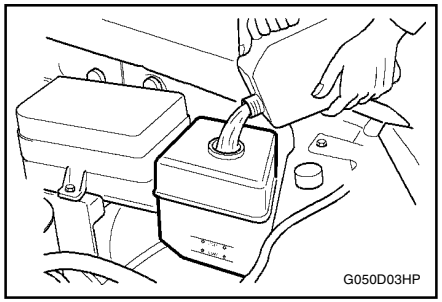
NOTE: Petrol Engine Only
Before adding the coolant to the radiator, unscrew the flange bolt for fitting water outlet to escape the excess pressure. And if the coolant overflows from the hole while adding the coolant, screw the bolt and continue to add the coolant.

3. With the heater temperature control set to the "HOT" position, remove the radiator cap and open the radiator drain tap.





4. When the engine coolant has drained completely, close the drain tap ensuring that this is not over tightened.
5. Prepare a suitable quantity of new engine coolant (refer to section 9) and pour this into the radiator.

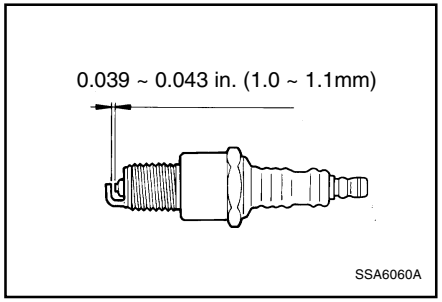


6. Start the engine with the radiator cap still removed and continue to add coolant as the level decreases as air is expelled from the system. When the level remains constant, replace the radiator cap and replenish the coolant reservoir.
7. When the engine is hot, check to ensure that no coolant leaks are present.

WARNING:
The cooling fan is controlled by engine coolant temperature and may sometimes operate even when the engine is not running. Use extreme caution when working near the blades of the cooling fan so that you are not injured by a rotating fan blade. As the engine coolant temperature decreases, the fan will automatically shut off. This is a normal condition.

G060A02L-AAT

SPARK PLUGS (For Petrol Engine)



Your engine was originally equipped with platinum-tipped spark plugs.
Platinum-tipped spark plugs will last longer than conventional type spark plugs and can be identified by blue lines on the ceramic shell.

NOTE:
Do not clean or regap platinum-tipped spark plugs.

G060B03L-EAT

Replacing the Spark Plugs

The spark plugs should be changed at the intervals specified in the vehicle maintenance schedule in Section 5 or whenever engine performance indicates they should be changed. Symptoms that suggest poor spark plug performance include engine misfiring under load, loss of fuel economy, poor acceleration, etc. When spark plugs are replaced, always use spark plugs recommended by Hyundai. The use of other spark plugs can result in loss of performance, radio interference or engine damage.

NOTE:

- **When replacing the spark plug, Genuine Hyundai Replacement Parts are recommended.**

Recommended Spark Plugs:

Type	Remark
RC10PYPB4 (CHAMPION)	Unleaded
PFR5N-11 (NGK)	

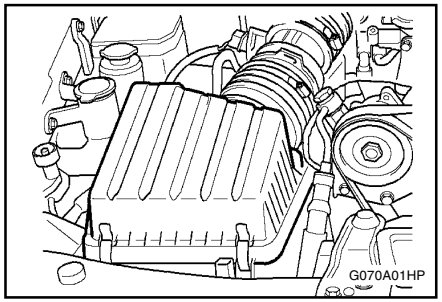
- **It is recommended that spark plugs be changed by an authorized Hyundai dealer.**

WARNING:

It is recommended that the engine be cool or cold when changing the spark plugs. If the engine is hot, you could burn yourself on the insulated connector, the spark plug or the engine itself.

G070A03Y-AAT

CHANGING THE AIR CLEANER FILTER



The replacement of air cleaner filter is performed in the following manner.

1. Unsnap the clips around the cover.
2. When this is done, the cover can be lifted off, the old filter removed and the new filter put in its place.

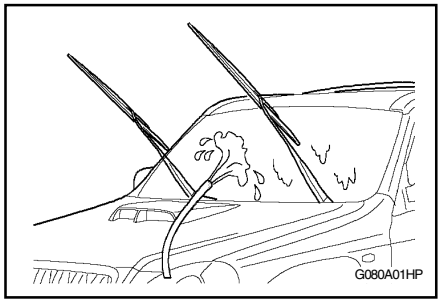
Genuine Hyundai replacement parts are recommended.

CAUTION:

- **Operating your vehicle without a proper air cleaner filter in place can result in excessive engine wear.**
- **When removing the air cleaner filter, be careful that dust or dirt does not enter the air intake. These may result in damage to the air cleaner filter.**

ZG080A2-E

WINDSCREEN WIPER BLADES



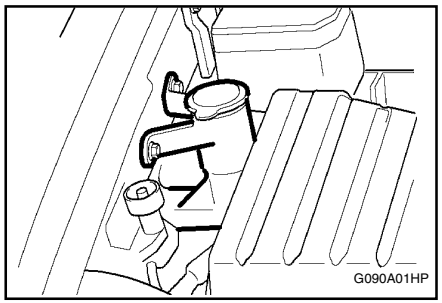
The wiper blades should be carefully inspected from time to time and cleaned to remove accumulations of road film or other debris.
To clean the wiper blades and arms, use a clean sponge or cloth with a mild soap or detergent and water.
If the wipers continue to streak or smear the glass, replace them with genuine Hyundai replacement parts or their equivalent.

NOTE:

- **Do not operate the wipers on dry glass. This can result in more rapid wear of the wiper blades and may scratch the glass.**
- **Keep the blade rubber out of contact with petroleum products such as engine oil, petrol, etc.**

HPG090A1-E

WINDSCREEN WASHER RESERVOIR REPLENISHMENT



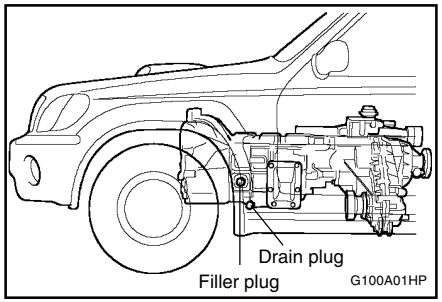
The level of windscreen washer fluid available should be checked on a daily basis. The level of fluid will be visible through the side of the reservoir. When the fluid is to be replenished, only a proprietary screen wash additive should be used and in the concentration recommended by the manufacturer. The windscreen washer reservoir has a total capacity of 4.5 litres.

CAUTION:

Engine coolant anti freeze must not be used in the windscreen washer system since damage to the paintwork may result.
Undiluted windscreen washer additive must not be allowed to come into contact with the paintwork. If spillage occurs, flush the affected area immediately with water. Do not operate the windscreen washer for more than 15 seconds continuously or when the reservoir is empty since damage to the washer pump will result.

G100A01HP-EAT

MANUAL TRANSMISSION LUBRICANT



The transmission lubricant should be checked and/or changed at intervals specified in the maintenance schedule.

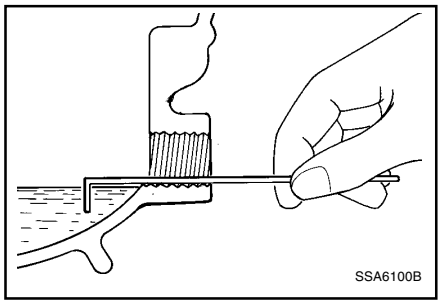
Recommended Lubricant
Use only HYUNDAI GENUINE PARTS MTF 75W/90 (API GL-4).

CAUTION:

The transmission lubricant level should only be checked when the engine is cold to prelude the possibility of personal injury by contact with hot components.

1. To check the transmission lubricant level, the vehicle should be placed on level ground and the level plug removed with a suitable spanner.
2. If the level is correct, lubricant should begin to drip from the plug orifice. In this case the plug should be replaced.
   If the level is incorrect, lubricant should be added until it begins to drip from the plug orifice at which time the plug should be replaced.

To Check the Transmission Oil Level



Park the car on level ground with the engine off.

1. Using a wrench of the correct size, loosen the oil filler bolt turning it counterclockwise and remove it with your fingers.
2. Use your finger to feel inside the hole. The oil level should be at its bottom edge. If it is not, check for leaks before adding oil. To refill the transmission or bring the oil level

up, add oil slowly until it reaches the proper level. Do not overfill.
3. Replace the bolt and washer, screw it in with your fingers and then tighten securely with the wrench.

G110A04HP-EAT

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION LUBRICANT

Transmission lubricant should be changed at those intervals specified in the vehicle maintenance schedule in Section 5.

NOTE:

Basically automatic transmission fluid is red color. As driving distance increases, the fluid color turns darkish red gradually. It is normal condition and you should not use fluid color as a criterion for replacing the transmission fluid.
You must replace the automatic transmission fluid in accordance with intervals specified in the vehicle maintenances schedule in section 5.

Recommended Lubricant

Use only MOBIL DEXRON-II. Damage caused by a nonspecified fluid is not covered by your new vehicle limited warranty.

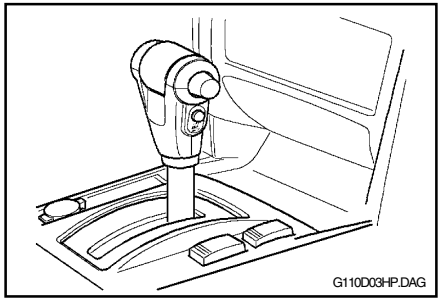
Transmission Fluid Capacity

The fluid capacity of the automatic transmission is 10.5 litres (Petrol)/ 11.8 litres (Diesel).

CAUTION:

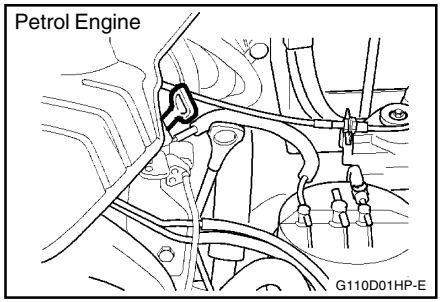
The transmission fluid level should be checked when the engine is at normal operating temperature. This means that the engine, radiator, exhaust system etc., are very hot so you should exercise great care not to burn yourself during this procedure.

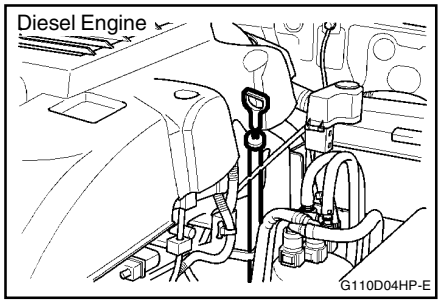
To Check the Transmission Fluid Level



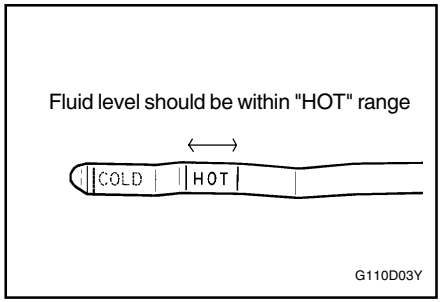
Park the car on level ground with the parking brake engaged. When the transmission fluid level is checked, the transmission fluid should be at normal operating temperature and the engine idling.
Whilst the engine is idling, apply the brakes and move the gear selector level from "P" to each of its other positions — "R", "N", "D", "2", "L" — and then return to "N" or "P". With the engine still idling:

1. Open the bonnet, being careful to keep hands and clothing clear of any moving parts.





2. Remove the transmission dipstick, wipe it clean, reinsert the dipstick as far as it will go, then remove it again. Now check the fluid level on the dipstick. It should be in the "HOT" range on the dipstick.



3. If the transmission fluid level is low, use a funnel to add transmission fluid through the dipstick tube until the level reaches the "HOT" range. Do not overfill.

WARNING:
The electric engine cooling fan automatically switches on and off according to engine temperature. Be careful to keep away from the fan during this check as it may switch on at any time.

WARNING (Diesel only):
Never work on injection system with engine running or within 30 seconds after shutting off engine. High pressure pump, rail, injectors and high pressure pipes are subject to high pressure even after the engine stopped. The fuel jet produced by fuel leaks may cause serious injury, if it touch the body. People using pacemakers should not move than 30cm closer to the ECU or wiring harness within the engine room whilst engine is running, since the high currents in the Common Rail system produce considerable magnetic fields.

NOTE:
Only lint free cloth should be used for wiping the dipstick. The presence of lint within the transmission may cause problems with the normal function of the transmission.

SG120A1-E

BRAKE SYSTEM CHECKING

CAUTION:
Correct operation of the braking system is essential to the safe operation of the vehicle and therefore, any maintenance operations other than those listed below should be entrusted to a Hyundai dealer.

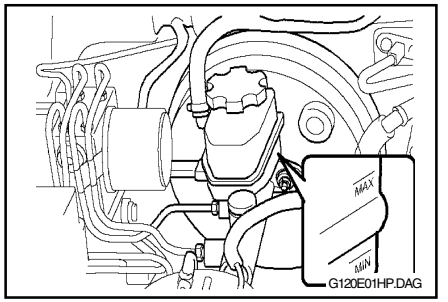
SG120C2-E

Brake Fluid Recommendations

Only brake fluid conforming to DOT 3 or DOT 4 specifications or higher may be used in the braking system. Care should be taken to observe the instructions and precautions printed upon the container.

SG120D1-E

Brake Fluid Level



The fluid level in the brake fluid reservoir should be checked periodically. The level should be between the "MIN" and "MAX" marks on the side of the reservoir. If the level is at or below the "MIN" mark, fluid should be added having carefully cleaned the area surrounding the reservoir cap to ensure that dirt is not allowed to enter the system. It should be borne in mind that the brake fluid level will decrease slightly as the friction linings of the pads and shoes become worn and that this is a normal condition.

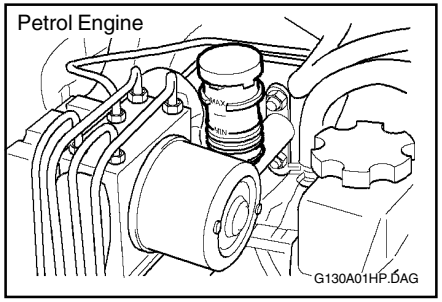
WARNING:
Brake fluid is hygroscopic and should never be stored in an unsealed container. The presence of water in the braking system will cause vapour locks and increase the possibility of brake fade along with promoting

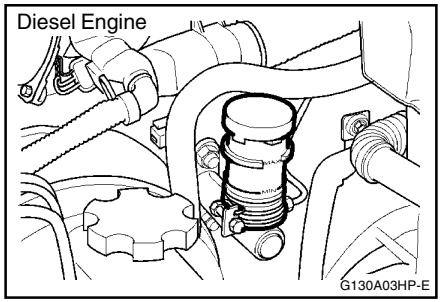
corrosion within the braking system. The brake fluid must be changed at the specified time or mileage interval to ensure continued safe operation of the system. Brake fluid will cause rapid and serious damage to paintwork. If accidental spillage occurs, the affected area must be rinsed with water immediately. Do not allow brake fluid to come into contact with the eyes or to be ingested and ensure that fluid is safely stored away form the reach of children.

SG130A1-C

CHECKING THE CLUTCH FLUID

To Check the Clutch Fluid





The clutch fluid level in the master cylinder should be checked when performing other under bonnet checks. The system should be checked for leakage at the same time.

Ensure that the clutch fluid level is always between the "MAX" and "MIN" level markings on the fluid reservoir. Fill as required. Fluid loss indicates a leak in the clutch system which should be inspected and repaired immediately.

SG130B2-E

Adding Fluid

Recommended brake fluid conforming to DOT 3 or DOT 4 should be used. The reservoir cap must be fully tightened to avoid contamination from foreign matter or moisture.

CAUTION:

Brake fluid is hygroscopic and should never be stored in an unsealed container. Do not allow petroleum base fluid to contaminate the brake fluid since damage to the rubber seals of the system may result.

WARNING:

Brake fluid will cause rapid and serious damage to paintwork. If accidental spillage occurs, the affected area must be rinsed with water immediately. Do not allow brake fluid to come into contact with the eyes or to be ingested and ensure that fluid is safely stored away form the reach of children.

SG140A1-E

AIR CONDITIONING SYSTEM MAINTENANCE

Condenser

Ensure that the condenser is periodically inspected and that accumulations of dirt, dead insects and leaves etc, are removed to ensure that the efficiency of the system is not impaired. Care must be exercised to ensure that the condenser fins are not damaged during cleaning.

SG140C2-E

Checking the Refrigerant

1. Start the engine and run at idle for several minutes with the refrigeration system running at the coldest setting.
2. If the air coming out of the in-dash vents is not cold, have the air conditioning system inspected by your Hyundai dealer.

CAUTION:

Running the air conditioning system for extended periods of time with a low refrigerant level may damage the compressor.

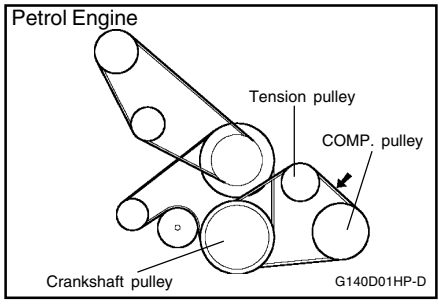
SG140D1-E

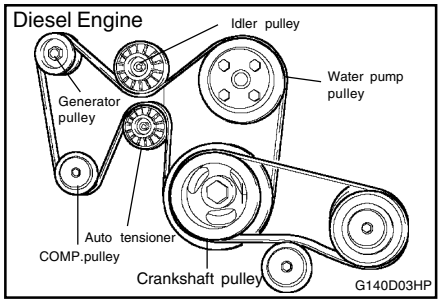
Off Season Maintenance

The air conditioning must be run for ten minutes or so weekly during periods when the system would not normally be used to ensure that the compressor and seals are lubricated. If this precaution is not observed the compressor seals may become stuck to the compressor shaft and damaged when the system is next used resulting in a loss of refrigerant and damage to the compressor.

HPG140B1-E

Compressor Drive Belt





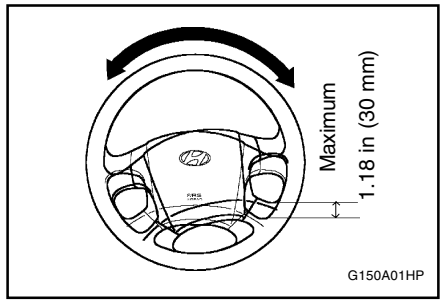
The air conditioning compressor drive belt should be checked to ensure freedom from damage or excessive wear and correct tension. The belt tension is correct when the belt deflects by about 0.3 inches (8 mm) when a force of 98 N is applied to the belt halfway between the compressor and crankshaft pulleys. Adjustment of the belt should be entrusted to a Hyundai dealer.

NOTE:

The compressor drive belt tension for diesel engine is adjusted automatically.

YG180A1-E

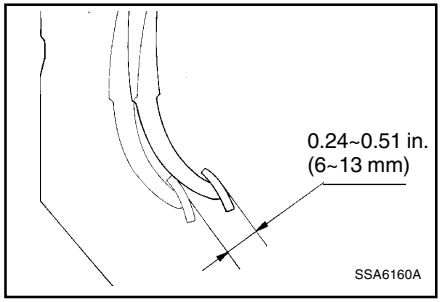
STEERING WHEEL



To check the steering wheel free-play, stop the car with the wheels pointed straight ahead and gently move the steering wheel back and forth. Use very light finger pressure and be sensitive to changes in resistance that mark the limits of the free-play.
If the free-play is greater than specified, have it inspected by your Hyundai dealer and adjusted or repaired if necessary.

YG170A1-E

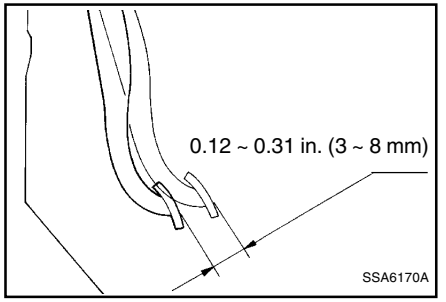
CLUTCH PEDAL



The clutch pedal freeplay must lie within the limits shown. Incorrect freeplay can result in premature wear of the clutch linings and release bearing. Excessive free-play can result in gear selection difficulties.
If the freeplay is incorrect, the clutch cable should be adjusted by a Hyundai dealer.

G170A01A-GAT

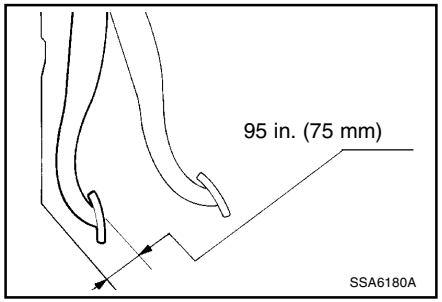
CHECKING BRAKE PEDAL FREEPLAY



With the engine off, press down on the brake pedal several times to reduce the vacuum in the brake booster.
Then, using your hand, press down slowly on the brake pedal until you feel a change in resistance. This is the brake pedal freeplay. The freeplay should be within the limits specified in the illustration. If it is not, have it inspected by your Hyundai dealer and adjusted or repaired if necessary.

G180A01A-GAT

CHECKING BRAKE PEDAL CLEARANCE



You need a helper to check the brake pedal clearance. With the engine running, have your helper press down on the brake pedal several times and then hold it down with a force of about 490 N (50 Kg, 110 lbs). The brake pedal clearance is the distance from the top surface of the brake pedal to the asphalt sheeting under the floor mat.

If the brake pedal clearance is not within the limits specified in the illustration, have it inspected by your Hyundai dealer and adjusted or repaired if necessary.

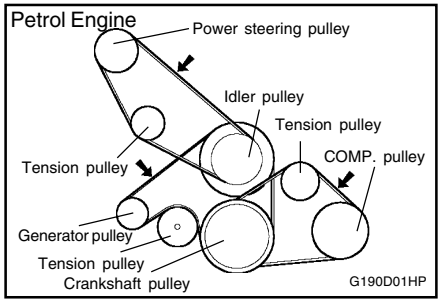
YG200A1-E

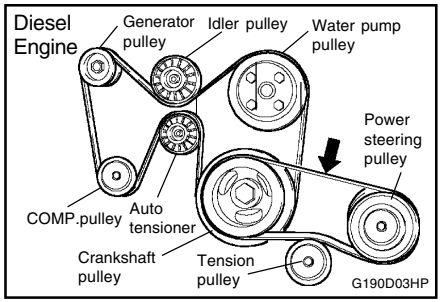
CHECKING ENGINE DRIVE BELTS

1. With the engine turned off, check the belts for cracks, fraying, or excessive wear. Replace the belt if it is in poor condition.
2. With your thumb (with a force approx. 10 kg) press on each belt midway between the pulleys. Each belt should deflect no more than the amount shown in figure.

YG190A1-E

ADJUSTING DRIVE BELTS



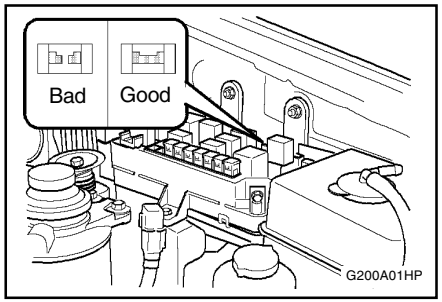


If a belt is loose, adjust it by:

1. Loosen the adusting bolts just enough so that the components can be moved.
2. Whilst pulling outward on the pry bar or screw driver, test the belt deflection with your thumb.
3. After tightening the adjusting bolts, be sure to recheck the belt tension. Overtightening drive belts can cause excessive wear and failure in driven components and belts.

DG200A1-E

FUSIBLE LINKS



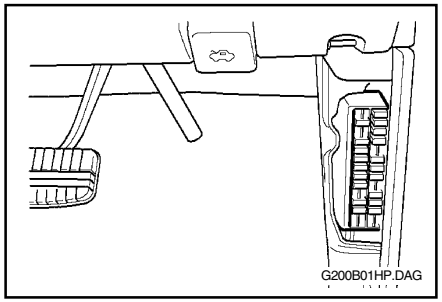
The fusible link prevents damage to the wiring harness in the event of an electrical system malfunction. Failure of a fusible link is indicative of a serious overload condition having occurred and therefore the electrical system should be checked by a Hyundai dealer before a replacement link is fitted.

WARNING:

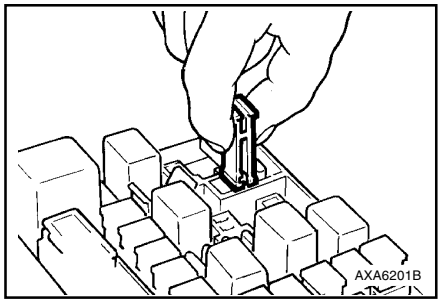
Under no circumstances should a fusible link be replaced with anything other than a new link of the same rating. The use of higher rated links or other means of connecting the circuit will create a potential fire hazard.

DG200B1-E

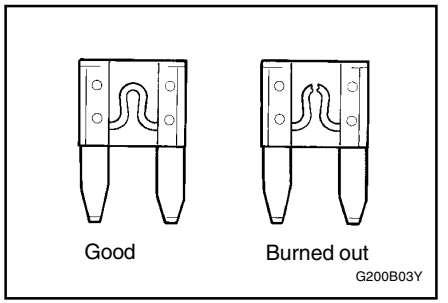
INDIVIDUAL CIRCUIT FUSES



The fuse box containing the individual circuit fuses is located on the lower portion of the dashboard adjacent to the bonnet release. The fuse box cover is removed by pushing lightly and then releasing the lid. A fuse rating grid will be found on the reverse side of the cover. In the event of fuse failure, the fuse should be replaced with one of equivalent rating. A fuse removal tool is provided within the fuse box to facilitate replacement.



In the event of a replacement fuse failing shortly after installation a malfunction within the circuit protected by that fuse is indicated. The circuit should be checked by a Hyundai dealer at the first available opportunity.

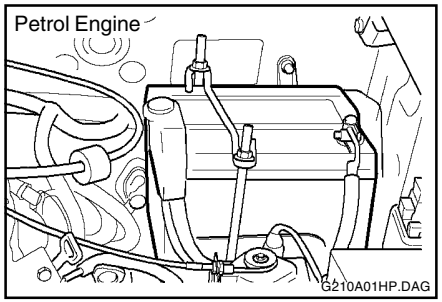


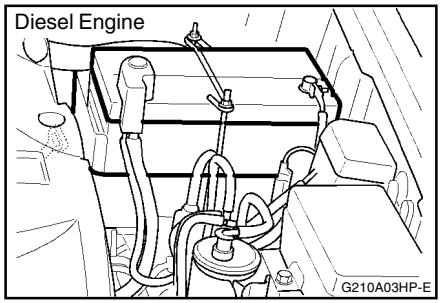
WARNING:

The use of replacement fuses having a higher rating than specified or other means of connecting the circuit will create a potential fire hazard.

DG210A1-E

BATTERY MAINTENANCE





WARNING:

Motor vehicle batteries contain sulphuric acid which is corrosive and poisonous. Hydrogen gas is emitted from the battery which is explosive when combined with oxygen. The following precautions must be strictly observed to avoid personal injury or damage to the vehicle.

- o If battery electrolyte is spilled onto skin or into eyes, the effected area must be flushed with copious amounts of water and medical assistance sought.
- o If battery electrolyte is ingested, copious amounts of water or milk followed by an antacid (raw egg or milk of magnesia) must be drunk. Vomiting should not be induced and medical assistance must be sought.
- o Batteries must only be charged in well ventilated areas from which naked lights or sources of sparks are excluded.
- o Ensure that children, pets or other unauthorized persons are kept away from batteries.
- o Do not allow anything to bridge the positive (+) and negative (-) terminals of the battery.
- o Never invert the battery.

The battery fitted during production is of the "Maintenance Free" type.

YG210A1-E

CHECKING ELECTRIC COOLING FANS

CAUTION:

The cooling fan is controlled by engine coolant temperature and may sometimes operate even when the engine is not running. Do not touch the radiator fan until it is completely stopped.
As the coolant temperature decreases the fan will automatically shut off. This is a normal condition.

Checking Engine Cooling Fan

The engine cooling fan should automatically come on if the engine coolant temperature is high.

Checking Condenser Cooling Fan

The condenser cooling fan (in front of the condenser) should come on automatically whenever the air conditioner is in operation.

YG220A1-E

POWER STEERING HOSES

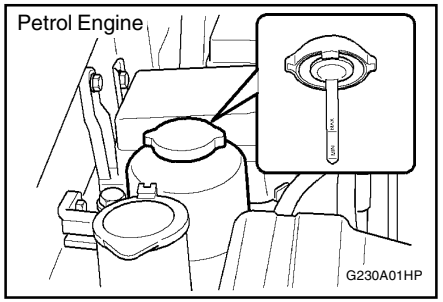
It is suggested that you check the power steering hose connections for fluid leakage at those intervals specified in the vehicle maintenance schedule in Section 5. The power steering hoses should be replaced if there are severe surface cracking, pulling, scuffing or worn spots. Deterioration of the hoses could cause premature failure.

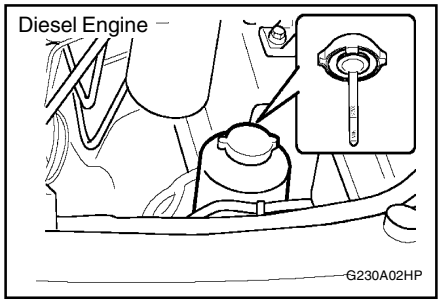
NOTE:

The power steering pump may be noisy when the engine is first started in the extreme cold (-4°F). This noise is not abnormal and will stop as the engine warms up. If the power steering pump continues to be noisy after the engine has warmed up, have it inspected by your Authorized Hyundai Dealer.

G230A03A-EAT

POWER STEERING FLUID LEVEL





The power steering fluid level should be checked regularly.

To check the power steering fluid level, be sure the ignition is "OFF", then check to make certain that the power steering fluid level is between the "MAX" and "MIN" level markings on the fluid reservoir.

NOTE:

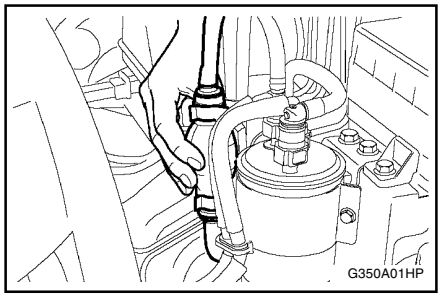
Do not check whilst the engine is running. Do not start when power steering fluid reservoir is empty.

Fluid Recommendation

Only automatic transmission fluid meeting the specification of PSF-3 or ATF DEXRON 2 should be used in the power steering system.

G350B01HP-GAT

BLEEDING THE FUEL SYSTEM (FOR DIESEL ENGINE)



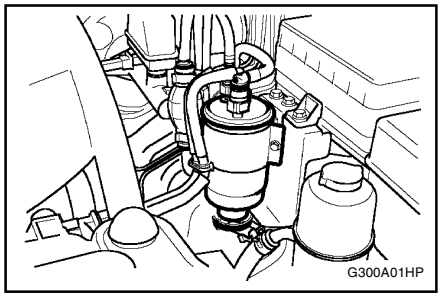
The fuel system should be bled to remove air as described in the illustration if the fuel supply is exhausted during travel, when the fuel filter is replaced, or if the vehicle is not used for a long time.

1. Pump the hand prime pump with your hand for one minute(about 20~30 times).
2. Turn the ignition key to the "START" position and release it 2~3 times shortly until the engine starts.

CAUTION:
Do not hold the ignition key in the "START" position for more than 15 seconds. Doing so may cause the engine and the injection pump to damage.

G300B01HP-GAT

REMOVAL OF WATER FROM THE FUEL FILTER (FOR DIESEL ENGINE)


G300A01HP

If the fuel filter warning lamp illuminates during driving, it indicates that water has accumulated in the fuel filter. If this occurs, remove the water as described below.

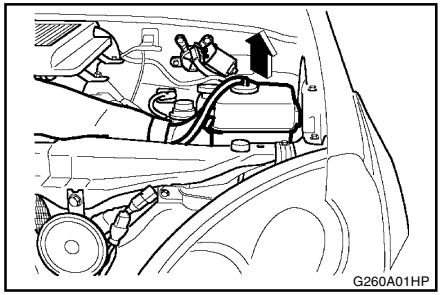
1. Loosen the drain plug at the bottom of the fuel filter.
2. Tighten the drain plug when water no longer comes out.
3. Check to be sure that the warning lamp illuminates when the ignition key is turned to "ON", and that it goes off when the engine is started.
   If in doubt, consult your nearest authorized HYUNDAI dealer.

WARNING:
Be sure to carefully wipe away any water drained out in this manner, because the fuel mixed in the water might be ignited and result in a fire.

G260A01HP-DAT

REPLACING HEADLIGHT BULBS

Before attempting to replace a headlight bulb, be sure the switch is turned to the "OFF" position.
The next paragraph shows how to reach the headlight bulbs so they may be changed. Be sure to replace the burned-out bulb with one of the same number and wattage rating.

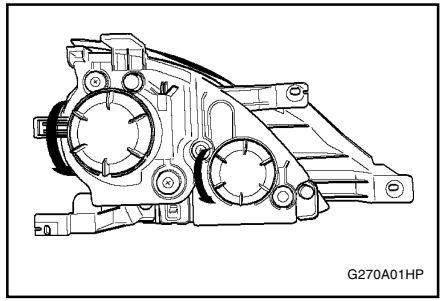

G260A01HP

NOTE:
The passenger's side headlight bulb can be changed after lifting the engine coolant reservoir by hand.

CAUTION:
Keep the lamps out of contact with petroleum product, such as oil, petrol, etc.

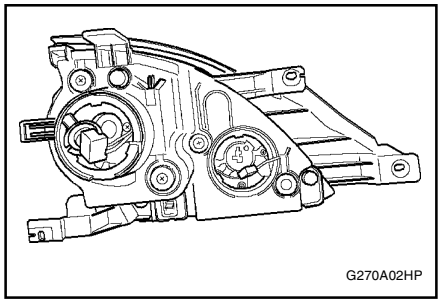
G270A02Y-AAT

HEADLIGHT BULB



Replacement instructions:

1. Allow the bulb to cool. Wear eye protection.
2. Always grasp the bulb by its plastic base, avoid touching the glass.
3. Disconnect the power cord from the bulb base in the back of the headlight.
4. Push the bulb spring for removing the headlight bulb.
5. Remove the protective cap from the replacement bulb and install the new bulb by matching the plastic base with the headlight hole. Retighten the bulb spring and reconnect the power cord.
6. Use the protective cap and carton to dispose of the old bulb.
7. Check for proper headlight aim.

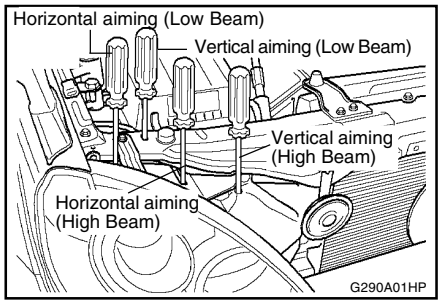


WARNING:

The halogen bulb contains gas under pressure and if impacted could shatter, resulting in flying fragments. Always wear eye protection when servicing the bulb. Protect the bulb against abrasions or scratches and against liquids when lighted. Turn the bulb on only when installing in a headlight. Replace the headlight if damaged or cracked. Keep the bulb out of the reach of children and dispose of the used bulb with care.

G290A01HP-EAT

HEADLIGHT AIMING ADJUSTMENT



Before performing aiming adjustment, make sure of the following.

1. Keep all tyres inflated to the correct pressure.
2. Place the vehicle on level ground and press the front bumper & rear bumper down several times. Place vehicle at a distance of 118.1 in. (3m) from the test wall.
3. See that the vehicle is unloaded (except for full levels of coolant, engine oil and fuel, and spare tyre, jack, and tools). Have the driver or equivalent weight placed in driver's seat.
4. Clean the headlight lens and turn on the headlight.
5. Open the bonnet.

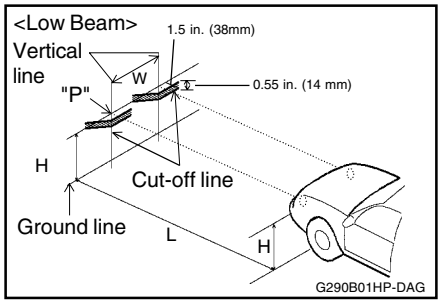
6. Draw the vertical line (through the centre of each headlight) and the horizontal line (through the centre of each headlight) on the aiming screen.
   (1) Horizontal line dimension from ground :
   Low Beam : 35.1 in.(894 mm)
   High Beam : 33 in. (839 mm)
   (2) Distance between each vertical line :
   Low Beam : 51.8 in. (1,316 mm)
   High Beam : 42.4 in. (1,076 mm)

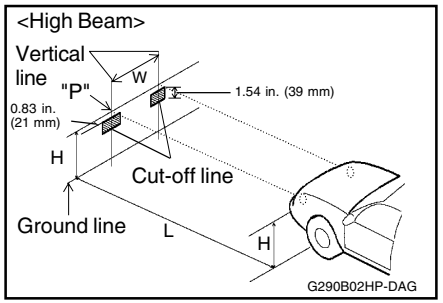
And then, draw a parallel line at 1.50 in. (38 mm) under the horizontal line in case of adjusting the low beam or at 0.83 in. (21 mm) under the horizontal line in case of adjusting the high beam.

7. Adjust each cut-off line of the low beam to the parallel line with a phillips screwdriver - VERTICAL AIMING.
8. Adjust each cut-off line of the low beam to the each vertical line with a phillips screwdriver - HORIZONTAL AIMING.

G290B01HP-EAT

Adjustment After Headlight Assembly Replacement





If the vehicle has had front body repair and the headlight assembly has been replaced, the headlight aiming should be checked using an aiming screen as shown in the illustration. Turn on the headlight switch. (Low Beam or High Beam Position).

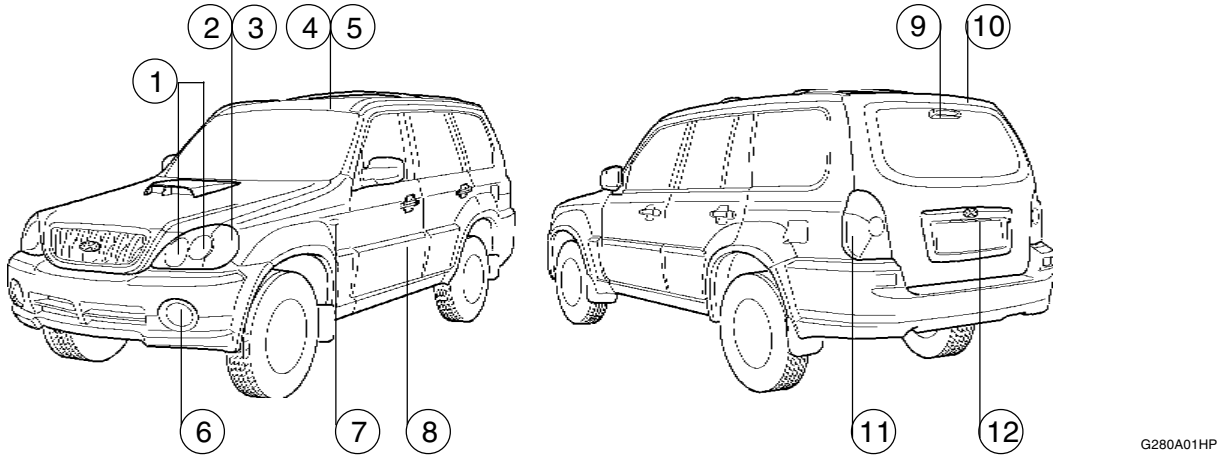
1. Adjust headlights so that main axis of light is parallel to centre line of the body and is aligned with point "P" shown in the illustration.
2. Dotted lines in the illustration show the centre of headlights.

"H"
Horizontal centre line of headlights from ground :
Low Beam : 35.1 in. (894 mm)
High Beam : 33 in. (839 mm)

"W"
Distance between each headlight centre :
Low Beam : 51.8 in. (1,316 mm)
High Beam : 42.4n. (1,076 mm)

"L"
Distance between the headlights and the wall that the lights are tested against :
Low Beam : 118.1 in. (3,000 mm)
High Beam : 118.1in. (3,000 mm)

G280A01HP-EAT



G280A01HP

No.	Part Name	Wattage	No.	Part Name	Wattage
1	Head Light (Low/High)	55/55	9	High Mounted Rear Stop Light (Not all models)	16
2	Turn Signal Light	21	10	Luggage Compartment Light	40
3	Front Position Light	5	11	Rear Combination Light	
4	Room Light	10		Stop/Tail Light	21/5
5	Map Light	8		Turn Signal Light	21
6	Front Fog Light	55		Back-up Light	21
7	Side Repeater	5		Rear Fog Light	21
8	Front Door Edge Warning Light	5	12	License Plate Light	5

YH000A1-A

7. EMISSION CONTROL SYSTEMS

YH020A1-E

EXHAUST GAS WARNING

Exhaust gases contain carbon monoxide, a potentially toxic gas that is colorless and odorless. Avoid breathing exhaust gases.

- o Do not run the engine in confined areas, such as garages, any longer than necessary to move the car in or out.
- o Do not drive with the trunk open. An open trunk may draw exhaust gases into the passenger compartment. If you must drive with the trunk open, drive only with all the windows wide open and the blower motor on high speed.
- o If it is necessary to sit in a parked car with the engine running for more than a short period, adjust your heating system to force outside air into the car by placing the air selector button of the heater in the FRESH AIR position and mode control in the VENT position. Set the fan at high speed and the controls in any position desired.

Inspect the exhaust system

Whenever a change is noticed in the sound of the exhaust system, the underside or rear of the vehicle may be damaged. You should inspect the exhaust system each time the car is raised for lubrication or oil change.

To check condition

1. Holes and gas leaks due to corrosion, damage, etc., should be rectified.
2. The joints should be checked for loose connections and gas leakage.
3. The hanger rubber and brackets should be checked for damage.

ZH010A1-E

EMISSION CONTROL SYSTEMS

(Not all models)

Your Hyundai is equipped with an emission control systems.
There are three emission control systems which are as follows.

(1) Crankcase emission control system
(2) Evaporative emission control system
(3) Exhaust emission control system

In order to assure the proper function of the emission control system, it is recommended that you have your car inspected and maintained by an authorized Hyundai dealer in accordance with the schedule in this manual.

DH010B1-E

1. CRANKCASE EMISSION CONTROL SYSTEM

; For a Petrol Engine

The positive crankcase ventilation system is employed to prevent air pollution caused by blow-by gases being emitted from the crankcase.
This system supplies fresh air to the crankcase through the air cleaner. Inside the crankcase, the fresh air mixes with blow-by gases, then passes through the PCV valve into the intake system.

ZH010C1-E

2. EVAPORATIVE EMISSION CONTROL SYSTEM

; For a Petrol Engine

The Evaporative Emission Control System is designed to prevent fuel vapors from escaping into the atmosphere.

Canister

While the engine is inoperative, fuel vapors generated inside the fuel tank are absorbed and stored in the canister. When the engine is running, the fuel vapors absorbed in the canister are drawn into the induction system through the purge control solenoid valve.

Purge Control Solenoid Valve

The purge control solenoid valve is controlled by the ECU; when the engine coolant temperature is low, and during idling, it closes, so that evaporated fuel is not taken into the surge tank. After engine warm-up, during ordinary driving, it opens to introduce evaporated fuel to the surge tank.

JH010D1-E

3. EXHAUST EMISSION CONTROL SYSTEM

EGR system ; For a Petrol Engine

This system helps control oxides of nitrogen by recirculating a portion of the exhaust gases into the intake manifold, thereby reducing cylinder combustion temperatures.

YH040A2-E

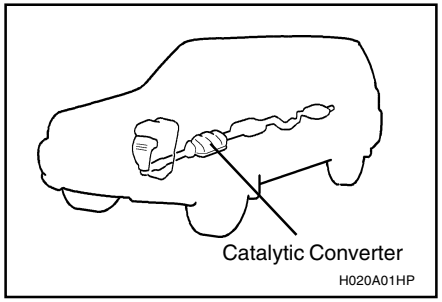
CATALYTIC CONVERTER

; For a Petrol Engine

The catalytic converter is part of the exhaust emission control system. Its purpose is to remove certain engine emission products from the engine's exhaust. It looks something like a muffler and is located underneath the car in the exhaust system.

YH040B1-E

About the Catalytic Converter ; For a Petrol Engine



Exhaust gases passing through the catalytic converter cause it to operate at very high temperatures. As a result, the introduction of large amounts of unburned petrol may cause it to overheat and create a fire hazard. This can be avoided by observing the following:

- Use only unleaded fuel.
- Maintain your engine in good condition. Extremely high converter temperatures can result from improper operation of the electrical, ignition or M.P.I. system.
- If your engine stalls, pings, knocks, or is hard to start, take your car to your Hyundai dealer as soon as possible and have the difficulty corrected.
- Avoid driving with a very low fuel level. If you run out of petrol, it could cause the engine to misfire and result in excessive loading of the catalytic converter.
- Avoid idling the engine for periods longer than 10 minutes.
- Your Hyundai should not be either pushed or pulled to get it started. This can cause the catalytic converter to overload.
- Take care not to stop your Hyundai over any combustible material such as grass, paper, leaves or rags.
- Do not touch the catalytic converter or any other part of the exhaust system while the engine is running.
- Remember that your Hyundai dealer is your best source of assistance.

H020D01S-GAT

CATALYTIC CONVERTER

; For a Diesel Engine

All Hyundai vehicles are equipped with oxidation type catalytic converter to reduce the carbon monoxide, hydrocarbons and particulate contained in the exhaust gas.

H020C01HP-EAT

EGR SYSTEM

; For a Diesel Engine

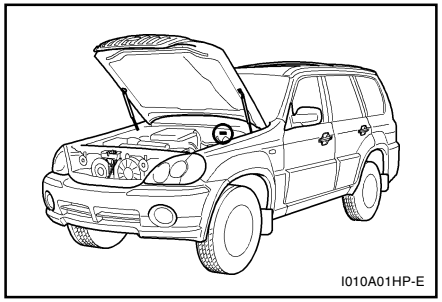
This system helps control oxides of nitrogen by recirculating a part of the exhaust gas into the engine, there by reducing cylinder combustion temperature.
The EGR system helps reduce Nox (Oxides of Nitrogen) emission gasses.

YI000A1-E

8. CONSUMER INFORMATION

DI070A1-E

VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION NUMBER (VIN)

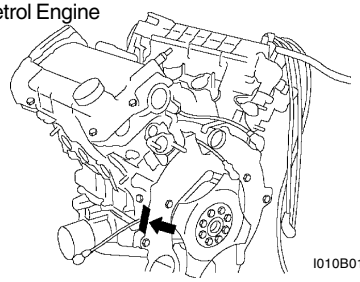


The vehicle identification number (VIN) is unique to each individual vehicle and is the number (sometimes referred to as chassis number) used upon the vehicle registration document to identify the vehicle.
The VIN will be found stamped upon a plate attached to the engine bulkhead.

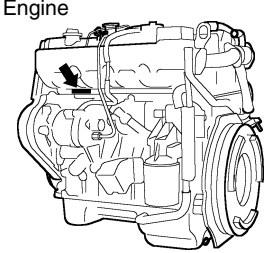
I010B01A-AAT

Engine Number

Petrol Engine



Diesel Engine



The engine number is stamped on the engine block as shown in the drawing.

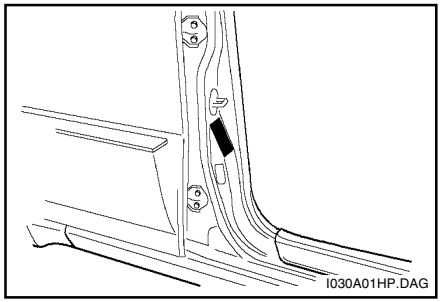
ZI010C1-E

TYRE INFORMATION

The tyres supplied on your new Hyundai are chosen to provide the best performance for normal driving.

YI010B1-E

TYRE PRESSURES



In modern high-speed motoring, correct tyre pressures are vitally important.
Incorrect pressures can reduce adhesion, affect the steering, and cause excessive tyre wear. Check the pressures before you start a trip, when tyres are cold. If the pressures are measured when the tyres are warm, a higher reading will be obtained. The correct tyre pressures are indicated on the label affixed in the driver's door edge and below.

RIM SIZE	TYRE SIZE	PRESSURE, kPa (PSI)			
		NORMAL LOAD		MAXIMUM LOAD	
		FRONT	REAR	FRONT	REAR
6.0Jx15	P235/75R15	200 (29)	200 (29)	200 (29)	220(32)
7.0Jx16	P255/65R16	200 (29)	200 (29)	200 (29)	220(32)

HPI030A1-E

SNOW TYRES

If you equip your car with snow tyres, they should be the same size and have the same load capacity as the original tyres. Do not drive faster than 70 mph (112 Km/h) when your car is equipped with snow tyres.

I050A02Y-EAT

TYRE CHAINS

Tyre chains, if necessary, should be installed on the front wheels. Be sure that the chains are the proper size and that they are installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.
To minimize tyre and chain wear, do not continue to use tyre chains when they are no longer needed.

WARNING:

When driving on roads covered with snow or ice, drive at less than 20 mph (30 km/h).

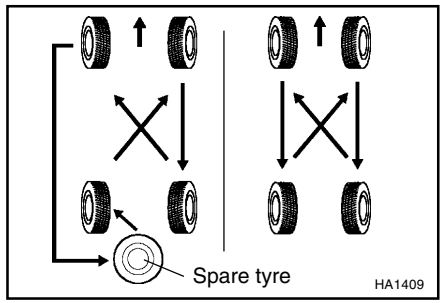
SI060A1-E

TYRE BALANCING

Incorrect tyre balance will cause steering vibration and uneven tyre wear. The vehicle tyres are balanced during production but may need further balancing throughout the life of the tyres. It is recommended that the tyres be balanced on the car for best results and that the tyres are balanced whenever they have been removed from the wheel for repair.

I060A01HP-EAT

TYRE ROTATION



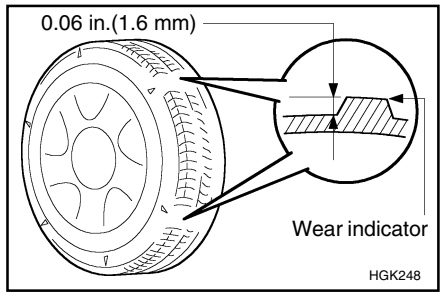
Tyre wear will vary for each wheel. In order to increase the life of each tyre and keep wear uniform, tyre rotation should be performed every 3,000 miles as shown in figure.

NOTE:

Do not mix bias-ply and radial-ply under any circumstances. This may cause dangerous handling characteristics.

SI060B1-E

TYRE REPLACEMENT



Tyres must be replaced when the wear indicators appear as a solid bar across the tyre tread. At this point, the remaining tread depth will be approximately 0.06 in.(1.6 mm). In addition to this, the tyre must be replaced if any portion of the tread has become bald or if there are any lumps, bulges or deep cuts in the sidewalls or tread.
Replacement tyres must be of the recommended size and rating and should be of the same manufacture and tread pattern on each axle.

SI060D2-E

WHEEL REPLACEMENT

The original wheels may only be replaced with Hyundai Approved wheels.

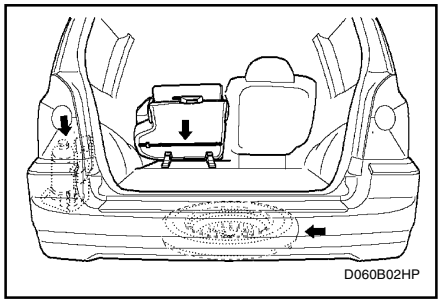
WARNING:

Driving on worn or defective tyres is dangerous. Worn tyres may cause loss of steering control and a serious deterioration of braking efficiency. Defective tyres may cause vibration and loss of control through blow outs.

Tyres of different size, construction or tread pattern should not be intermixed on the same axle. Radial and cross ply tyres should not be used on the same vehicle.
The use of tyres and wheels of non approved sizes can be dangerous.

I100A01HP-EAT

SPARE TYRE AND TOOLS



D060B02HP

Your Hyundai is delivered with the following:

Spare tyre and wheel
Wheel brace
Jack handle (Spare wheel road)

9. VEHICLE SPECIFICATIONS

J010A01HP-EAT

MEASUREMENT

in. (mm)

Overall length		185.4 (4710)
Overall width		73.2 (1860)
Overall height		70.6 (1795)
Wheel base		108.2 (2750)
Wheel tread	Front	60.2 (1530)
	Rear	60.2 (1530)

J020A01HP-EAT

POWER STEERING

Type	Ball and nut, torsion bar type (Integral type)
Wheel free play	0 ~ 1.18 in. (0 ~ 30 mm)
Oil pump type	Vane type

J060A01HP-EAT

FUEL SYSTEM

Fuel tank capacity	16.5 Imp.gal (75 litre)

J030A01HP-EAT

TYRE

Standard	235/75 R15
Option	225/65 R16
Spare	Full Size

J050A02HP-GAT

BRAKE

Type	Dual hydraulic with brake booster
Front brake type	Ventilated disc
Rear brake type	Disc type
Parking brake	Cable operated on rear wheel

J040A02HP-EAT

ELECTRICAL

ITEM	PETROL	DIESEL
Battery	MF 68 AH	MF 100 AH
Alternator	120 A (13.5 V)	110 A (12 V)

VEHICLE SPECIFICATIONS

J070A02HP-EAT

ENGINE

ITEMS		Petrol	Diesel
		3.5 V6	2.9 CRDi
Engine Type		6-Cyl., V-type DOHC	4-Cyl., In-line SOHC
Bore x Stroke		3.67 x 3.81 in. (93.0 x 85.8mm)	3.82 x 3.86 in. (97.1 x 98 mm)
Displacement (cc)		3496	2902
Firing Order		1 - 2 - 3 - 4 - 5 - 6	1 - 3 - 4 - 2
Valve Clearance	Cold	Auto lash	←
(warm engine)	Hot	Auto lash	←
Spark Plug		NGK: PFR5N-11 CHAMPION: RC10PYPB4	-
Spark Plug Gap		0.039 ~ 0.043 in. (1.0 ~ 1.1 mm)	-
Idle Speed (rpm)		800	800 ± 100
Ignition Timing		BTDC 5° ± 2°	Automatically Adjusted

J080A06HP-EAT

LUBRICATION CHART

Item		Oil & Coolant		Q'ty (Imp.qts)(litre)
Engine Oil	Petrol	API SG, SG/CD, SH or SH/CD	SAE 20W-40, 20W-50 [ABOVE -14°F (-10°C)]	Dry fill (With oil filter) : 3.78 (4.3)
			SAE 15W-40, 15W-50 [ABOVE 5°F (-15°C)]	
			SAE 10W-30 [-13°F ~ 104°F (-25°C ~ 40°C)]	
			SAE 10W-40, 10W-50 [ABOVE -13°F (-25°C)]	
			SAE 5W-20 [BELOW 14°F (-10°C)] *1, *2	
			SAE 5W-30 [BELOW 50°F (10°C)] *1	
			SAE 5W-40 [BELOW 68°F (20°C)] *1	
	Diesel	API CF-4 or ABOVE, ACEA B4 or ABOVE	SAE 40 [32°F ~ 104°F(0°C ~ 40°C)]	Dry fill (With oil filter) : 6.25 (7.1)
			SAE 30 [32°F ~ 86°F(0°C ~ 30°C)]	
			SAE 20W-20 [140°F ~ 68°F(-10°C ~ 20°C)]	
			SAE 10W-30 [-40°F ~ 86°F(-20°C ~ 30°C)]	
			SAE 5W-30 [-13°F ~ 86°F(-25°C ~ 30°C)]	
		*1. Restricted by driving condition and dealing area		
		*2. Not recommended for sustained high speed vehicle operation		
Engine oil consumption		Normal driving condition		MAX. 1L /1,000 miles (1,500 km)
		Severe driving condition		MAX. 1L /600 miles (1,000 km)

J080A06HP-EAT

LUBRICATION CHART

Item		Oil & Coolant	Q'ty (Imp.qts)(litre)
Transmission Fluid	Manual	HYUNDAI GENUINE PARTS MTF 75W/90 (API GL-4)	2.82 (3.2)
	Auto	MOBILE DEXRON-II	Petrol : 9.24(10.5), Diesel : 10.38 (11.8)
Transfer case oil		ATF DEXRON-III	1.25(1.42)
Front axle gear oil		HYPOID GEAR OIL API GL-5 or HIGHER, SAE 80W[BELOW -22°F (-30°C)]/90W[ABOVE -22°F (-30°C)]	Part-time 4WD : 1.58(1.8)
			Full-time 4WD : 1.14(1.3)
Rear axle gear oil	With LSD	MOBIL INFILREX 33	NO.7 : 2.9(2.6) NO.7.5 : 2.46(2.8)
	Without LSD	HYPOID GEAR OIL API GL-5 or HIGHER, SAE 80W[BELOW -22°F (-30°C)]/90W[ABOVE-22°F (-30°C)]	
Coolant		Ethylene glycol base for aluminium	Petrol : 9.68 (11), Diesel : 5.28(9)
Power steering gear		PSF-3 or ATF Dexron 2	1.14 (1.3)
Brakes and clutch fluid		DOT 3 or DOT 4 Equivalent	As required

HPK000A1-E

10. INDEX

A

Air Cleaner Filter 6-9
Air Conditioning
  Maintenance 6-14
  Operation 1-67
  Switch 1-67
Airbag ..... 1-25 ~ 1-29
Antenna 1-77
Apperance Care ..... 4-1 ~ 4-4
Ashtray 1-47
Automatic Heating and Cooling Control System ..... 1-69 ~ 1-74

B

Battery 6-18
Bi-Level Heating 1-65
Bonnet Release 1-57
Brake
  Anti-lock system 2-9
  Brake system checking 6-12
  Effective braking 2-14
  Fluid 6-12
  Pedal clearance 6-16
  Pedal freeplay 6-15

C

Catalytic Converter 7-2
Child Restraint System ..... 1-19 ~ 1-24
Child-Proof Rear Door Lock 1-6
Cigar Lighter 1-46
Clock 1-45
Clutch
  Checking fluid 6-13
  Pedal freeplay 6-15
Cooling Fans 6-18
Cruise Control ..... 1-60 ~ 1-61

D

Daily Operating Checks 6-3
Defrosting/Defogging 1-66
Door
  Locking, unlocking front door with a key 1-5
Drink Holder 1-47
Drive Belts 6-14, 6-16
Driving
  Driving for economy 2-15
  Smooth cornering 2-15
  Winter motoring 2-15

INDEX

E

Emission Control System ..... 7-1 ~ 7-2
Engine
- Before starting the engine 2-2
- Compartment (3.5 V6) 6-1
- Compartment (2.9 CRDi) 6-2
- Coolant 6-6
- Coolant temperature gauge 1-39
- If the engine overheats 3-2
- Number 8-1
- Oil 6-3
- Starting 2-4

Engine Exhaust Can Be Dangerous 2-1

F

Fan Speed Control 1-62, 1-71
Fog Light
- Front 1-40
- Rear 1-41

Front Seats
- Adjustable headrests 1-11
- Adjusting seatback angle 1-11
- Driver's seat lumbar support control 1-11
- Seat adjustment 1-10
- Seat cushion height adjustment 1-12
- Seat fore/aft adjustment 1-10

Fuel
- Capacity 9-1
- Diesel 1-1
- Gauge 1-39
- Unleaded petrol 1-1

Fuel Filler Lid
- Remote release 1-56

Full-time 4WD Operation ..... 2-11 ~ 2-14
Fuses 6-17

G

Glove Box 1-50

H

Hatchback Door 1-54
Hazard Warning System 1-44
Headlight Aiming Adjustment 6-21
Headlight Bulbs Replacement 6-20
Headlight Leveling Device System 1-59
Heated Rear Window 1-45
Heating and Ventilation
- Air flow control ..... 1-63 ~ 1-64, 1-72
- Air intake control 1-62, 1-71
- Defrosting/Defogging 1-66
- Temperature control 1-64

High-Mounted Rear Stoplight 1-56
Horn 1-58

INDEX

I

Ignition Switch 2-2
Immobiliser System ..... 1-2 ~ 1-4
  Key 1-2, 1-4
Indicator and Warning Lights ..... 1-35 ~ 1-38
Instrument Cluster and Indicator ..... 1-31 ~ 1-34
Instruments and Controls 1-30
Intermittent Wipe Facilit 1-44

J

Jump Starting 3-2

K

Key 1-2, 1-4
  If you lose your keys 3-11
  Positions 2-2

L

Limited-Slip Differential 2-14
Luggage Compartment
  Cargo Security Screen 1-55
  Light 1-54
  Net 1-54

M

Maintenance Requirements
  Explanation of scheduled maintenance items ..... 5-6 ~ 5-8
  Maintenance and servicing requirements 5-1
  Maintenance under severe usage conditions 5-5
  Regular servicing ..... 5-2 ~ 5-4
Mirrors
  Day/night inside rearview 1-53
  Outside rearview 1-51
Multi Function Switch
  Headlight flash 1-42
  High and low beam 1-42
  Lane change signal 1-41
  Lighting switch 1-42
  Sidelight auto cut 1-42
  Turn signal operation 1-41

O

Odometer 1-40

P

Parking Brake 1-53
Part-time 4WD Operation ..... 2-9 ~ 2-11
Power Driver's Seat 1-12
Power Outlet 1-46
Power Steering Fluid Level 6-19

INDEX

R

Rear Seat
- Adjustable headrests 1-14
- Folding rear seatback and seat cushion 1-15

Rear Seat Warning 1-16
Rheostat Switch 1-46
Roof Bars 1-55
Running in Your New Hyundai 1-2

S

Seat Belts
- 2-Point Static Type 1-18
- 3-Point system ..... 1-17 ~ 1-18
- Adjusting your seat belt 1-18
- Care of seat belts 1-17
- Pre-tensioner Seat Belt 1-24
- Precautions 1-16

Seat Warmer 1-14
Sound
- Brake Pad Wear Warning Sound 1-38

Spark Plugs 6-8
Speedometer 1-39
Starting Procedure 2-4
Steering Wheel
- Free play 6-15
- Tilt lever 1-59

Stereo Sound System ..... 1-75 ~ 1-76
Sun-visor 1-57
Sunroof ..... 1-48 ~ 1-49

T

Tachometer 1-40
Theft-Alarm system ..... 1-7 ~ 1-8
Tyres
- Balancing 8-2
- Chains 8-2
- Changing a flat tyre ..... 3-4 ~ 3-9
- In the event of a puncture 3-4
- Information 8-1
- Pressures 8-1
- Replacement 8-3
- Rotation 8-2
- Snow tyres 8-2
- Spare tyre 3-3
- Spare tyre and tools 8-3

Towing
- A trailer (or vehicle) ..... 2-17 ~ 2-19
- Emergency 3-10
- If your car must be towed 3-9
- Important trailer weight information 2-18

Transmission
Automatic ..... 2-6 ~ 2-9
Automatic transmission lubricant 6-11
Manual ..... 2-5 ~ 2-6
Manual transmission lubricant 6-10
Trip Odometer 1-40

U
Under Tray 1-13

V
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) 8-1
Vehicle Specifications ..... 9-1 ~ 9-4

W
Windows
Power 1-9
Windscreen Washer Reservoir Replenishment 6-10
Windscreen Wiper and Washer Switch 1-43
Rear window wiper and washer 1-44
Variable intermittent wipe facilit 1-44
Windscreen washer operation 1-43
Windscreen Wiper Blades 6-9